

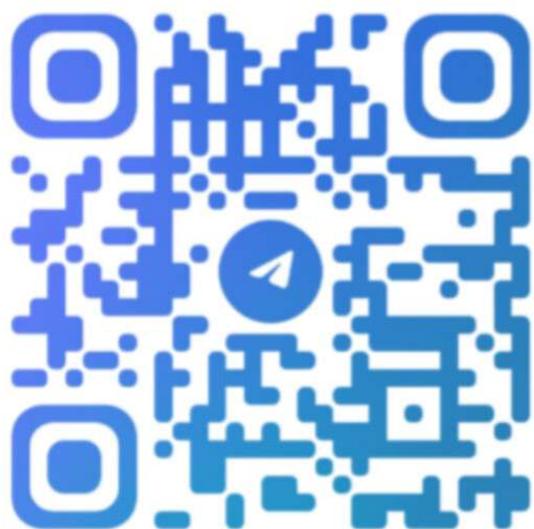
تابعنا علي التيليجرام

اضغط علي الرابط  لدخول الي الجروب

<https://t.me/C322C>

او عن طريق مسح الباركود ↓↓↓

باركود القناه  



@C322C

لتحميل

مذكرات مدرسين ثانوي

والمزيد من التلخيصات

تابعنا علي التيليجرام

لتحميل كل الملخصات والكتب ابحث عن @C322C

ALAWAA
Gem

THE COUNT OF MONTE CRISTO

PART 2

20
26

جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمحتوى التعليمي الخاص بكتاب الوزارة مملوكة لوزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

3rd EISEC

Watermarkly

لتحميل كل الملخصات والكتب ابحث عن @C322C



Gem

ENGLISH

for Secondary Schools

&

The Count of Monte Cristo

الصف
الثالث
الثانوي

12

الجزء الثاني

Emad Fawzy
Ahmed Fadel

By

Mohamed Abdel Aal
Ayman M. Ebrahim



الاسم:

رقم الموبايل:



امسح الكود واحصل على
لينكات الأضواء الرسمية

Follow Us

| 16766

www.aladwaa.com



Watermarkly

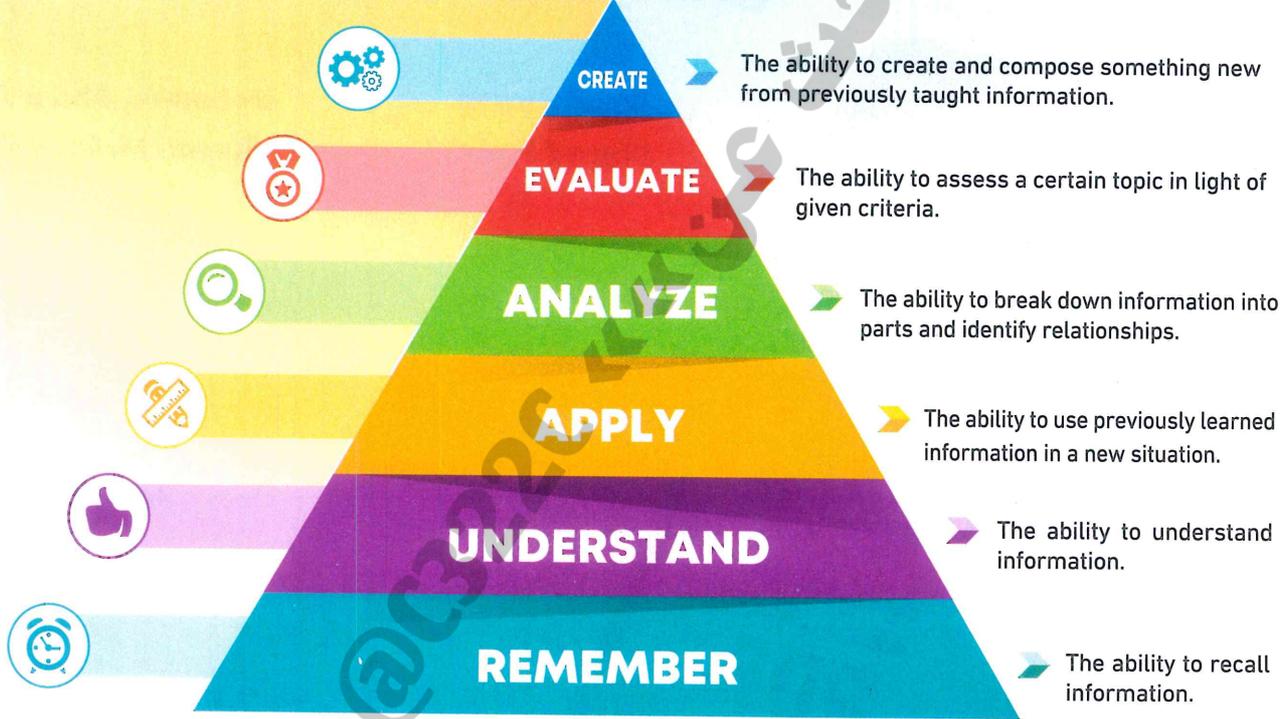
BLOOM'S TAXONOMY

تصنيف بلوم

نواتج التعلم والمستويات المعرفية

تمثل نواتج التعلم ما ينبغي أن يعرفه الطالب ويكون قادرًا على أدائه بعد دراسته لمقرر دراسي معين، بينما تشمل المستويات المعرفية جميع النشاطات الذهنية أو العقلية، ويبدأ تصنيف نواتج التعلم في المجال المعرفي من العمليات العقلية البسيطة ويمتد إلى العمليات الأكثر تعقيداً (تصنيف بلوم)، ويوضح الشكل التالي هذه العمليات:

تم الاعتماد في إعداد التدريبات والأنشطة داخل الكتاب على تصنيف بلوم



ستجد تلك الأيقونات بجانب كل سؤال في تدريبات الأضواء؛ لمعرفة تصنيف السؤال وفقاً لهم بلوم المعرفي.



ALADWAJ JOURNEY

من أجل رحلة تعليمية ممتعة
تضمن لك التفوق

قمنا بتقسيم كل درس إلى:

Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:
42. What role has your family played in your life?

Assess Your Progress

تحديد مستواك
في نهاية كل وحدة

Test Yourself

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The streets of Cairo are always _____ with people, especially during rush hours.
a) deserted b) isolated c) quiet d) bustling

Test Yourself

اختبار على
كل جزء

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. After checking in online, you can download your boarding _____ to your phone.

Practice

تدريبات متنوعة
ومتدرجة المستوى

Study...

Part 1

Lesson 1: Airport Adventures
Lesson 2: Airport Announcements

Key Vocabulary

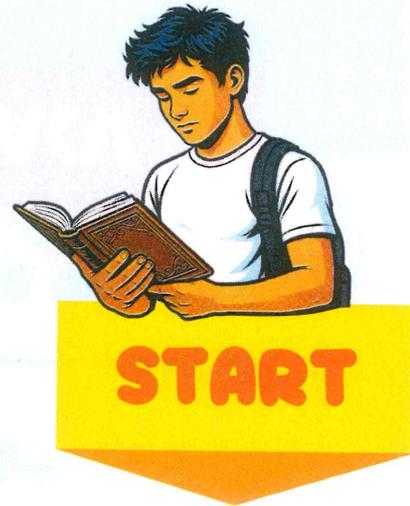
boarding pass (n) بطاقة صعود الطائرة checkpoint (n) نقطة تفتيش restrictions (n) قيود

bustling (adj) مزدحم departure lounge (n) صالة المغادرة strike up (v) بدأ (الحزب)

Study

شرح مبسط ووافر

USER'S GUIDE



2 Language

ذاكر القواعد عن طريق الشرح المبسط المدعم بخرائط ذهنية وأمثلة وفيرة على كل نقطة.



1 Vocabulary

تعرف على معاني الكلمات في كل درس من خلال جداول الكلمات الرئيسية والتعبيرات الواردة في كتاب الطالب وأهم المشتقات والمترادفات والمتضادات والتعريفات.



3 Vocabulary & Language Checkpoint

اختبر حفظك للكلمات من خلال تدريبات بسيطة بعد كل مجموعة من جداول الكلمات، واختبر فهمك للقواعد من خلال تدريبات بعد النقاط الرئيسية.



4 Vocabulary & Grammar Exercises

للتأكد من استيعاب الكلمات والقواعد أجب عن التدريبات العامة بعد كل درس.



11 Booklet

نماذج استرشادية على المنهج كاملاً



END

Unit 7 Student's Book Corner

1. Vocabulary

Check the words in columns A and B. Match the words in column A with the words in column B.

A: 1. a holiday, 2. a holiday, 3. a holiday, 4. a holiday, 5. a holiday, 6. a holiday, 7. a holiday, 8. a holiday, 9. a holiday, 10. a holiday.

B: 1. a holiday, 2. a holiday, 3. a holiday, 4. a holiday, 5. a holiday, 6. a holiday, 7. a holiday, 8. a holiday, 9. a holiday, 10. a holiday.

2. Grammar

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. I (visit) my grandparents every weekend. (visit)
2. She (go) to the gym every day. (go)
3. They (play) football every afternoon. (play)
4. He (work) in a bank. (work)
5. We (travel) to the mountains every year. (travel)

7 Student's Book Corner

أهم التدريبات الواردة بكتاب الطالب على الكلمات والقواعد.

Unit 7 Al-Azhar Corner

1. Match the following verbs with their meanings.

Match the verbs in column A with the meanings in column B.

A: 1. to exchange, 2. to exchange, 3. to exchange, 4. to exchange, 5. to exchange, 6. to exchange, 7. to exchange, 8. to exchange, 9. to exchange, 10. to exchange.

B: 1. to exchange, 2. to exchange, 3. to exchange, 4. to exchange, 5. to exchange, 6. to exchange, 7. to exchange, 8. to exchange, 9. to exchange, 10. to exchange.

8 Al-Azhar Corner

تدريبات خاصة بطلبة الأزهر في نهاية كل وحدة.

Practice Skills

(A) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and answer the questions.

The passage is about the importance of reading. It discusses how reading helps in learning and understanding the world. It also mentions that reading is a good habit that everyone should have.

1. Choose the correct answer from A, B, C or D.

1. Reading is a good habit that everyone should have. (A) (B) (C) (D)
2. Reading helps in learning and understanding the world. (A) (B) (C) (D)
3. Reading is a good habit that everyone should have. (A) (B) (C) (D)
4. Reading helps in learning and understanding the world. (A) (B) (C) (D)

6 Skills

تدرب على مهارات الوحدة من خلال أسئلة لقطع الفهم والترجمة والكتابة من خلال:

Skills Exercises



9 General Exercises

تدريبات شاملة على الوحدة

Unit 7 General Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from A, B, C or D.

1. The restaurant near the office building is really (A) (B) (C) (D)
2. The manager was very (A) (B) (C) (D)
3. The project was a (A) (B) (C) (D)
4. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)
5. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
6. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)
7. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
8. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)
9. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
10. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)

Test Yourself Part 1 Lessons 1 & 2

1. Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from A, B, C or D.

1. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
2. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)
3. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
4. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)
5. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
6. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)
7. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
8. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)
9. The project was (A) (B) (C) (D)
10. The report was (A) (B) (C) (D)

5 Test Yourself

أجب عن التدريبات المجمعدة على الكلمات والقواعد.



Chapter 10 Escape to Freedom

1. Vocabulary

Match the words in column A with the words in column B.

A: 1. a holiday, 2. a holiday, 3. a holiday, 4. a holiday, 5. a holiday, 6. a holiday, 7. a holiday, 8. a holiday, 9. a holiday, 10. a holiday.

B: 1. a holiday, 2. a holiday, 3. a holiday, 4. a holiday, 5. a holiday, 6. a holiday, 7. a holiday, 8. a holiday, 9. a holiday, 10. a holiday.

10 The Count of Monte Cristo

- ملخص الفصول على هيئة نقاط.
- تمارين مجابة وغير مجابة على كل فصل للتأكد من فهمك للأحداث.

Contents

Unit 7 At the Airport

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	8
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	24
Part 3 (Skills)	39
General Exercises	48

Unit 8 A Journey Through Time

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	54
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	73
Part 3 (Skills)	90
General Exercises	99

Unit 9 The Universe's Mysteries

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	104
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	120
Part 3 (Skills)	136
General Exercises	144

Review (3)

Units 7, 8 & 9	148
----------------	-----

Unit 10 Peoples' Hospitality and Kindness

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	155
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	170
Part 3 (Skills)	185
General Exercises	193

Unit 11 Literature

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	198
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	215
Part 3 (Skills)	231
General Exercises	239

Unit 12 University Life

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	244
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	258
Part 3 (Skills)	272
General Exercises	280

Review (4)

Units 10, 11 & 12	284
-------------------	-----

Story The Count of Monte Cristo

Chapter 7	291
Chapter 8	299
Chapter 9	307
Chapter 10	315
Chapter 11	321
Chapter 12	327
Dictionary	333

Unit 7

At the Airport



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Reading short texts and conversations about experiences.
- Understanding announcements, instructions, and short narratives related to airports and traveling abroad.
- Language** - Using the past perfect and past perfect continuous in context.
- Listening** - Listening to dialogs, interviews, and announcements about travel procedures.
- Identifying specific information (e.g, times, advice, locations) and overall meaning.
- Writing** - Writing a short story about a travel experience.
- Planning and writing an expository essay.
- Speaking** - Talking about travel problems and giving possible solutions.
- Practicing role-plays of airport situations.

تابعنا علي التيليجرام

اضغط علي الرابط  لدخول الي الجروب

<https://t.me/C322C>

او عن طريق مسح الباركود ↓↓↓

باركود القناه  



@C322C

لتحميل

مذكرات مدرسين ثانوي

والمزيد من التلخيصات

تابعنا علي التيليجرام

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

boarding pass (n)	بطاقة صعود الطائرة	checkpoint (n)	نقطة تفتيش	restrictions (n)	قيود
bustling (adj)	صاخب	departure lounge (n)	صالة المغادرة	strike up (v)	يبدأ (حوارًا)
carry-on (n)	أمتعة يدوية	luxury (n)	فخامة / رفاهية	terminal (n)	مبنى المسافرين

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

air traffic (n)	حركة المرور الجوية	flight (n)	رحلة جوية	realize (v) (d)	يدرك / يحقق
announce (v) (d)	يعلن	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	security (n)	أمن
approach (v) (ed)	يقترُب	gate (n)	بوابة	security checks (n)	فحوصات أمنية
available (adj)	متاح	grab (v) (bed)	يمسك / يتناول (وجبة / مشروب)	separately (adv)	بشكل منفصل
cancel (v) (ed)	يلغى	guidebook (n)	دليل سياحي	souvenir (n)	تذكار / هدية تذكارية
companion (n)	رفيق	issue (n)	قضية / مشكلة	specific (adj)	محدد
concert (n)	حفل موسيقي	items (n)	أغراض	stressful (adj)	مُجهِد
confident (adj)	واثق	liquid (n)	سائل	timing (n)	توقيت
counter (n)	طاولة / مكتب عمل	manage (v) (d)	ينجح / يتمكن / يدير	transfer (v) (red)	ينقل / يحول
delay (n) (v) (ed)	تأجيل / يؤجل - يؤخر	pack (v) (d)	يحزم / يكتظ	trip (n)	رحلة
depart (v) (ed)	يغادر	papers (n)	أوراق / مستندات	update (n) (v) (d)	تحديث / يحدِّث / يُطلِّع على
destination (n)	وجهة / مقصد سفر	patiently (adv)	بصبر	vacation (n)	عطلة
disappointed (adj)	محبط	perfume (n)	عطر	valid (adj)	صالح / ساري المفعول
disaster (n)	كارثة	positive (adj)	إيجابي	variety (n)	تنوع
document (n)	وثيقة / مستند	procedure (n)	إجراء	visa (n)	تأشيرة
excitement (n)	حماس / إثارة	productively (adv)	بانتاجية		
flexible (adj)	مرن	quick-service (adj)	خدمة سريعة		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Cairo International Airport was with thousands of passenger arrivals at the terminal.
 - deserted
 - positive
 - bustling
 - flexible
- After the bank robbery, the police set up a on the highway to check drivers' licenses.
 - destination
 - checkpoint
 - lounge
 - counter
- There are age on some types of movies — you must be 18 or older to watch them.
 - items
 - procedures
 - privileges
 - restrictions
- All brands are known for their high prices and exclusive products.
 - luxury
 - discount
 - reflective
 - ordinary
- Nowadays, free Wi-Fi is to all hotel guests throughout their stay.
 - confident
 - disappointed
 - recyclable
 - available
- He decided to quit his job and find something more relaxing.
 - stressful
 - pleasant
 - enjoyable
 - stressed

7. Before you can get a driving license, you must go through several official
- a) terminals b) procedures c) visas d) equipment
8. The airport has imposed *فرضت* new measures, including full-body scanners and advanced luggage screening systems.
- a) variety b) destination c) security d) research

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

(be) in hot water	في موقف صعب	fight against the unexpected situations	يقاوم المواقف غير المتوقعة	someone's heart sinks	يشعر بالإحباط أو القلق
(be) in trouble or difficulty	في مشكلة أو صعوبة	go with the flow	يجارى الناس في آرائهم	stay calm	يبقى هادئاً
catch a plane/flight	يلحق بالطائرة/الرحلة	keep ... in a safe place	يحفظ ... في مكان آمن	wait in line	ينتظر في صف / طابور
get upset	يشعر بالضيق/الانزعاج	pass the time	يقضى الوقت		
get frustrated	يشعر بالإحباط	prove valuable	يثبت قيمته		

Prepositions

حروف الجر

arrive at/in	يصل إلى	excited about	متحمس بشأن	packed with	مكتظ/مزدحم بـ
check ... in	يراجع / يسجل الدخول إلى (مطار/فندق)	head to	يتوجه إلى	throw away	يلقى / يتخلص من
deal with	يتعامل مع	look forward to	يتطلع إلى	update ... on	يُطلع ... على

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
announce	يعلن	announcement announcer	إعلان مذيع	announced	مُعلن
approach	يقترُب من	approach	اقتراب	approachable	يمكن الاقتراب منه
bustle	يصخب	bustle	ضجّة / صخب	bustling	صاخب
delay	يؤجل	delay	تأجيل	delayed	مؤجل
disappoint	يُحبط	disappointment	إحباط	disappointing disappointed	مُحبط محبط
excite	يثير/يحمس	excitement	حماس / إثارة	exciting excited	مثير متحمس
restrict	يقيد	restriction	تقييد / قيد	restrictive	مقيّد
secure	يؤمن	security	أمن	secure	آمن
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	مُحدد
transfer	ينقل/يحول	transfer/ transference	انتقال / تحويل	transferred transferable	منقول / مُحول قابل للنقل
vary	يختلف / يتنوع / ينوع	variety	تنوع	various	مُتنوع

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The news about the school trip will **excite** all the students. (v)
- The children couldn't hide their **excitement** on receiving their new toys. (n)
- We watched an **exciting** movie full of action and adventure. (adj)
- I'm so **excited** about my birthday party next week! (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
approach	يقترّب	advance/move towards		retreat/move away	يتراجع/يبتعد
bustling	صاخب	lively/busy/crowded		quiet/peaceful	هادئ/مسالم
confident	واثق	self-assured/certain		uncertain/hesitant	غير واثق/متردد
depart	يغادر	leave/exit		arrive/stay	يصل/يبقى
disappointed	محبط	disheartened/frustrated		satisfied/pleased	راضٍ/مسرور
flexible	مرن	adaptable/adjustable		inflexible/stiff	غير مرن/متصلب
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	luckily/happily		unfortunately/unluckily/sadly	لسوء الحظ
issue	قضية	problem/concern		resolution/solution	حل
pack	يحمز أمتعة	bundle/gather		unpack/scatter/empty	يفك أمتعة/يبعثر/يفرغ
productively	إنتاجية	efficiently/usefully		ineffectively/wastefully	بشكل غير فعال/ياسراف
restriction	تقييد/قيد	limit/constraint		freedom/flexibility	حرية/مرونة
variety	تنوع	diversity/range		sameness/monotony	تشابه/رتابة

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Instead of fighting every small change at work, Michael learned to and adapt.
a) be in hot water b) go with the flow c) sink his heart d) get frustrated
- My heart when I heard the news about the accident.
a) sank b) drowned c) healed d) treated
- The stadium was packed excited fans waiting for the final match to begin.
a) of b) for c) to d) with
- The law will restrict the speed limit on this road. The noun of the verb "restrict" is
a) restricts b) restriction c) restricted d) restrictive
- As we approach the city, the skyscrapers نااطحات السحاب come into view. The antonym of the verb "approach" is
a) advance b) understand c) move away d) give away
- He looked disappointed after not getting the job. The synonym of the adjective "disappointed" is
a) frustrated b) pleased c) flexible d) fortunate
- Don't forget to pack your umbrella for the trip. The verb "pack" is opposite in meaning to
a) gather b) move c) scatter d) retreat
- The market was bustling with shoppers on Saturday morning. The word "bustling" is similar in meaning to
a) peaceful b) expensive c) reacted d) crowded

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

"A Traveler's Airport Journey"

Hazem Samir had been looking forward to his vacation in Barcelona for months. However, his trip began with what seemed like a complete disaster at Orly Airport in Paris.

It was 6:00 a.m., and the airport was already **bustling**⁽¹⁾ with activity. Hazem arrived feeling confident – he had checked in online and printed his **boarding pass**⁽²⁾ the night before. But as he approached the security **checkpoint**⁽³⁾, he realized he was in hot water. In his excitement, he had packed his favorite bottle of perfume in his **carry-on**⁽⁴⁾ bag, forgetting the liquid **restrictions**⁽⁵⁾.

"I'm sorry, but you'll have to throw this away or check it in separately," the security officer explained patiently. Hazem felt his heart sink. His flight was departing in just two hours, and he still needed to grab breakfast and find his gate.

After dealing with the perfume situation, Hazem finally made it through security. The **departure lounge**⁽⁶⁾ was packed with travelers, and finding a seat seemed impossible. He decided to explore the **terminal**⁽⁷⁾ and was amazed by the variety of shops and restaurants available. The airport had everything from **luxury**⁽⁸⁾ shops to quick-service restaurants.

As he waited in line at a coffee shop, Hazem **struck up**⁽⁹⁾ a conversation with another traveler, Jack, who was heading to Madrid. "Flying can be stressful," he said with a smile, "but I've learned that it's better to go with the flow rather than fight against the unexpected situations."

Jack's advice proved valuable when they announced a two-hour delay for Hazem's flight due to air traffic control issues. Instead of getting frustrated, Hazem used the time productively. He explored more of the airport, bought some souvenirs for his friends, and even managed to video-call his family to update them on his travel plans.



- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| (1) صاحب | (2) بطاقة صعود |
| (3) نقطة تفتيش | (4) أمتعة يدوية |
| (5) قيود | (6) صالة المغادرة |
| (7) مبنى المسافرين | (8) فخامة/رفاهية |
| (9) بدأ | |

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- At the beginning of his trip, Hazem felt confident because
 - he had traveled to Barcelona many times before
 - he had checked in online and printed his boarding pass
 - the airport was not crowded at 6:00 a.m.
 - he knew there would be no security problems
- When Hazem discovered the perfume problem at security, he felt worried because
 - he didn't like the security officer's attitude
 - perfume is very expensive and hard to find
 - his flight was leaving soon and he still had things to do
 - he wanted to give the perfume as a gift in Barcelona
- What helped Hazem feel better about the flight delay?
 - Jack's advice about staying positive during travel problems.
 - His family told him not to worry about being late.
 - The airport gave him free food and drinks.
 - The airline apologized and gave him his money back.
- Based on the text, which statement best describes how Hazem's journey evolved from beginning to end?
 - It started well, but ended in complete disaster and frustration.
 - It was perfect from start to finish with no real challenges.
 - It remained problematic throughout his time at the airport.
 - It began with setbacks, but improved as Hazem changed his perspective.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Presenter : Today, we're speaking with Mr. Ahmed Hassan, the Customer Service Manager at Cairo International Airport. Mr. Ahmed, what is the most important advice you have for people traveling abroad for the first time?

Mr Ahmed : The first thing is to prepare your documents. You must have a **valid**⁽¹⁾ passport, your ticket, and if needed, a **visa**⁽²⁾. Keep them in a safe place, such as a travel wallet, so they're always easy to find.

Presenter : What about timing?

Mr Ahmed : **Timing**⁽³⁾ is critical. I recommend arriving at the airport at least three hours before an international flight. This gives you enough time for check-in, **security checks**⁽⁴⁾, and any unexpected delays.

Presenter : And if a passenger loses something or someone?

Mr Ahmed : Stay calm. If you lose an item, report it immediately to the lost and found desk. If you lose a travel **companion**⁽⁵⁾, go to the nearest information counter and ask for help. We have trained staff to handle these situations quickly.

Presenter : Finally, any last advice?

Mr Ahmed : Yes, be patient and **flexible**⁽⁶⁾. Travel can be **stressful**⁽⁷⁾, so stay calm. If you stay positive, most problems can be solved easily.



- (1) صالح / سارى المفعول (2) تأشيرة
(3) توقيت (4) فحوصات أمنية
(5) رفيق (6) مرن
(7) مجهد

Definitions

التعريفات

boarding pass	بطاقة صعود الطائرة	a document allowing you to enter the plane
departure lounge	صالة المغادرة	the waiting area before your flight
terminal	مبنى الركاب	a building where passengers arrive, depart, or transfer flights
security checkpoint	نقطة تفتيش أمنية	where your bags are examined for safety
terminal gate	بوابة المغادرة	the specific area where you board your plane

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	transfer	1- ينقل ملكية أو يغير مكاناً 2- يحول الأموال	The company will transfer the ownership to the new buyer next week. I need to transfer money from my account to my son's account in America.
	transport	ينقل الأشخاص أو البضائع	The company transports goods from the warehouse مستودع to the store.
	transmit	ينقل / يرسل / يبث المعلومات أو الإشارات	The radio station transmits live concerts every Friday. Matches of the Premier League are transmitted live to many countries.

2	paper (material) ورق (اسم لا يُعد)	I need to buy some paper for printing.
	a/the paper صحيفة أو ورقة بحثية	I'm reading a paper on economics. Can you pass me the paper (newspaper)?
	papers أوراق / مستندات / وثائق	Please submit your papers to the conference committee لجنة. She keeps her important papers in a safe.
3	realize ١- يدرك أو يفهم شيئاً ما بعد تفكير ٢- يحقق شيئاً ما	I realized I had left my phone at home when I was on the bus. She finally realized her dream of becoming a doctor.
	recognize ١- يتعرف على شخص أو شيء ما ٢- يعترف بـ	I recognized my friend in the crowd because of her bright red hair. The government recognized the new nation after the peace treaty.
4	delay/postpone يؤجل موعداً أو حدثاً	The flight was delayed due to bad weather. Let's postpone the meeting until next week.
	procrastinate ١- يماطل أو يتساهل ٢- يؤجل الأعمال أو المهام دون سبب مقنع	I keep procrastinating over my homework when I feel tired. She procrastinates when it comes to making big decisions.
5	miss يفتقد شخصاً / يفوته (قطاراً/أوتوبيس)	I miss my brother when he travels abroad. Adel missed the bus because he woke up late.
	lose يفقد / يخسر	I lost my keys yesterday. He lost the game but played very well.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A pass is a document allowing you to enter the plane.
a) boarding b) lounge c) guidebook d) license
- A is a building where passengers arrive, depart, or transfer flights.
a) lounge b) dock c) gate d) terminal
- When I looked in my pocket, I that someone had stolen my money.
a) hoped b) recognized
c) realized d) reflected
- Stop and book your tickets now, or the prices will increase!
a) delaying b) procrastinating
c) moving d) processing
- When I arrived at Frankfurt Airport, I had to planes to reach my final destination.
a) transfer b) transport
c) transmit d) transform
- My grandfather really his hometown very much after moving to the city.
a) loses b) misses c) leaves d) forgets

20. restaurants are popular for burgers and fast meals.
 a) Luxury b) Quick-service c) Long-life d) High-end
21. The from Cairo to Alexandria by train takes about three hours at most.
 a) trip b) baggage c) flight d) task
22. I'll you as soon as I hear any news about the project.
 a) confuse b) deceive c) update d) relate
23. Karma, my cousin, has a very attitude and always sees the bright side of things.
 a) negative b) defective c) shining d) positive
24. By law, all must be declared at customs الجمارك when entering a country.
 a) passengers b) documents c) items d) tools
25., the weather cleared up just in time for my sister's outdoor wedding.
 a) Helplessly b) Fortunately c) Effectively d) Tragically
26. After years of saving, I finally to buy a new car for my family.
 a) managed b) failed c) forgot d) affected
27. After the surgery, the doctor the patient with a smile and told him that he would get better soon.
 a) delayed b) approached c) grabbed d) worried
28. The tourist office advised me to buy a travel to help me plan my trip to Italy.
 a) textbook b) preface c) booklet d) guidebook
29. The new supermarket in the city center has an amazing of products to choose from.
 a) repetition b) variety c) ability d) package
30. You can collect your tickets at the information near the entrance.
 a) stair b) division c) counter d) gate

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

31. Don't frustrated if you miss the bus; there's another one in twenty minutes.
 a) make b) get c) trust d) move
32. The local guidebook we bought valuable when we got lost in the old city.
 a) missed b) kept c) proved d) improved
33. It's important to calm during an emergency and follow safety instructions.
 a) stay b) work c) help d) do
34. Please check at the hotel reception desk and collect your room key.
 a) for b) out c) of d) in
35. The teacher will update us the exam results by the end of the week.
 a) at b) on c) for d) with
36. The of energy from one form to another is a key concept in physics.
 a) transferable b) transferred c) transference d) transferrer
37. She felt confident speaking English after practicing with native speakers during her trip.
 The synonym of the word "confident" is
 a) doubtful b) supportive c) hesitant d) certain
38. Having a flexible schedule allows you to change your plans if something unexpected happens.
 The antonym of the adjective "flexible" is
 a) adaptable b) available c) stiff d) wise
39. I spent my morning productively by finishing all my work before lunch. The adverb "productively" is similar in meaning to
 a) wastefully b) efficiently c) reflexively d) quickly
40. There are baggage restrictions on this flight, so you can only bring one suitcase. The noun "restriction" is opposite in meaning to
 a) flexibility b) constraint c) limit d) affection

B Language

The Past Perfect and Past Perfect Continuous:

الماضي التام والماضي التام المستمر:

1 The Past Perfect الماضي التام

ليبين أن حدثاً تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.

Before last Friday	Last Friday	Now
ماضي تام	ماضي بسيط	مضارع

Affirmative الإثبات	<p>Subject الفاعل + had + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل</p> <p>• I had eaten dinner before they came.</p>
Negative النفى	<p>Subject الفاعل + hadn't + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل</p> <p>• Ali hadn't seen that movie before it was on TV.</p>
Question السؤال	<p>Had + subject الفاعل + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل?</p> <p>• Had Osama bought the tickets by yesterday?</p> <p>Wh-word كلمة استفهام + had + subject الفاعل + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل</p> <p>• What had she said that made Hany angry?</p>
Passive المبنى للمجهول	<p>Obj. المفعول + had been + P.P.</p> <p>• By yesterday, all the tickets had been sold.</p>

USAGE الاستخدام

1 For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.
يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضي آخر أو قبل وقت محدد في الماضي: الحدث الأول تام والثاني بسيط.
The teacher **punished** Ahmed because he **had made** a lot of mistakes.

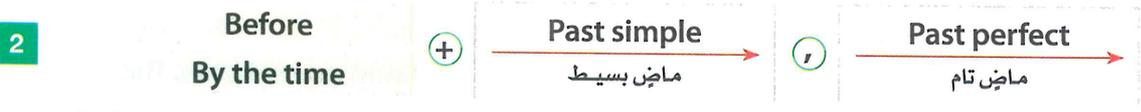
2 For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.
يستخدم لحدث انتهى في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي.
There **was** glass on the floor as Osama **had broken** the window.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:
يستخدم الماضي التام مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

after, as soon as, before, by the time, when, till/until, by:



After I **had looked** both ways, I **crossed** the street.



Before I **crossed** the street, I **had looked** both ways.

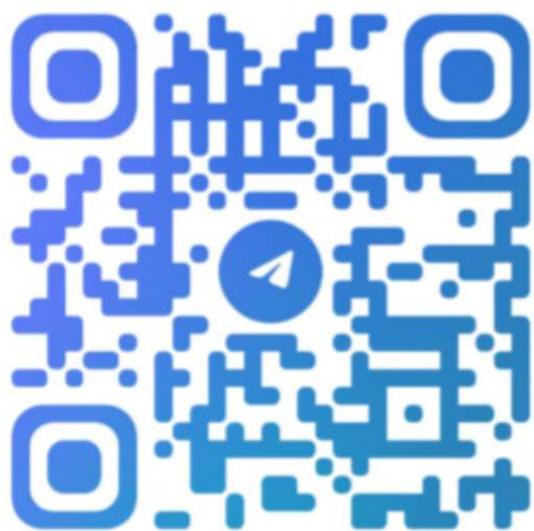
تابعنا علي التيليجرام

اضغط علي الرابط  لدخول الي الجروب

<https://t.me/C322C>

او عن طريق مسح الباركود ↓↓↓

باركود القناه  



@C322C

لتحميل

مذكرات مدرسين ثانوي

والمزيد من التلخيصات

تابعنا علي التيليجرام

3 When:

لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الآتية:

When + Past simple,
Past perfect

When + Past simple,
Past simple

When + Past perfect,
Past simple

When he reached the station, the train had left.

When he reached the station, the train left.

When he had reached the station, the train left.

غادر القطار قبل وصوله (لم يلحق به)

غادر القطار عند وصوله (ربما لحق به أو أراه)

وصل المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحق به)

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We the station by 5 o'clock yesterday.
 - had been reaching
 - were reaching
 - had reached
 - reached
- He his work before you came.
 - has been finishing
 - finishes
 - has finished
 - had finished
- After Rami had written the letter, he it.
 - has posted
 - posted
 - was posting
 - was posted
- I left the office, I had written 5 reports.
 - By the time
 - After
 - Until
 - As soon as
- After the house, we furnished it.
 - had been painted
 - has painted
 - had painted
 - is painted

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- The students did the experiment. They wrote a report on it. (By the time)
- She completed the project. Then, she sent it to her teacher. (after)
- The plane landed. The passengers left their seats. (as soon as)
- He packed his bag. Then, he left for the airport. (before)

4



My son did not buy the phone until he had taken the money.

ملحوظة

لا ينبغي حفظ قاعدة واحدة لـ until، فهناك استخدامات كثيرة لها، فتأمل هذه الأمثلة:

- I wasn't happy until I had passed my exams.
- Ahmed wasn't allowed to enter the country until he had shown his passport.
- Tamer couldn't pass the driving test until he had practiced enough.
- Hala refused to marry him until he had bought a new flat.
- Khaled waited in the station until the train arrived.

5 By + ماض تام + فترة في الماضي

By yesterday بحلول أمس, he had applied for the job.

لاحظ

1



إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم v + ing بشرط أن يكون فاعل الجملة الثانية هو الفاعل المحذوف من الجملة الأولى.

- After finishing his work, Adel helped me. = After he had finished his work, ...
- Before helping me, Adel had finished his work. = Before he helped me, ...

2

إذا لم يكن هناك فارق زمني بين الأحداث فإن الجملتين تكونان في زمن الماضي البسيط:



- When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
- Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
- As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

3



- No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported it to the police.
- No sooner did Marwa find the money than she reported it to the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات في أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأت في أول الكلام يكون الآتي:



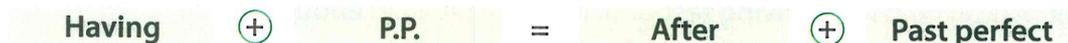
- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported it to the police.

4



- On looking at the question, I knew the answer. = When I looked, I knew

5



- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assiut. = After I had booked,

6

It was only when إنه فقط عندما

It wasn't until لم يكن حتى

+

Past perfect

ماض تام

+

that

Past simple

ماض بسيط

- It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- After school, Mahmoud worked in a restaurant for a year.
 - had left
 - leaving
 - being left
 - leave
- typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager.
 - Having
 - While
 - When
 - After
- No sooner he stepped on my foot than he apologized to me.
 - did
 - had
 - has
 - was
- Hardly had he found a good job he told his father.
 - that
 - then
 - when
 - than
- After in the company for ten years, he left it.
 - works
 - worked
 - had worked
 - working

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- He didn't know the truth until he reads the newspaper. (.....)
- No sooner had my brother joined the army when he had his hair cut. (.....)
- Having taking the photos, he developed them. (.....)
- He had been reading this book, so he was looking for a new one. (.....)
- By the time Ahmed was 20, his father had been spent all his money. (.....)

Extra points (Past perfect)

ملاحظات إضافية على الماضي التام

1 الفرق بين استخدام المبنى للمجهول مع الماضي البسيط **was/were + P.P.** واستخدامه مع الماضي التام **had + been + P.P.**

- After the food **had been cooked**, it **was eaten**.
- Before the e-mail **was sent**, it **had been written**.
- 2 يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد **after/before/until** وليس جملة كاملة.
- My friends **visited** me after **lunch** yesterday.
- Before **the war**, the two countries **had threatened** each other.
- 3 تُستخدم **ever/never/already/yet** مع الماضي التام لبيان الحدث الأول (الأقدم) مع وجود فعل ماضٍ في الجملة.
- I **saw** Galal last night. I **had never seen** him before.
- 4 إذا وُجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضح ماضيًا تامًا والأحداث الباقية إما ماضٍ بسيط وإما مستمر حسب المعنى.
- As soon as** I **saw** Ahmed, I **realized** that I **had met** him before.
- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **as soon as** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة).
- After** he **got to** the station, he **realized** that he **had left** the train ticket at home.
- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **After** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول، فالحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل).
- I **was shopping** with my friend when I **realized** that I **had lost** my wallet.
- الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.
- 5 يستخدم الماضي التام مع أفعال مثل **think/say/know/realise** عند استخدامها في الماضي للحديث عن اعتقادات ومحادثات ومعرفة وإدراك لشيء سابق.
- I **thought** I **had finished** my homework, but I **realized** I **had forgotten** the last page.
- I **knew** where I **had put** the keys.

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I didn't phone Amgad because I his number.
 a) have lost b) was losing c) lose d) had lost
2. As soon as she out of bed, she got dressed.
 a) gets b) has got c) had got d) would get
3. He continued his journey he had changed the tire.
 a) before b) after c) since d) ago
4. When I enough money, I bought the smartphone.
 a) had saved b) was saving c) have saved d) would save
5. When I the news, I couldn't believe it.
 a) heard b) hear c) will hear d) was hearing
6. Ramy was hungry because he anything all day.
 a) hasn't eaten b) wasn't eaten c) never eats d) hadn't eaten
7. The police had solved the problem before many people the protest الاحتجاج.
 a) joining b) had joined c) joined d) have joined
8. I didn't want to have lunch because I with my friends at a restaurant.
 a) have eaten b) had eaten c) was eating d) hadn't eaten
9. When we got the bill, Mohamed on paying.
 a) has insisted b) had insisted c) insisted d) insists
10. Tamer all his exams by 5 o'clock yesterday.
 a) had passed b) passed c) has passed d) had been passed
11. Before starting to eat, he down the table.
 a) has laid b) was lying c) had laid d) lay
12. I wasn't hungry at four because I a big lunch at one.
 a) have b) was having c) had been having d) had had
13. in a big city before you moved to Alexandria?
 a) Have you worked b) Were you working c) Had you worked d) Would you work
14. We weren't allowed to take the plane because we the tickets.
 a) forget b) had forgotten c) have forgotten d) forgetting
15. The people in the city felt a lot safer after the wild animal by the police.
 a) had caught b) caught c) was catching d) had been caught
16. After my work, I went back home with my friends.
 a) finishing b) finished c) being finished d) had finished
17. They all the doors before they left.
 a) have locked b) will lock c) had been locking d) locked
18. No sooner a new flat than he moved in.
 a) he had found b) he found c) had he found d) was he finding
19. On the sign "No parking", he looked for another place to park.
 a) seeing b) had seen c) saw d) he had seen

- ▶ 20. Having the land for cultivation, he sowed the seeds.
 a) been prepared b) prepared c) prepare d) had prepared
21. My father at the University for more than 30 years before he retired.
 a) had worked b) had been worked c) has been working d) was working
22. The facts by the reporter before he wrote his report.
 a) had checked b) are checking
 c) are checked d) had been checked
23. As soon as it stopped raining, the match
 a) started b) will start c) had started d) has started
24. I didn't leave I had taken my pocket money first.
 a) by the time b) because c) before d) until
25. I met Hesham last week. I him since 2018.
 a) haven't met b) hadn't met c) wasn't meeting d) didn't meet
26. It wasn't until last week that he the money he had borrowed.
 a) had returned b) has returned c) returned d) will return
27. my friend, I welcomed him.
 a) On meeting b) By the time I met
 c) No sooner I met d) Having been met
28. The pharaohs the Pyramids and other amazing monuments.
 a) have built b) built c) build d) has built
29. My brother moved to Canada after
 a) he graduates b) had graduated c) having graduated d) graduation
30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
 a) After the car had had been repaired, it was polished.
 b) After the car had hadn't repaired, it was polished.
 c) After the car had been repaired, it was polished.
 d) After the car had had repaired, it was polished.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- ▶ 1. After I had finished all my chores, I decided to go out with my friends. (Having)

2. Before he slept, he had studied all his lessons. (until)

3. She didn't watch TV until she had put the children to bed. (It was only)

4. We went for a walk but first we finished our work. (Having)

5. She stole the jewelry after she had broken into my house. (Hardly)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- ▶ 1. By the time we had reached the museum, it already closed. (.....)
 2. No sooner had he entered the room when everyone started clapping. (.....)
 3. She didn't realize she had lost her keys until she has arrived home. (.....)
 4. I finished all the reports before went to bed. (.....)
 5. Hardly have we been finishing our meal when the waiter brought the bill. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The streets of Cairo are always with people, especially during rush hours.
a) deserted b) isolated c) quiet d) bustling
2. We passed through the security before entering the airport terminal.
a) checklist b) checkpoint c) check over d) checkup
3. The newly married couple stayed in a hotel with a swimming pool and spa during their honeymoon.
a) necessity b) luxury c) privilege d) quick-service
4. Due to infectious and dangerous diseases, there are travel for some countries in many airports.
a) restrictions b) reports c) resilience d) reflection
5. Airport officers checked all passengers' bags carefully before they boarded the plane.
a) attendance b) research c) security d) surgery
6. The tourist group were happy that the check-in at the hotel was quick and easy.
a) invitation b) procedure c) competition d) attention
7. We're planning a two-week to Sharm El Sheikh next summer.
a) vacation b) discovery c) exploration d) intention
8. You shouldn't throw your boarding pass before you arrive at your final destination.
a) up b) off c) a way d) away
9. After many years, I could still my best friend's voice immediately.
a) realize b) recognize c) organize d) sterilize
10. The cruise ship will from the harbor at 6:00 a.m. tomorrow.
a) depart b) arrive c) set on d) strike up
11. The airline will your flight details to your email address automatically.
a) transfer b) transport c) translate d) transmit
12. I read a book and listened to music to during the long flight.
a) go with flow b) pass the time c) prove valuable d) wait in line
13. After breakfast, we'll to the beach to swim and sunbathe.
a) head b) hold c) arrange d) refer
14. The bank keeps all financial for seven years for legal reasons.
a) terms b) documents c) issues d) fictions
15. Technical problems will the start of the Zoom meeting by 30 minutes.
a) hurry b) haste c) delay d) reply
16. The final exam period is the most time of the academic year.
a) speedy b) enjoyable c) stressed d) stressful
17. To work from home, you need a quiet space and good internet.
a) apparently b) vainly c) productively d) regularly
18. The central air control system monitors all aircraft in the region.
a) trip b) traffic c) industry d) crash
19. The assistant says that this model is in three different colors: black, white, and silver.
a) available b) avoidable c) attentive d) detected
20. The main issue with the plan is that it costs too much money. The synonym of the word "issue" is
a) search b) solution c) clue d) problem

Language

21. I woke up feeling tired this morning because I very well last night.
 a) wasn't sleeping b) haven't slept c) haven't been sleeping d) hadn't slept
22. I arrived at the bus station late yesterday. When I got there, my bus
 a) left b) had been leaving c) had left d) has left
23. I the careless boy because he had made many mistakes.
 a) punished b) had punished c) punishing d) have punished
24. As soon as I had met him, I everything about his project.
 a) was knowing b) knew c) know d) had known
25. He felt that he the question incorrectly.
 a) has answered b) had been answering c) was answering d) had answered
26. They couldn't go swimming because they their swimsuits.
 a) forget b) have forgotten c) had forgotten d) were forgetting
27. The mistake had been corrected before the newspaper
 a) printed b) was printed
 c) had been printed d) is printed
28. Why the bathroom before you took a bath?
 a) wasn't you clean b) hadn't you cleaned
 c) haven't you been cleaning d) hadn't you been cleaning
29. Rameses II over Ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.
 a) was ruling b) has ruled c) had ruled d) ruled
30. After the cake, we put it in the fridge.
 a) had been decorated b) has decorated c) had decorated d) is decorated
31. My father read the article which about cloning الاستنساخ.
 a) had written b) wrote
 c) had been written d) has been written
32. As soon as the bell, the students left the classroom.
 a) didn't ring b) rang c) was ringing d) rings
33. It was only when he the instructions that he knew how to operate the machine.
 a) was reading b) reads c) has read d) had read
34. After the parcel, I opened it.
 a) has arrived b) had arrived c) had been arrived d) arrives
35. The student decided not to make that mistake again after by the teacher.
 a) being punished b) punishing c) had punished d) punished
36. I saw that most people the party when I arrived. I didn't see them.
 a) had already been left b) left c) have left d) had already left
37. The criminal changed his name after he his hometown.
 a) left b) had been leaving c) was leaving d) leaves
38. I didn't want to have a coffee because I'd already two cups.
 a) been drinking b) drank c) drunk d) drunken
39. we had booked the tickets that we took the train to Aswan.
 a) By the time b) It wasn't until c) Hardly d) No sooner
40. When we said goodnight, we had had a good conversation. This means:
 a) Our conversation wasn't finished when we said goodnight
 b) After saying goodnight, our good conversation started
 c) Before saying goodnight, our good conversation finished
 d) We would have a good conversation on going to bed

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

board (v) (ed)	يركب طائرة	phrase (n)	عبارة
navigate (v) (d)	يتنقل/يببحر	ramen (n)	رامين (أكلة يابانية)

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

alarm (n)	إنذار	hand over (v) (ed)	يسلم	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل
attendant (n)	مرافق/عامل/موظف	invitation (n)	دعوة	reroute (v) (d)	يعيد التوجيه
basic (adj)	أساسي	luggage (n)	أمتعة	shine (v)	تسطح/تلمع
challenging (adj)	متحدى/صعب	mistakenly (adv)	عن طريق الخطأ	sign (n) (v) (ed)	علامة/إشارة/لافتة
checklist (n)	قائمة مرجعية	notice (n) (v) (d)	ملاحظة/يلاحظ	size (n)	حجم/مقاس
cleanliness (n)	النظافة	observation (n)	ملاحظة	staff (n)	طاقم العمل
confusion (n)	ارتباك	organization (n)	تنظيم	steal (v)	يسرق
embarrassed (adj)	محرج	overwhelming (adj)	غامر/مُرهِق	stress (n)	توتر
emphasize (v) (d)	يؤكد على	preparation (n)	تحضير/تجهيز	system (n)	نظام
error (n)	خطأ	promotion (n)	ترقية	taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
essentials (n)	ضروريات	queue (n) (v) (d)	طابور/يقف في طابور	travel guide (n)	دليل سفر سياحي
facilitate (v) (d)	يُسهل/يبسّر	reassure (v) (d)	يطمئن	traveler (n)	مسافر

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. First-class passengers may the plane before economy passengers.
a) check b) board c) depart d) enjoy
2. The tourists struggled to the crowded metro system in London.
a) navigate b) notice c) represent d) respond
3. The interviewer said that the salary didn't include bonuses or other benefits.
a) rich b) extra c) minor d) basic
4. I felt when my credit card was declined at the supermarket.
a) confident b) overwhelming
c) embarrassed d) pessimistic
5. The restaurant is going to hire additional kitchen after their expansion.
a) staff b) band c) guests d) customers
6. The at the ticket office was moving very slowly because the ticket seller was slow.
a) row b) queue c) collection d) race

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

change someone's view يغيّر وجهة نظر شخص	from all over the world من جميع أنحاء العالم	make traveling easier يسهّل السفر
experience ... in person يجرب ... شخصيًا	in the rush في عجلة من أمرنا	stay healthy يحافظ على الصحة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

come over يزور	go back يرجع	go off ينطلق
-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
attend يحضر/يهتم بـ	attendant مرافق / عامل attendance حضور	attentive متنبه / متيقظ
emphasize يؤكد	emphasis تأكيد	emphatic مؤكد / حاسم
facilitate يسهل / ييسر	facilitation تيسير facilitator ميسر	facilitative ميسر
navigate يبحر / يتجول	navigation ملاحة navigator ملاح	navigable ملاحي / صالح للملاحة
observe يلاحظ / يراقب	observation ملاحظة observer مراقب	observant مراقب / دقيق للملاحظة
promote يرقى / يعزز	promotion ترقية promoter مُروِّج	promotional ترويجي
reduce يقلل	reduction تخفيض	reductive اختزالي reducible قابل للاختزال / التبسيط

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- From my window, I like to **observe** the birds building their nest in the tree. (v)
- The scientist's discovery was based on careful **observation** over many months. (n)
- An **observant** traveler will notice the small details that make each culture unique. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
challenging	متحدّ / صعب	difficult/tough/hard		easy/simple	سهل / بسيط
emphasize	يؤكد على	highlight/stress		downplay/minimize	يقلل من أهمية
facilitate	يسهل / ييسر	assist/ease		hinder/obstruct	يعرقل / يعوق
navigate	يتنقل / يبحر	steer/guide		misdirect/mislead	يضلل
organization	تنظيم	arrangement/planning		disorganization/disorder	فوضى / اضطراب
overwhelming	غامر / مُرهق	overpowering/stressful		slight/negligible	طفيف / لا يُذكر
reduce	يقلل	decrease/diminish		increase/raise	يزيد / يرفع
stress	توتر	pressure/anxiety		calmness/relaxation	هدوء / استرخاء

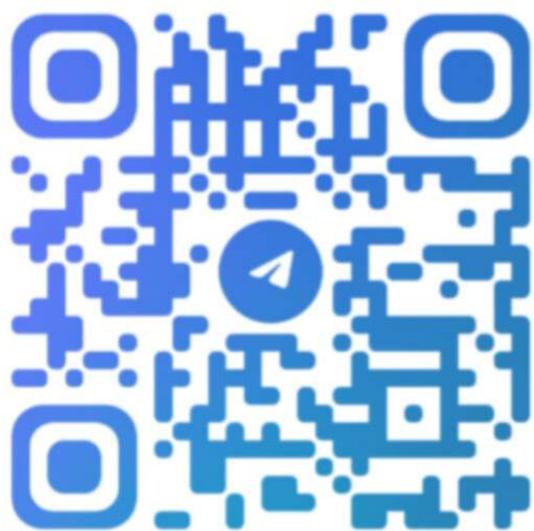
تابعنا علي التيليجرام

اضغط علي الرابط  لدخول الي الجروب

<https://t.me/C322C>

او عن طريق مسح الباركود ↓↓↓

باركود القناه  



@C322C

لتحميل

مذكرات مدرسين ثانوي

والمزيد من التلخيصات

تابعنا علي التيليجرام

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Important details can be overlooked in the to meet deadlines of projects.
a) respect b) steadiness c) slowness d) rush
- GPS navigation has traveling in unfamiliar places easier and less stressful.
a) done b) created c) made d) given
- My new neighbor invited me to over and see her new apartment.
a) go b) come c) get d) call
- The report emphasizes the need for immediate action on climate change. The noun of the verb "emphasize" is
a) emphasized b) emphasis c) emphatic d) emphatically
- The organization of the event was handled by a professional team. The synonym of the noun "organization" is
a) arrangement b) navigation c) disorder d) reflection
- The company plans to reduce costs by 20% this year. The antonym of the verb "reduce" is
a) diminish b) detect c) notice d) raise

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة لتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Last winter, I traveled abroad for the first time. I had always dreamed of visiting Japan, and finally, the moment came. By the time I boarded⁽¹⁾ the plane, I had already packed everything I needed—my clothes, travel guide, and camera.



When I arrived in Tokyo, I realized how different everything was. I had never seen such a busy airport before. The staff had been helping travelers from all over the world find their luggage and navigate⁽²⁾ the terminal. It felt exciting but also a little overwhelming.

(1) صعد على متن / ركب

(2) ينتقل

(3) عبارات

(4) (رامين) أكلة يابانية

Before leaving the airport, I bought a train ticket to the city center. I had been practicing basic Japanese phrases⁽³⁾ for months, and now I could finally use them. The station signs were in Japanese and English, which made traveling easier.

As I walked through the streets of Tokyo, I noticed how clean and organized everything was. People had been moving quickly but politely, and even in the rush, no one pushed or shouted. I had read about this before, but experiencing it in person was completely different.

That evening, I went to a small ramen⁽⁴⁾ shop. I had never tasted real Japanese ramen before, and it was better than I had imagined. While eating, I thought about my day. I had been exploring since morning, meeting kind people, and learning new things. Traveling to Japan wasn't just a trip—it had been a new experience that changed the way I saw the world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did the writer buy before leaving the airport in Tokyo?
 - a) A map.
 - b) A train ticket to the city center.
 - c) A camera.
 - d) A travel guide.
2. What did the writer notice about the people in Tokyo?
 - a) They were loud and impatient.
 - b) They ignored each other.
 - c) They were mostly tourists.
 - d) They were moving quickly but politely.
3. How did the writer likely feel as they navigated Tokyo's airport?
 - a) He was completely at ease.
 - b) He felt extremely frustrated.
 - c) He felt a mix of excitement and stress.
 - d) He was totally lost without a guide.
4. What did the writer think about the Japanese ramen they had?
 - a) It was better than imagined.
 - b) It was just okay.
 - c) It was worse than expected.
 - d) It was too spicy.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



A traveler thought there had been a problem with his flight. His ticket had said he should fly to Paris, but he had been told instead that his flight was to Berlin. Worried, he went to the check-in desk.

The attendant⁽¹⁾ looked at his ticket and asked for his passport. After the traveler handed it over⁽²⁾, the attendant checked the system. It turned out there had been an error⁽³⁾. The ticket had been booked for Paris, but the system had mistakenly⁽⁴⁾ rerouted⁽⁵⁾ the flight to Berlin. The attendant apologized for the confusion⁽⁶⁾.

The traveler explained that he really needed to get to Paris. The attendant reassured⁽⁷⁾ him and promised to put him on the next available flight. The traveler had been waiting for two hours before the next flight to Paris left. Finally, the attendant printed a new boarding pass, made sure the luggage⁽⁸⁾ was rerouted to Paris, and wished him a safe trip. The traveler thanked the attendant warmly for the help.



- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| (1) مرافق / مضيف | (2) سلمها |
| (3) خطأ | (4) بشكل خاطئ |
| (5) أعاد توجيهه | (6) ارتباك |
| (7) طمأن | (8) أمتعة |

Definitions

التعريفات

board	يركب (طائرة/أتوبيس/قطار/..)	to get on a bus, plane, train, etc. in order to travel somewhere
navigate	يتنقل / يبحر	to make one's way over or through
phrase	عبارة	a word or group of words forming a syntactic constituent with a single grammatical function
ramen	رامين (أكلة يابانية)	quick-cooking egg noodles usually served in a broth with bits of meat and vegetables

notice

يلاحظ (يدرك شيئاً/ حدوث شيء).

I **noticed** that the child was rather quiet during dinner.

detect

يكتشف (يلاحظ وجود شيء يصعب رؤيته لصغر حجمه).

The X-ray telescopes can now **detect** every type of astronomical object.

He thought he **detected** some interest in her eyes.

observe

يراقب/ يرصد (يلاحظ شيئاً ما نتيجة مشاهدته أو دراسته عن قرب).

The role of scientists is to **observe** and describe the world, not to try to control it.

steal

يسرق/ يأخذ ملكية غيره بدون إذن (يركز على الشيء المسروق).

The thief managed to **steal** the valuable objects from the museum without triggering any alarms.

rob

يسرق من شخص أو مكان (يركز على الضحية).

Two armed men **robbed** the central bank yesterday, escaping with over a million dollars.

blackmail

يبتز/ يهدد شخصاً بكشف سراً ما للحصول على المال.

She tried to **blackmail** the politician by threatening to release old, embarrassing emails to the press.

sign

١- لافتة (ورقية/ معدنية) لمعلومة تحذير/ تعليمات.
٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)

The road **sign** indicated a sharp curve ahead, so she slowed down.

The child's smile was a **sign** that he was enjoying himself at the party.

signal

١- إشارة (تليفون/ إذاعة/ تليفزيون)
٢- إشارة (ضوئية/ صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء.

The **signal** from the satellite was weak, causing the TV channels to blur.

The fire alarm's loud **signal** cleared the building quickly.

landmark

علامة بارزة (تميز مكاناً) مثل برج أو مبنى

The Great Pyramid of Giza is a famous **landmark** and a symbol of Egypt's rich history.

promotion

تستخدم كلمة (promotion) بمعاني كثيرة منها:

١- الترقية الوظيفية (التقدم إلى منصب أعلى أو مرتبة أعلى في العمل، مع زيادة في المسؤولية والراتب).

After five years of hard work, she received a **promotion** from Sales Manager to Regional Director.

٢- العروض الترويجية (الأنشطة والإعلانات التي تهدف لزيادة مبيعات أو شهرة منتج أو خدمة).

The company's new **promotion** for its smartphone includes TV commercials and social media influencers.

٣- الدعم والترويج (دعم وتشجيع فكرة أو قضية أو شخص لزيادة انتشارها أو نجاحها).

He was active in the **promotion** of renewable energy sources.

٤- الصعود الرياضي (صعود الفريق إلى دوري أو درجة أعلى في البطولات الرياضية).

The team's **promotion** to the Premier League was a cause for celebration for all their fans.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is a word or group of words forming a syntactic constituent with a single grammatical function.
a) clause
b) phrase
c) simile
d) rule
2. The gang several shops across the country before they were arrested.
a) robbed
b) stole
c) burgled
d) blackmailed
3. The in this building is terrible; I always have to go outside to make calls.
a) signal
b) mark
c) sign
d) message
4. The nuclear scientist uses an instrument that can very small amounts of radiation الإشعاع.
a) observe
b) notice
c) delay
d) detect
5. Social media is an effective tool for product promotion. The word "promotion" in this sentence means
a) career boost
b) ranking
c) publicity
d) decline
6. The celebrity was by a mysterious man over some private photographs.
a) stolen
b) blackmailed
c) mailed
d) lost

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The smoke went off in the middle of the night, surprising everyone.
a) sound b) voice c) alarm d) silence
2. The flight politely asked everyone to fasten their seatbelts during the turbulence.
a) planner b) attendant c) guest d) traveler
3. The new project is quite, but I'm confident we can meet the deadline.
a) challenging b) boring c) simple d) confident
4. All quality control teams use a to inspect products before they are shipped out.
a) research b) database c) report d) checklist
5. The hotel staff took extra precautions احتياطات to keep levels high during the flu season.
a) cleanliness b) security c) hospitality d) booking
6. Our team coach always that practice is the only way to improve our performance.
a) avoids b) blames c) emphasizes d) decreases
7. Before going camping, we packed all the like food, water, and a tent.
a) extras b) essentials c) decorations d) luxuries
8. The new software will communication between office clerks across different bank branches.
a) complicate b) ignore c) navigate d) facilitate
9. To make the wedding more fun, the couple sent out creative shaped like treasure maps to all their friends.
a) invitations b) inventions c) bills d) receipts
10. At the airport, travelers must place their on the conveyor belt سيرناقل to go through security screening.
a) passport b) luggage c) ticket d) baggage
11. The documentary I watched asserted that careful of animal behaviors helps us understand how they live.
a) endangering b) explanation c) observation d) creation
12. The old chef received praise for her innovative dishes, which attracted crowds of customers daily.
a) efficient b) negative c) criticizing d) overwhelming
13. The teacher reminded her class that good starts early, not the night before the exam.
a) evaluation b) tension c) preparation d) repetition
14. To help the environment, the company decided to plastic use by switching to reusable packaging.
a) increase b) reduce c) maintain d) ignore
15. In the clear night sky, the stars like diamonds, creating a magical view from the mountaintop.
a) shine b) hide c) storm d) disappear
16. The enormous of the new cruise ship was truly impressive as it could hold more than a thousand travelers.
a) speed b) price c) comfort d) size
17. I believe that planning every detail of a trip can cause a lot of and reduces enjoyment as well.
a) ability b) stress c) failure d) solution
18. The human body has a complex of organs that work together to keep us healthy and active.
a) system b) secret c) process d) base

19. The local street food in Bangkok with its delicious was amazing.
a) view b) sight c) taste d) site
20. According to my travel, the Karnak Temple is most beautiful at sunrise.
a) case b) guide c) system d) search
21. There was a lot of at the airport when the flight schedules were changed without notice.
a) celebration b) confusion c) silence d) cooperation
22. The technical in the software caused the program to crash repeatedly.
a) experiment b) example c) effort d) error
23. She believed that the meeting was at 3 p.m., but it was actually scheduled for 2 p.m.
a) suddenly b) correctly c) mistakenly d) purposefully
24. The airline had to the flight to a different airport because of bad weather conditions.
a) reroute b) delay c) cancel d) land
25. The teacher tried to the students before the exam so they wouldn't feel nervous.
a) confuse b) frighten c) reassure d) blame

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

26. In the discussion, Zain used humor to gently our view without making anyone feel attacked.
a) distract b) guess c) make d) change
27. I have an app that sends daily reminders with tips on nutrition **التغذية** and exercise to help users all year round.
a) feel exhausted b) give direction c) stay healthy d) work over
28. The stress of the big test made her feel nervous and tired. The synonym of the word "stress" is
a) pressure b) planning c) guide d) relaxation
29. Clear rules can facilitate teamwork during the game. The antonym of the verb "facilitate" is
a) ease b) follow c) neglect d) hinder
30. The fans clapped their hands to emphasize how excited they were about the speech. The verb "emphasize" is similar in meaning to
a) downplay b) highlight c) reflect d) invite
31. The mountain climb was challenging, but the view at the top was worth it. The adjective "challenging" is the opposite of
a) easy b) tough c) valuable d) respectable
32. After a wonderful vacation, it's always difficult to go to your normal routine.
a) back b) forward c) front d) away
33. I accidentally opened the wrong door and caused the alarm to go, which was so embarrassing.
a) with b) by c) off d) of
34. The scientists went to the desert to the eclipse **الكسوف** through their telescope.
a) observe b) think c) delay d) detect
35. It's wrong and illegal to other people's ideas and call them your own.
a) blackmail b) steal c) guide d) discover

B Language

Past Perfect Continuous الماضي التام المستمر

FORM التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات	<p>Subject الفاعل + had been + v-ing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Faten finally passed the test after she had been studying for six months.
Negative النفى	<p>Subject الفاعل + hadn't been + v-ing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> She failed the exam because she hadn't been studying for a month.
Question السؤال	<p>Had + الفاعل + been + v-ing?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Had you been waiting long before I arrived? <p>Wh-word + had + subject الفاعل + been + v-ing?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Why had you been working so early before the boss arrived?

USAGE الاستخدام

- لاحظ أن هذا الزمن لا يحول الى المبني للمجهول.
- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي (بدأ وانتهى في الماضي) قبل وقوع حدث آخر.
They **had been looking** for a house for six months before they **found** one they liked.
 - يعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي.
She **had been working** hard that day, so she **was** tired.
We **were** late because we **had been searching** for a parking spot for half an hour.
 - يأتي الماضي التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل:
wait/do/study/live/work/stay/play/watch/sleep/paint/read/write/talk/run/walk/travel
Heba **had been training** for three years when she **entered** the race.
Gamal was out of breath. It was clear that he **had been running** for a long time.
 - يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية.
for/since/how long/before/until
Ali **had been trying** to call me for 10 minutes **before** I finally **answered** the phone.

لاحظ

يستخدم الماضي التام البسيط ليحل محل الماضي التام المستمر لحدث كان مستمرا لفترة في الماضي قبل حدث آخر مع الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الاستمرار مثل أفعال الحالة **state verbs**.

- It was 5:00 p.m. Samir **had had** a headache all day.
- The lake froze solid after it **had been** below zero for a week.

Language Checkpoint 4

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**
- They for over an hour before Samy arrived.

a) had been talking	b) have talked
c) were talking	d) had been talked
 - I met him at yesterday's conference, but I him by sight for years before that.

a) have known	b) had known	c) will have known	d) had been known
---------------	--------------	--------------------	-------------------

3. When Huda arrived, I was pretty fed up, because I since eight o'clock.
 - a) had been waiting
 - b) have waited
 - c) have been waiting
 - d) had waited
4. Tamer as a postman for the past month, but later he wanted to leave.
 - a) was working
 - b) had been working
 - c) had been worked
 - d) has worked
5. By the time I got to the stadium, they for ten minutes.
 - a) had already played
 - b) were playing
 - c) had already been playing
 - d) has already been playing

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. We had sleep for 12 hours when he woke us up. (.....)
2. They have waited at the station for 90 minutes when the train finally arrived. (.....)
3. My friend and I have talked for more than an hour before I put the phone down. (.....)
4. This car had been belonging to Tamer for years before Hussein bought it. (.....)
5. When Mr Adel arrived, he found that thieves had been breaking into his shop. (.....)

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على الماضي التام والتام المستمر:

- 1 نستخدم **since** و **for** مع الماضي التام إذا كانت الجملة بها فعل يشير للماضي. **1**
I **met** Ahmed yesterday. I **hadn't seen** him **since** 2020.
- 2 يستخدم الماضي التام مع **'d rather** إذا جاء بعدها فاعل وكانت الجملة تعبر عن الماضي. **2**
I'd rather you **had gone** to school **yesterday**.
- 3 يستخدم الماضي التام البسيط مع فعل شرط الحالة الثالثة من **if** لبيان استحالة أو تخيل أو افتراض حدوث فعل في الماضي. **3**
If I **had asked** Ahmed for help last week, he **would have helped** me.
- 4 يستخدم الماضي التام البسيط بعد **wish** و **if only** للتمني أو الندم على شيء انتهى في الماضي. **4**
I **wish** I **hadn't taken** that slow bus to the Book Fair. It **took** three hours.
- 5 بعد **as if/as though** بمعنى «كما لو» لتشبيه شخص أو شيء بشيء أو شخص آخر في الماضي. **5**
Ahmed spoke proudly **as if** he **had been** a king.
- 6 يمكن استخدام **Having + been + P.P.** للدلالة على المجهول بشرط أن فاعل الجملة الثانية يكون هو فاعل الجملة الأولى: **6**
After the letter had been written, it was sent.
Having been written, the letter was sent.
- 7 إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم الماضي التام وليس الماضي التام المستمر: **7**
When I **met** Ahmed, he **had finished** typing 3 reports.
- 8 يرتبط الماضي التام والماضي التام المستمر بفعل ماضٍ آخر معه. **8**
The garden **was** dirty because people **had left** trash everywhere.
Ali **was** out of breath as he **had been running** for a long time.
كما يرتبط المضارع التام والمضارع التام المستمر بفعل مضارع آخر معه.
The garden **is** dirty because people **have left** trash everywhere.
Ali **is** out of breath as he **has been running** for a long time.

بعد **after** و **before** و **when** و **as soon as** نستخدم المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل وفي الجملة الثانية المستقبل البسيط أو ما يحل محله.

- When you **see** Osama tomorrow, **give** him the parcel.
- After Khaled **has written** his essay, he **will hand** it to the teacher.
- As soon as the car **has been repaired**, we **will set** off our journey.

10 لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي التام المستمر والماضي المستمر الذي يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا وقطعه آخر:

- When the race started, it **was raining** and the streets were wet.
ما زالت تمطر عندما بدأ السباق.
- When the race started, it **had been raining** and the streets were wet.
عندما بدأ السباق لم تكن تمطر. كانت قد توقفت قبل بداية السباق ولكنها استمرت فترة قبل البداية.

11 إذا جاءت **that** بعد **after** فهي تشير إلى الحدث الأول ويكون ما بعده الحدث الثاني (ماض بسيط).

- I ate my lunch. After that, I **went** out with my friends.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When I counted my change, I realized the cashier me 100 pounds extra.
a) gave
b) had been giving
c) had been given
d) had given
- Maher was very generous with Karim considering he him for a few days.
a) had only known
b) knew only
c) had only been knowing
d) only knows
- The day she agreed to marry him was the happiest day he in his life.
a) had ever been having
b) had ever had
c) will ever have
d) has ever had
- Ahmed looks very tired. He on the garden for a long time.
a) worked
b) was working
c) has been working
d) had been working
- It would have been better if you her the truth.
a) told
b) had told
c) are telling
d) tell

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- After I had finished my work yesterday, I visited my uncle. (until)
.....
- After the car had been repaired, it was ready for the journey. (Having)
.....
- I'd rather you visited me now. (yesterday)
.....
- I had been writing e-mails to my friends for an hour before I went to bed. (three e-mails)
.....
- Ali felt sick because he ate bad food. (After)
.....

تابعنا علي التيليجرام

اضغط علي الرابط  لدخول الي الجروب

<https://t.me/C322C>

او عن طريق مسح الباركود 

باركود القناه  



@C322C

لتحميل

مذكرات مدرسين ثانوي

والمزيد من التلخيصات

تابعنا علي التيليجرام

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I for a long time, when it suddenly began to rain.
 - a) had not been walking
 - b) have not been walking
 - c) had walked
 - d) have been walking
2. How long English before she went to London?
 - a) had she been learnt
 - b) was she learning
 - c) had she been learning
 - d) has she been learning
3. My uncle for less than an hour when he ran out of petrol.
 - a) had driven
 - b) was driving
 - c) had been driven
 - d) had been driving
4. I sold my car last week. I it for 10 years.
 - a) had been having
 - b) have had
 - c) had had
 - d) am having
5. They were very tired in the evening because they on the farm all day.
 - a) had been helping
 - b) had helped
 - c) have been helping
 - d) were helping
6. I all day; so I wasn't tired and visited my friend at night.
 - a) had been working
 - b) had not been working
 - c) was working
 - d) haven't been working
7. She was exhausted because she for 500 meters.
 - a) had swum
 - b) swims
 - c) had been swimming
 - d) has swum
8. He his leg, so he couldn't walk.
 - a) has broken
 - b) had been breaking
 - c) had broken
 - d) was breaking
9. The manager was angry because the worker any work for five hours.
 - a) hasn't been doing
 - b) hadn't been doing
 - c) haven't done
 - d) wasn't done
10. They all day so their legs were sore in the evening.
 - a) had been cycling
 - b) had cycled
 - c) have cycled
 - d) have been cycling
11. Having the bad news, the old man fainted and was carried to hospital.
 - a) told
 - b) telling
 - c) been told
 - d) to tell
12. We for her ring for two hours before we found it in the bathroom.
 - a) had been looking
 - b) had been looked
 - c) had looked
 - d) have been looking
13. He evidently his shoes for a very long time. They were worn-out.
 - a) has been wearing
 - b) had been worn
 - c) was wearing
 - d) had been wearing
14. His eyes were red because he movies all night.
 - a) has watched
 - b) has been watching
 - c) had been watching
 - d) was watching
15. I was late because I for my glasses.
 - a) had looked
 - b) had been looking
 - c) have looked
 - d) have been looking
16. I a vacation for ages before I finally took one.
 - a) had been needing
 - b) was needing
 - c) have needed
 - d) had needed
17. I can't believe you didn't realize that it all night! Everything was soaked.
 - a) had rained
 - b) had been raining
 - c) had been rained
 - d) have been raining

18. I was tired yesterday morning because I until late the night before.
 a) had been reading b) had read c) have been reading d) was reading
19. Ayman the secret for months before he told anyone.
 a) had been knowing b) had been known c) had known d) has known
20. She tennis for two hours, so she had a shower.
 a) had played b) had been playing c) has been playing d) has played
21. I the bike for long when it broke.
 a) hadn't been using b) used c) was using d) have been using
22. After I my report, I will send it to the manager.
 a) finished b) had finished c) finishing d) have finished
23. At last, the bus; I had been waiting for 30 minutes.
 a) came b) was coming c) had come d) has come
24. She the company for twenty years before she sold it.
 a) owns b) had owned c) had been owning d) was owning
25. Before you the contract, you will receive the keys.
 a) have signed b) had signed c) signed d) were signing
26. We met at the club as he wanted. I'd rather we in his office.
 a) had met b) met c) meet d) would meet
27. His hair looked as though it
 a) hasn't been cut for ages b) has just been dyed
 c) needs cutting d) hadn't been cut for years
28. She didn't seem to recognize me as if we
 a) have never met b) had never met c) weren't met d) will never meet
29. If my father me a computer last year, I wouldn't have been able to complete my research.
 a) had bought b) didn't buy c) hadn't bought d) weren't bought
30. My brother his short stories for three years before he published them.
 a) will write b) had written
 c) has written d) had been writing

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I didn't wait for a long time when Hatim arrived. (.....)
2. How long had he learned English when you graduated? (.....)
3. He said that he has visited some islands in the Pacific Ocean the year before. (.....)
4. After we had had dinner, we have eaten Hany's chocolate cake. (.....)
5. I wish I met the president yesterday. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He studied his lessons. Then, he went to bed. (By the time)

2. After Hany had played computer games, he went to bed. (playing)

3. When Ali got up yesterday morning, he discovered that the bus had left. (On)

4. She took the medicine, and then felt better. (until)

5. After he had gone to the club, he played tennis. (that)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Passengers must the plane at least 30 minutes before departure.
a) check b) leave c) board d) report
2. The taxi driver took a wrong turn and had to use an app to back to the main road.
a) reach b) navigate c) cancel d) depart
3. is quick-cooking egg noodles usually served in a broth with bits of meat and vegetables.
a) Sushi b) Kushari c) Pizza d) Ramen
4. The to the art exhibition included a map of the gallery and a list of featured artists.
a) invitation b) catalog c) program d) venue
5. Egypt Air has a strict policy on the size and weight of that can be carried on board.
a) system b) freight c) language d) luggage
6. I was so focused on my phone that I didn't the man who dropped his wallet right in front of me.
a) apply b) delete c) notice d) defy
7. The doctor said the patient was showing positive of recovery after the operation.
a) detentions b) signs c) notes d) searches
8. As a frequent, Ghada always books her tickets online to save time and money.
a) traveler b) guest c) attendant d) host
9. Before learning to write essays, students must understand the rules of grammar and punctuation.
a) unimportant b) basic c) elaborate d) defensive
10. There was a long outside the cinema because everyone wanted to see the new movie.
a) race b) row c) queue d) relay
11. Every country needs a good education to help students reach their full potential.
a) software b) method c) rule d) system
12. Someone broke into the shop last night and a large amount of money from the safe.
a) stole b) robbed c) blackmailed d) owed
13. People from all the world come to visit the Pyramids in Egypt every year because of their historical importance.
a) off b) over c) out d) away
14. The doctor told the patient that he had to avoid junk food if he really wanted to healthy.
a) follow b) obey c) try d) stay
15. During the festival, the store placed large banners outside to advertise its products.
a) promotes b) promoted c) promotional d) promotion
16. Too much can affect your health and make it difficult to concentrate at school.
a) confidence b) stress c) patience d) progress
17. During his speech, the principal the need for teamwork and respect among students.
a) emphasized b) disappointed c) grabbed d) transferred
18. The security guards were asked to the visitors and report any strange behavior.
a) deny b) observe c) detect d) indicate
19. Student has improved significantly since the Ministry of Education introduced the new policy.
a) attended b) attentive c) attendance d) attentively
20. The beauty of the sunset over the sea was so overwhelming that everyone stopped to take pictures. The antonym of the adjective "overwhelming" is
a) regular b) increased c) intense d) slight



Writing Skill

المزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

What is an Expository Essay? المقال التفسيري

1. An **expository essay** is a type of writing that explains, informs, or describes a topic using facts, logic, and examples.

- **المقال التفسيري** هو نوع من الكتابة يشرح أو يوضح أو يصف موضوعًا باستخدام الحقائق والمنطق والأمثلة.

2. It does **not** include personal opinions or arguments. The goal is to inform the reader, not to tell a story or give your opinion.

- لا يتضمن المقال التفسيري الآراء الشخصية أو الجدل، فالهدف منه هو إبلاغ القارئ بالمعلومات، وليس سرد قصة أو إبداء رأيك.

3. The word "expository" comes from "expose," which means to show or reveal. So, an expository essay reveals information about a topic.

- كلمة «**expository**» تفسيري تأتي من كلمة «**expose**» التي تعني أن تظهر أو تكشف. لذلك، فإن المقال التفسيري يكشف المعلومات حول موضوع معين.

Structure of an Expository Essay

Introduction
Hook
Background
Thesis Statement

Body Paragraphs
Evidence and examples
Explanation
Transition

Conclusion
Restate
Summarize
Final thought

1. Introduction

المقدمة:

(This is the first paragraph. You introduce the topic and tell the reader what you are going to explain.)

- **Hook:** Grab the reader's attention. الجملة الجاذبة: تجذب انتباه القارئ.
- Background information معلومات خلفية: تقدم معلومات تمهيدية عن الموضوع.
- **Thesis statement:** A sentence that clearly states the main idea. عبارة الأطروحة (**Thesis statement**): جملة توضح الفكرة الرئيسية بوضوح.

2. Body Paragraphs

الفقرات الرئيسية:

(These are the middle paragraphs [usually two or three]. Each body paragraph talks about one main idea from your topic. You give facts, details, and examples here.)

- «هذه هي الفقرات الوسطى (عادة فقرتان أو ثلاث). كل فقرة من فقرات الفقرة تتحدث عن فكرة رئيسية واحدة من موضوعك. في هذه الفقرات، تُقدّم حقائق وتفاصيل وأمثلة.»

- Topic sentence: States the point of the paragraph. الجملة الموضوعية (**Topic sentence**): تُوضح فكرة الفقرة الرئيسية.
- Evidence and examples أدلة وأمثلة.
- Explanation تفسير.
- Transition to the next paragraph الانتقال إلى الفقرة التالية: يُستخدم لربط الفقرات بسلاسة.

3. Conclusion

الخاتمة:

(This is the last paragraph. You summarize the main points and restate your topic in a new way. You don't add new information here.)

- «هذه هي الفقرة الأخيرة. في هذه الفقرة، تُلخّص الأفكار الرئيسية وتُعيد ذكر موضوعك بأسلوب مختلف. لا تضيف معلومات جديدة هنا.»
- Restate the thesis in different words. إعادة صياغة الأطروحة بكلمات مختلفة.
- Summarize the main points. تلخيص النقاط الرئيسية.
- Final thought or insight. فكرة أو رؤية ختامية.

MODEL EXPOSITORY ESSAY

Introduction

Staying healthy at school is very important for every student. When students are healthy, they can learn better, enjoy their time in class, and play with friends without problems. In this essay, some simple steps will be explained to students to follow and take care of their health at school.

Body Paragraph 1

One of the best ways to stay healthy is to eat good food. Students should eat fruits, vegetables, and drink plenty of water. These foods give the body energy and help students stay strong and focused during the day. Eating too much junk food like chips or sweets can make students feel tired and weak.

Body Paragraph 2

Doing physical activities is another important way to stay healthy. Students can play football, walk during break time, do some stretches in the morning, or take part in physical education classes. These activities help students stay fit, build strong muscles, and keep a healthy weight. It's a good idea to be active for at least 30 minutes every day.

Body Paragraph 3

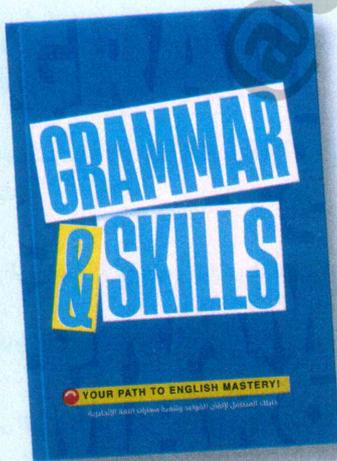
Good hygiene helps students stay safe from germs. They should wash their hands before eating and after coming home from school. It is also important to use tissues when sneezing and keep personal items clean. These habits stop the spread of illness and protect both the student and others around them.

Body Paragraph 4

Sometimes, school can be stressful. Students can manage stress by reading, drawing, taking deep breaths, or talking to someone they trust. Taking short breaks between study times also helps. When students manage stress, they sleep better, stay calm, and feel happier.

Conclusion

In conclusion, staying healthy at school is not difficult if students follow the right steps. Eating well, staying active, practicing good hygiene, and managing stress are all important. Healthy students feel better, learn better, and enjoy school life more. So, make smart choices, and take care of your health every day!



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة!

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة
في قطع الفهم نهاية الكتاب.

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Traveling is an enjoyable experience for many people. It allows them to see new places, learn about different cultures, and relax away from their daily routine. However, traveling is not always perfect. Sometimes, travelers face problems that can make the trip less enjoyable.

One common problem is flight delays. These delays can happen because of bad weather, technical problems, or busy airports. Waiting at the airport for hours can be boring and stressful, especially when you have other plans or connecting flights.

Another issue is lost or delayed luggage. It can be very upsetting to arrive at your destination and find that your bag is missing. People often feel worried, especially if the bag has important items like clothes or medicine. Sometimes, it takes days for the luggage to be returned.

Language barriers can also be a big problem. If you don't speak the local language, it can be hard to ask for directions, order food, or understand signs. This can lead to confusion and frustration. In some cases, travelers might even get lost or have trouble finding help.

Health problems are another concern. Traveling to a new country can cause stomach issues or jet lag. Sometimes, the food is very different, or the water is not safe to drink. If someone gets sick, it may be difficult to find good medical care.

In conclusion, while traveling can be exciting and fun, it is important to be ready for problems. Bringing medicine, learning a few local words, and having travel insurance can help make the trip easier. A good traveler is not someone who never faces problems, but someone who knows how to deal with them calmly.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a) Traveling is always perfect and enjoyable.
 - b) Traveling has its problems, but being prepared can help.
 - c) Flight delays are the biggest problem in traveling.
 - d) Language barriers are the most significant issue in traveling.
2. Why do language barriers sometimes cause travelers to get lost or have trouble finding help?
 - a) Because the local food is too different to order.
 - b) Because they cannot enjoy reading the street signs written in English.
 - c) Because they may find it difficult to ask for directions or understand local communication.
 - d) Because their luggage was lost during the flight delay.
3. According to the passage, how does the writer suggest dealing with travel problems?
 - a) By avoiding travel completely.
 - b) By only traveling to nearby places.
 - c) By preparing and staying calm.
 - d) By complaining to the airport staff.
4. A good traveler is not someone who never faces problems, but someone who
 - a) knows how to deal with problems calmly
 - b) always travels alone
 - c) never stays at home
 - d) never asks for help
5. What does the underlined word "This" refer to?
 - a) Getting lost.
 - b) Not liking the food.
 - c) Not speaking the local language.
 - d) Booking a flight.
6. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a travel problem?
 - a) Flight delays.
 - b) Expensive hotels.
 - c) Health problems.
 - d) Lost luggage.

7. The underlined word "upsetting" is opposite in meaning to
- a) comforting b) distressing c) unplanned d) organized
8. What can be inferred about the author's attitude towards traveling?
- a) The author is negative about traveling and doesn't prefer it.
 b) The author is angry about traveling and faced previous problems.
 c) The author doesn't mind traveling especially inside the country.
 d) The author is positive about traveling, but realistic about its challenges.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My mother accompanied me to school on the first day. Other parents accompanied their children as well. We all waited in front of the school office.

Soon, a teacher came and led us to some classrooms. There we were put into four separate classes. This was when some children began to cry as the parents were not allowed into the classrooms. I did not cry because I had been to kindergarten before. Actually, my mother went home soon after, for she knew I would be all right.

It was an enjoyable time for me as I got to know my new classmates. The teacher was very busy writing down our particulars, so we had plenty of time to ourselves. Meantime, some children continued to sob while their parents looked in anxiously through the windows.

Soon, break came. Some of us headed for the tuck-shop while the rest headed for their parents. I bought a drink with the money my mother gave me because I was thirsty. After break, we went back to our classroom and my new friends and I asked two boys to stop crying. In fact, soon we were laughing and playing together. Once in a while the teacher had to tell us to keep quiet, as we were making too much noise. Still, some parents looked in anxiously through the windows.

Finally, the bell rang for us to go home. Some of us were very relieved to be reunited with our parents. I too was glad to see my mother waiting for me at the school gate. I had made many friends. It had been a wonderful first day at school.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's obvious that the story is about
- a) a child in primary school b) a student in secondary school
 c) a child in preparatory school d) a student in university
2. Why did the writer not cry while the other boys did?
- a) Because his mother told him not to cry.
 b) Because he had been to a nursery school before.
 c) Because he had a lot of sweets.
 d) Because he was brave.
3. A tuck-shop is a place
- a) where children meet their parents b) where books are read
 c) where teacher spend their free time d) where sweets are sold
4. The word from the passage which means cry or weep is
- a) sob b) laugh c) think d) relieve
5. The best title for the passage is ".....".
- a) The first day at school b) The naughty boys
 c) How to be brave d) The anxious parents
6. The writer proved to be a good student by
- a) making many new friends
 b) not crying when his mother left him
 c) helping other boys to adapt to the new environment
 d) all of these

7. The antonym of the word "accompanied" is ".....".
 a) attended b) went together with c) came with d) left
8. The teacher asked the children to be quiet, as
- a) they were crying b) he was nervous
 c) they were playing and laughing, making noise d) they were eating

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Traveling to new countries opens your mind and helps you understand different cultures and lifestyles. It teaches you to respect differences and see the world from new perspectives.

(a) السفر إلى دول جديدة يفتح عقلك ويساعدك على فهم ثقافات مختلفة وأنماط حياة متعددة. كما يعلمك احترام الاختلافات ورؤية العالم من زوايا جديدة.

(b) السفر إلى دول جديدة يوسع خيالك ويساعدك على فهم العادات والتقاليد. كما يعلمك تقبل العيوب والنظر إلى الحياة بشكل مختلف.

(c) السفر إلى دول جديدة يفتح عقلك ويساعدك على فهم اللغات واللهجات المختلفة. كما يعلمك قبول الاختلافات ورؤية العالم من منظور رقيق.

(d) السفر إلى دول جديدة يفتح عقلك ويساعدك على فهم تقاليد الشعوب وأسلوبهم في الملابس. كما يعلمك كيف تبتعد عن الفروقات وتنظر لنفسك فقط.

2. With determination and patience, many people with special needs could do miracles and achieve great success in life. They have also become role models for ordinary people.

(a) بالإصرار والصبر استطاع كثير من الناس ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح كبير في الحياة ولقد أصبحوا قدوة للناس العاديين.

(b) بالإصرار والصبر استطاع كثير من الناس المحتاجين بشكل خاص القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح كبير في الحياة ولقد أصبحوا أيضا قدوة للناس المتميزين.

(c) بالإصرار والصبر استطاع كثير من الناس المحتاجين بشكل خاص القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح كبير في العمل ولقد أصبحوا أيضا قدوة للناس العاديين.

(d) بالإصرار والصبر استطاع بعض من الناس ذوي الاحتياجات المتخصصة القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح قليل في الحياة ولقد أصبحوا أيضا قدوة للناس العاديين.

3. Traveling through international airports offers a fascinating experience, where people from different cultures connect while waiting for flights to distant and inspiring destinations around the world.

(a) يُقدّم السفر عبر المطارات المحلية تجربة ساحرة، حيث يلتقى أشخاص من ثقافات مختلفة أثناء انتظارهم رحلاتهم إلى جهات بعيدة وملهمة حول العالم.

(b) يُقدّم السفر عبر المطارات الدولية تجربة ساحرة، حيث يلتقى مجموعات من ثقافات متشابهة أثناء انتظارهم رحلاتهم إلى جهات بعيدة وملهمة حول العالم.

(c) يُقدّم السفر عبر المطارات الدولية تجربة ساحرة، حيث يلتقى أشخاص من ثقافات مختلفة أثناء انتظارهم رحلاتهم إلى جهات بعيدة وملهمة حول العالم.

(d) يُقدّم السفر عبر المطارات الدولية تجربة ساحرة، حيث يلتقى أشخاص من ثقافات مختلفة أثناء مغادرتهم رحلاتهم إلى جهات قريبة وملهمة حول العالم.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. على الرغم من أن الرحلة كانت طويلة ومتعبة، واستغرقت منا وقتًا طويلًا في الطريق، إلا أننا استمتعنا كثيرًا بجمال الطبيعة والمناظر الخلابة التي شاهدها.

a) Even though the journey was long and boring, and it took some time on the road, we really enjoyed the beauty of the nature and the stunning views we have seen.

b) Although the journey was far and tiring, and it spent much time on the way, we enjoyed so much the beauty of nature and the attractive views that we visited.

c) Although the journey was long and tiring, and it took us a long time on the road, we really enjoyed the beauty of nature and the stunning views we saw.

d) Though the journey was long and exhausting, and it was taking much time on the road, we really enjoyed the beauty of the natural and the stunning views we saw.

5. عليك أن تقوم بالتركيز على هدفك وعلى ما تريد فعله لتحقيق فيه النجاح المأمول وسوف يجعلك ذلك تشعر بقيمة في الحياة.

a) You have to focus on your goal and what you want to do to achieve the required success. This will make you feel your price in life.

b) You have to focus on your goal and what you want to do to achieve the requested success. This will make you feel your cost in life.

c) You have to focus on your goal and what you want to do to achieve the aspired success. This will make you feel your worth in life.

d) You have to focus in your goal and what you want to do to achieve the aspired success. This will allow you to feel your ambition in life.

6. لم يكّد الفريق العلمي ينهى تحليله للبيانات التي جُمعت من الرحلات الاستكشافية المتعددة حتى أعلن عن اكتشاف مذهل قد يغيّر فهمنا لتاريخ المنطقة بأكمله.

- No sooner the scientific team had finished analyzing the data collected from the multiple expeditions, than they announced a stunning discovery that could change our understanding of the entire region's history.
- No sooner had the scientific team finished analyzing the data collected from the multiple expeditions, than they announced a stunning discovery that could change our understanding of the entire region's history.
- No sooner do the scientific team finish analyzing the data collected from the multiple expeditions when they announced a stunning discovery that could change our understanding of the entire region's history.
- No sooner had the scientific team finished analyzing the data collected from the multiple expeditions until they announced a stunning discovery that could change our understanding of the entire region's history.

(C) Writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which sentence uses commas correctly?

- You may have, hot chocolate, hot tea, or coffee to drink.
- You may have hot chocolate, hot tea, or coffee to drink.
- You may have hot chocolate; hot tea; or coffee to drink.
- You may have hot chocolate or hot tea or coffee, to drink.

2. Which is the CORRECTLY punctuated sentence?

- Samir said, in a rage: "I never want to see you again".
- Samir said, in a rage "I never want to see you again".
- Samir said, in, a rage "I never want to see you again."
- Samir said, in a rage, "I never want to see you again!"

3. What is the main purpose of an expository essay?

- To tell a story.
- To express emotions.
- To explain or inform.
- To persuade the reader.

4. Which of the following is a key feature of an expository essay?

- Facts, examples, and explanations.
- Personal opinions only.
- Dialog between characters.
- Suspense and plot twists.

5. The conclusion of an expository essay should include

- new facts and research
- a summary and restatement of the main idea
- a list of references
- a dramatic ending

6. Which sentence would most likely appear in a body paragraph of an expository essay?

- Factories release harmful gases into the air, which causes pollution.
- Imagine living on Mars!
- I think pollution is really annoying.
- That's why I love pizza!

5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

"Ways to stay safe while traveling"

Enrich your vocabulary

perspective	منظور / أفق	determination	عزيمة	barriers	حواجز / عقبات
stunning	خلابة	aspired	مأمول	analyzing	تحليل



Vocabulary

1 Match the words in column (A) to their meanings in column (B):

- | A | B |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. boarding pass | a) a building where passengers arrive, depart, or transfer flights |
| 2. departure lounge | b) a document allowing you to enter the plane |
| 3. terminal | c) the specific area where you board your plane |
| 4. security checkpoint | d) where your bags are examined for safety |
| 5. terminal gate | e) the waiting area before your flight |

2 Complete the story with the correct word from the box:

carry – check – catch – missed

Yesterday, I almost my flight to London. I had to run to the plane just as they were closing the doors. Fortunately, I had managed to in online the night before, and I only had carry-on luggage, so I didn't need to any extra bags at the airport.

Language

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The traveler realized that there a problem with his flight.
a) had been b) were c) is d) has been
- After the traveler his passport over, the attendant checked the system.
a) handed b) has handed c) had handed d) hand
- They video games for three hours when their mom called them for dinner.
a) played b) were playing
c) had played d) had been playing
- He a new car before he sold the old one.
a) buys b) was buying c) bought d) had bought
- The sun brightly by the time we left the house this morning.
a) shone b) was shining
c) had shone d) has been shining
- I in Paris for five years before I moved to Rome.
a) lived b) was living c) had lived d) had been living

4 Write the correct form of the verb in brackets:

- I was tired because I (study) for my exams all day.
- By the time he arrived, we (eat) all the pizza.
- She was upset because she (wait) for him for an hour.
- They (live) in that house for ten years before they sold it.
- He was angry because someone (steal) his bicycle.
- How long (you/work) at the company when you got the promotion?

5 Complete the story below by putting the verbs in brackets into the correct tense: past perfect or past perfect continuous.

Last weekend, I went to a party. It was a disaster! When I got there, I realized I
(forget) the invitation. I was so embarrassed. I tried to call my friend, but her phone was busy. She
..... (talk) to someone for a long time. I waited outside for a few minutes, but it was
freezing cold. I remembered that I (not/put on) my coat. I decided to go home.
I was so disappointed because I (look forward) to this party all week.

6 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences. (If correct, write C)

1. We had been finished our homework before our friends came over. ()
2. They were angry because they had been queuing for an hour and the store had just closed. ()
3. She had been read the book, so she knew how the story ended. ()
4. He had been cooking dinner for a few minutes when the smoke alarm went off. ()
5. I had been forgetting to lock the door before I left, so I had to go back. ()

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100%: راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



1 Finish the following dialog:

Azza is at the clothes shop. She wants to exchange a dress.

Azza : I want to exchange this dress.

Assistant : (1).....?

Azza : It's too tight. It seems I mistook it with the one I tried on.

Assistant : You can exchange it for anything of the same price.

Azza : (2).....?

Assistant : No, there aren't. We're having a big sale next weekend, but nothing today.

Azza : What's going to be on sale?

Assistant : (3)..... and everything will be on sale.

Azza : That sounds great (4).....

Assistant : Okay. Don't forget to bring your credit card.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. My brother didn't sleep without playing online games. (until)

.....

2. Father thanked Ali because he washed the car. (After)

.....

A Glimpse of Revelation

3 (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- With technological changes, many traditional skills have become
a) absolute b) obsolete c) special d) necessary
- The freedom to pick your leaders is the of a democracy.
a) detection b) branch c) essence d) fruit

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the major true knowledge that the Qur'an imparts?
- Do you think that the Qur'an supports or disregards science? Why?

(C) Write [T] for true statements and [F] for false ones:

- No Qur'anic principle has become obsolete or needs revision. []
- The Qur'an was revealed to guide people. []

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- We should try to discover our talents before we select our career to choose the work that appeals to us.
- Peace gives us a golden chance to carry out useful projects as it saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons.

(B) Translate into English:

3. لقد تضرر الاقتصاد المصري من الأحداث العالمية والأمراض الفتاكة التي استنفدت مواردنا.
4. أن مصر مليئة بالأشخاص الذين يساعدون في تقدم الحضارة ولكن لا يظهرون في الإعلام كثيرًا.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED TWENTY (120) words on the following:

"Imagine it is the year 2050 and write about your expectations for life then."

.....

.....

.....

.....

أولاً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجة واحدة»:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The restaurant near the office building is usually with customers during lunch hour.
a) detached b) flexible c) deserted d) bustling
2. The passengers waited in the departure for two hours due to the flight delay.
a) terminal b) gate c) lounge d) headquarters
3. Owning a car used to be a/an, but it's a necessity for many people nowadays.
a) luxury b) accessory c) obligation d) supplement
4. I tried to a chat with my new colleague during the coffee break.
a) hang up b) strike up c) move up d) hold up
5. Sharm El Sheikh has become one of the most popular tourist for people who enjoy water sports and natural scenery.
a) positions b) situations c) venues d) destinations
6. The project manager is in hot with his boss for missing the important deadline.
a) water b) pool c) fire d) tank
7. It is a known fact that good infrastructure economic growth and development.
a) endangers b) imitates c) facilitates d) explores
8. Someone answered my phone call before I realized I the wrong number.
a) have dialed b) dialed c) had been dialing d) had dialed
9. After I to quiet music for two hours, I felt relaxed.
a) had been listening b) listening c) listened d) was listening
10. No sooner the letter than he posted it.
a) did he write b) he had written c) had he been writing d) he wrote
11. My neighbor lived in England until he
a) death b) had died c) died d) has died

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As soon as I stepped off the plane at Cairo International Airport, the air enveloped me like a warm, heavy blanket. It was my first time in Egypt. I'd been planning for this trip for months, but things were already going wrong. Somewhere during the flight from Rome to Cairo, my bag disappeared. It had all my important documents and my laptop inside. The baggage area was a complete mess—a huge crowd of worried people, bags piled everywhere—it felt hot and stressful, like a pot about to boil over.

Feeling totally lost, I found the lost luggage desk. The line was huge, and I couldn't understand the language the clerk was speaking. My little Arabic was no help at all. Just as I was about to admit defeat, a young man who worked for the airport's security, wearing a neat uniform, saw how upset I was. He had a nice, tired look on his face and spoke slow, clear English.

I told him what happened. He didn't tell me to go somewhere else; he took charge of my entire situation. First, he made a bunch of quick phone calls to the airline's workers, speaking fast, important-sounding Arabic. Then, he walked me through the confusing customs area, telling the officers I was okay to enter the country.

But the most amazing part of Cairo's famous kindness happened when he realized the airline wasn't going to help that night. He didn't leave me alone. Instead, he drove me, in his own car, to the place I was staying in Downtown Cairo. He drove through the city's heavy traffic calmly. He wouldn't take any money, just smiling and saying, "Welcome to Egypt. We take care of our guests."

That simple act—a stranger going way above and beyond what he had to do—immediately changed my worry into a deep thankfulness for the country's generous spirit. It made me feel safe and appreciated.

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

12. What two items were missing inside the narrator's lost luggage?
 a) School books and research notes. b) A camera and a wallet.
 c) Important documents and a laptop. d) Clothing and personal documents.
13. What was the very first action the airport security representative took to personally help the narrator, as described in the third paragraph?
 a) He offered to drive the narrator to the hostel.
 b) He assured the customs officers that the narrator was cleared for entry.
 c) He translated for the narrator at the lost luggage desk.
 d) He made a series of rapid phone calls to the airline's ground staff.
14. Where did the airport security man ultimately drive the narrator?
 a) To the narrator's pre-booked hostel in Downtown Cairo.
 b) To the airline's main office to file a detailed report.
 c) To a different international airport for a connecting flight.
 d) To his own home to ensure the narrator was safe for the night.
15. What central message is the author trying to convey through the experience at the Cairo airport?
 a) The necessity of learning basic Arabic to successfully navigate a busy international airport and avoid confusion.
 b) That Cairo's notorious traffic and airline inefficiency cause significant problems for travelers.
 c) How a difficult travel incident was completely transformed by a profound and amazing act of local generosity.
 d) The importance of having detailed travel insurance and backup plans for lost luggage.
16. In the second paragraph, when the narrator arrived at the lost luggage desk, what was their primary feeling, before the security man intervened?
 a) Confident, because they were about to explain the situation to the clerk.
 b) Defeated, frustrated, and unable to communicate effectively.
 c) Calm, because they knew the problem would be solved quickly.
 d) Annoyed by the long line, but hopeful they would be helped soon.
17. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
 a) The young man who was a representative of the airport security.
 b) The customs officer.
 c) The clerk at the lost luggage desk.
 d) A helpful stranger in the baggage claim area.
18. What is the closest meaning of the underlined phrase "a pot about to boil over" in the first paragraph?
 a) A place where people are starting to get too warm.
 b) A situation on the verge of becoming chaotic or exploding into disorder.
 c) An observation that the area was too full of bags.
 d) A feeling that the luggage area was noisy and crowded.
19. How does the narrator describe the traffic in the city of Cairo and the security man's reaction to it?
 a) It was difficult to navigate, but the man drove carefully and slowly.
 b) It was heavy, but the man drove through it easily and remained completely calm.
 c) It was light and easy for the man to drive through quickly.
 d) It was confusing, and the man had to ask for directions frequently.

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our life is very fast-paced and full of simultaneous events, so we sometimes need self-reflection. It means stopping the mad rush of activity, calming yourself and your mind so your brain can evaluate the input it has already received. You can do it either by thinking or by writing down your ideas.

This is clearly demonstrated when you read a unit or a chapter of any book. You find a test or a quiz at the end of it to remind you that it is over. So, you stop and try to evaluate the knowledge that you get from reading it. Try to do the same in your daily life. After each experience, you can sit down in a quiet place to self-reflect, either mentally or by writing down your ideas. Let your mind ponder on the ideas you have written and make some connections. Sometimes, just pausing to think deeply allows your brain to make connections so that new information can be quickly retrieved when you need it again.

Next, think about things that you still wonder about. For example, maybe you learned about a certain body system, but you're not sure how it interacts with the other body systems.

Maybe you learned a new way to solve a math problem, but you're not sure when to use it. Writing down your questions will help you remember to continue seeking answers the next time you are exposed to the same topic. Self-reflection is an **essential** skill for a successful student. If you have never taken the time to reflect, try it now.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

20. The word 'ponder' in the passage means
- a) write down b) read quickly c) take notes d) think deeply
21. How should a person feel during the self-reflection process?
- a) Depressed. b) Stressed. c) Relaxed. d) Frightened.
22. The main idea of the second paragraph is how
- a) writing your ideas is better than thinking about them
b) we can use self-reflection in our daily situations
c) a student can self-reflect mentally in his school life
d) it's useless to have self-reflection, but people do it
23. According to the text, the primary purpose of self-reflection is to.....
- a) allow the brain to take a break from the fast pace of daily life
b) enable the mind to evaluate and connect previously received information
c) provide an opportunity to write down new questions for future study
d) ensure that a student remembers to read the next chapter of a book
24. To evaluate things, we need a self-reflection
- a) at the end of each activity b) at the end of each month
c) at the end of the year d) at the end of our life
25. Self-reflection is needed by
- a) students only b) people who are hard-working
c) everyone in life d) parents to know how to bring up their children
26. The best title for the passage is ".....".
- a) Thinking again and again may affect your decisions badly
b) Writing down your ideas is something bad
c) Telling others about your problems is a kind of self-reflection
d) Self-reflection is the best way of evaluation
27. The antonym of the word "essential" is ".....".
- a) expensive b) unnecessary c) basic d) chief

ثانياً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجتان»:

28. Had you been waiting for Hala for a long time before she?
a) was arriving
b) have arrived
c) had arrived
d) arrived
29. She down when the phone rang.
a) has just sat
b) had just sat
c) is just sitting
d) had just been sitting
30. How long to contact Sarah before you gave up?
a) will you try
b) were you trying
c) have you been trying
d) had you been trying
31. I my driving test before I bought the car.
a) had been passing
b) have passed
c) had passed
d) have been passing
32. When she died, they for 40 years.
a) had been married
b) were being married
c) have been married
d) had married
33. The secretary left the office after the letters.
a) type
b) had typed
c) typed
d) typing
34. Which is the CORRECTLY punctuated sentence?
a) Manal s six-year old daughter could read very well.
b) Manal's six year-old daughter could read very well.
c) Manal's six-year-old daughter could read very well.
d) Manal's six-year-old daughter could read very well.
35. The conclusion paragraph of an essay should include
a) a new example
b) the writer's name
c) a summary of main points
d) a quote from a movie

► Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

36. Regular participation in sports not only improves physical health, but also helps individuals develop discipline, teamwork, and confidence.
a) المشاركة المنتظمة في الرياضة لا تحسن الصحة الجسدية فحسب، بل تساعد الأفراد أيضًا على تطوير الانضباط والعمل الجماعي والثقة بالنفس.
b) المشاركة المنتظمة في الرياضة لا تعزز الصحة النفسية فقط، بل تساعد الأشخاص على بناء التعاون والاحترام الذاتي.
c) اللعب المنتظم للرياضة لا يفيد الجسم فقط، بل يشجع الناس على تطوير الانضباط والثقة والعمل الجماعي.
d) المشاركة في الرياضة بانتظام تحسن من الصحة الجسدية وتزيد من قدرات الفرد على القيادة والتعاون والثقة بالنفس.
37. Feasts are great occasions for all people to show tolerance, love, cooperation, and giving. They keep us attached to other people in society which creates a sense of unity.
a) الأعياد هي مناسبات عظيمة لمعظم الناس لإظهار التسامح والمحبة والتعاون والعطاء. إنها تبقينا مرتبطين بالأشخاص الآخرين في المجتمع مما يخلق إحساسًا بالوحدة.
b) الأعياد هي ساعات عظيمة لجميع الناس لإظهار التسامح والمحبة والتعاون والعطاء. إنها تبقينا مرتبطين بالأشخاص الآخرين في المجتمع مما يخلق إحساسًا بالوحدة.
c) الأعياد هي مراسم عظيمة لجميع الناس لإظهار التسامح والمحبة والتعاون والعطاء. إنها تبقينا مغرمين بالأشخاص الآخرين في المجتمع مما يخلق إحساسًا بالتماسك.
d) الأعياد هي مناسبات عظيمة لجميع الناس لإظهار التسامح والمحبة والتعاون والعطاء. إنها تبقينا مرتبطين بالأشخاص الآخرين في المجتمع مما يخلق إحساسًا بالتماسك.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

38. يُعدّ الاستثمار في التعليم والتدريب المستمر من أنجح الوسائل وأكثرها فاعلية لدعم الاقتصاد الوطني، وبناء قاعدة بشرية ماهرة، مما يمهد الطريق لتحقيق تنمية مستدامة.

- a) Investing in basic education and training is one of the most successful methods for supporting the global economy and building a skilled human base, which facilitates the achievement of temporary development.
- b) Investing in education and continuous training is one of the most successful and effective means of supporting the national economy and building a skilled human base, which paves the way for achieving sustainable development.
- c) Investing in continuous learning and training is considered a successful and effective tool to support the national economy and to build a skilled human base, which paves the way for sustainable development.
- d) Investing in ongoing education and training is a very successful way to support the national economy and build an experienced workforce, which opens the door for achievable development.

39. تتمتع مصر بمناخ معتدل طوال العام وتمتلك أعمالاً هندسية قديمة وحديثة تجعلها ذات حضارة عريقة، وهذا يشجع السائحين على التوافد إليها لقضاء أفضل الأوقات.

- a) Egypt enjoys a mild climate throughout the year and has ancient and modern engineering jobs that make it an ancient civilization, and this encourages tourists to flock to it to spend the best times.
- b) Egypt enjoys a mild weather throughout the year and has ancient and modern engineering works that make it an ancient culture, and this encourages tourists to think of it to spend the best times.
- c) Egypt enjoys a moderate climate throughout the year, and has ancient and modern engineering works that make it an ancient civilization. This encourages tourists to flock to it to spend the best times.
- d) Egypt enjoys a moderate atmosphere throughout the year and has ancient and modern engineering works that make it an ancient culture, and this encourages tourists to race to it to spend the best times.

ثالثاً: الأسئلة المقالية (كل سؤال درجتان):

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

40. After the machine had been repaired, it was in a good condition. (Having)

.....

41. After she had saved enough money, she bought a new car. (until)

.....

Answer the following questions: (The Count of Monte Cristo)

42. Do you think Edmond's escape was more about intelligence or luck? Why?

.....

43. If you were in Edmond's situation, would you have the courage to risk drowning for freedom? Why?

.....

رابعاً: الأسئلة المقالية (سؤال واحد خمس درجات):

Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

44. What role has your family played in your life?

.....

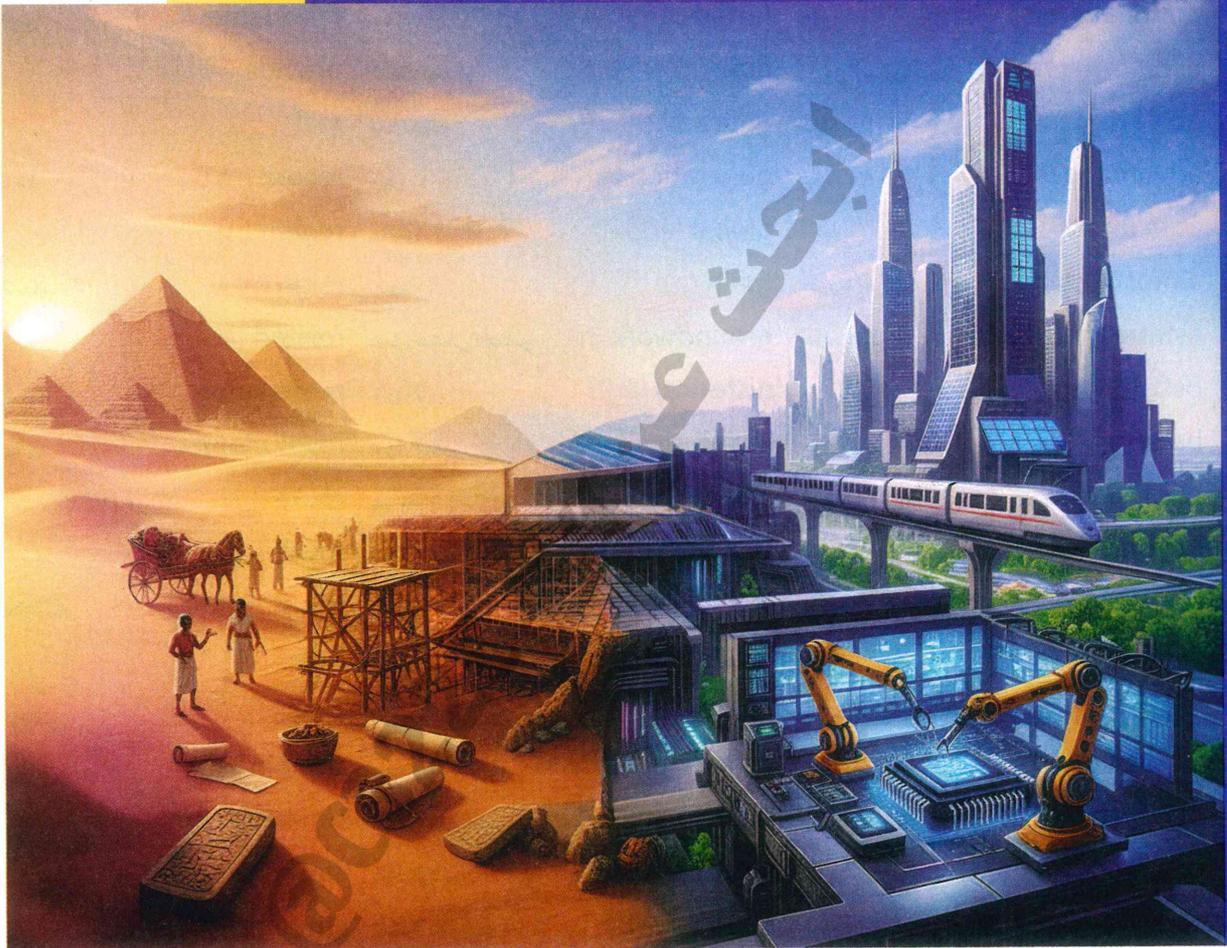
.....

.....

.....

Unit 8

A Journey Through Time



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Identify main ideas, key details, and cultural/historical references in short informational and narrative texts.
- Language** - Active and passive voice.
- Listening** - Extract specific information and gist from interviews, narrated monologs, and diary-style reports.
- Writing** - Compose descriptive, expository, and short informational texts using cohesive devices and precise vocabulary.
- Speaking** - Present ideas, justify opinions, and role-play authentic contexts with clear organization and target language.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

confluence (n)	ملتقى/التقاء/مصب	irrigation system (n)	نظام ري	scribe (n)	الكاتب (مهنة قديمة)
fertile soil (n)	تربة خصبة	legal code (n)	مدونة/نظام قانوني	strategically (adv)	استراتيجياً
foundation (n)	أساس/مؤسسة	maritime (adj)	بحري	ziggurat (n)	زقورة (بُجْ هَرَمِي)
geographical (adj)	جغرافي	peninsula (n)	شبه جزيرة		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abundant (adj)	وافر	fertilizer (n)	سماد	productive (adj)	مُنتِج/إنتاجي
access (n) (v) (ed)	مدخل/سبيل/يصل	flow (n) (v) (ed)	تدفق/يتدفق	provide (v) (d)	يزود
achievement (n)	إنجاز	gateway (n)	ممر/بوابة	real (adj)	حقيقي
advantage (n)	ميزة	generation (n)	جيل	record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل
agricultural (adj)	زراعي	global (adj)	عالمي	region (n)	إقليم
almost (adv)	تقريباً	grain (n)	حبوب	reign (n)	عهد/فترة حكم
astronomer (n)	عالم فلك	groundwork (n)	عمل أساسي/أساس	related (adj)	مرتبط
Babylon (n)	بلاد بابل	historical (adj)	تاريخي	remarkable (adj)	رائع/مميز
barren (adj)	جرداء/غير خصبة	impressive (adj)	مؤثر/مبهر	revolutionize (v) (d)	يحدث ثورة
base (n)	أساس	justice (n)	عدالة	route (n)	طريق
beyond (adv)	ما وراء	lengthy (adj)	مطول	royal (adj)	ملكي
blessed (adj)	مبارك	lifeline (n)	شريان حياة	ruins (n)	بقايا/أطلال/آثار
campaign (n)	حملة	location (n)	موقع	ruler (n)	حاكم
chart (n) (v) (ed)	مخطط/يرسم/يخطط	mainland (n)	اليابسة/البر الرئيسي	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقوم بـ
civilization (n)	حضارة	major (adj)	رئيسي	shipping (n)	شحن
connect (v) (ed)	يربط/يصل	Mediterranean Sea (n)	البحر المتوسط	similarity (n)	تشابه
continent (n)	قارة	Mesopotamia (n)	بلاد الرافدين	store (n) (v) (d)	مخزن/محل/يخزن
convince (v) (d)	يقنع	Middle East (n)	الشرق الأوسط	strategic (adj)	استراتيجي
create (v) (d)	ينتج/يبدع/يبتكر	mighty (adj)	عظيم/مهيب	stream (n)	نهر/مجرى ماء
crossroads (n)	تقاطع طريق/ملتقى	migration (n)	هجرة	surface (n)	سطح
crucial (adj)	حاسم	name (n) (v) (d)	اسم/يسمى	surround (v) (ed)	يحيط بـ
culture (n)	ثقافة	network (n)	شبكة	terrace (n)	شرفة
drainage (n)	صرف (زراعي/صحي)	paradise (n)	جنة	territory (n)	أرض/منطقة
eliminate (v) (d)	يمحو/يزيل	physical (adj)	مادي/جسدي	Tigris (n)	نهر دجلة
equally (adv)	بالتساوي	position (n)	موضع	trade (n) (v) (d)	تجارة/يتاجر
Euphrates (n)	نهر الفرات	positioning (n)	تموضع/تحديد وضع	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
feature (n)	سمة/خاصية	power (n)	قوة	worship (n) (v) (ed)	عبادة/يعبد

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many coastal cities depend heavily on trade for their economic prosperity.
a) agricultural b) maritime c) land d) mining
- The Sinai connects Africa and Asia and is bordered by two arms of the Red Sea.
a) Canal b) lake c) Island d) Peninsula
- The atlas provides detailed information about all continents and countries of the world.
a) geographical b) biographical c) physical d) technological
- Egypt is positioned between three continents, making it historically important for trade.
a) unfortunately b) dangerously c) strategically d) poorly
- According to the rules, all employees need a security card to gain to the building after hours.
a) access b) migration c) shipping d) departure
- The movie crew explored several sites before choosing the final for shooting.
a) position b) location c) situation d) invention
- The artist created a/an portrait that captured every detail of the actor's face.
a) simple b) ordinary c) remarkable d) crucial
- A is a natural flow of water that moves across the land and is narrower than a river.
a) sea b) peninsula c) well d) stream

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعابير والمصطلحات

keep records	يحافظ على سجلات	make ... unique	يجعل ... فريداً	play a role	يلعب دوراً
lay the foundation for	يضع الأساس لـ	offer advantages	يقدم مزايا	serve as a bridge	يعمل بمثابة جسر

Prepositions

حروف الجر

access to	مدخل / وصول إلى	important for	مهم لـ	situated at	واقع في
focus on	يركز على	proud of	فخور بـ	trade with	يتاجر مع
gateway for	ممر لـ	related to	مرتبط بـ	use of	استخدام لـ

Special Collocations

clay tablets	ألواح طينية	meeting point	نقطة التقاء	temple tower	برج معبد
cultural exchange	تبادل ثقافي	natural bridge	جسر طبيعي	water supply	إمدادات مياه
hanging gardens	الحدائق المعلقة	set of laws	مجموعة قوانين		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
access	يصل إلى	access	وصول	accessible	متاح / يمكن الوصول اليه
connect	يصل	connection connector	اتصال موصل	connected	متصل
create	يبدع	creation creator	إبداع مبدع	creative	مبدع
eliminate	يزيل	elimination	إزالة	eliminative eliminated	مزيل مزال

impress	يؤثر	impression	انطباع	impressive impressed	مبهر/ مؤثر متأثر
migrate	يهاجر	migration migrant	هجرة مهاجر	migratory	مهاجر
produce	ينتج	production producer product productivity	إنتاج منتج منتج إنتاجية	productive	منتج/ إنتاجي
record	سجل	record recording recorder	سجل تسجيل مسجل	recorded	مسجل
revolutionize	يحدث ثورة	revolution	ثورة	revolutionary	ثوري
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serviceable	صالح للاستخدام
surround	يحيط بـ	surroundings	البيئة المحيطة	surrounding	قريب

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The new airport design will surely **impress** visitors. (v)
 She made a good **impression** during her job interview. (n)
 The view from the top of the mountain was truly **impressive**. (adj)
 My friend was **impressed** by my quick problem-solving skills. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
confluence	مُلْتَقَى/الْتِقَاء	gathering/meeting		divergence/isolation	تباعد/انعزال
convince	يُقْنِع	persuade/assure		dissuade/discourage	يصرف عن/ يثبط
crucial	حاسم	critical/vital/essential		insignificant/unimportant	غير مهم/ تافه
eliminate	يُخَذِّف/ يُزِيل	remove/terminate		include/add/retain	يضم/ يضيف/ يحتفظ بـ
foundation	أساس	base/groundwork		collapse/ruin	انهيار/ أطلال
impressive	مُبْهَر	inspiring/admirable		dull/uninspiring	ممل/ غير ملهم
major	رئيسي	significant/important		minor/insignificant	ثانوي/ أقل أهمية
physical	مادى/ جسمانى	material/bodily/corporal		non-physical/spiritual	غير مادى/ روحى
provide	يُرْوِد	supply/equip/give		withhold/deprive	يمنع/ يحرم
related	مُرْتَبِط	connected/linked		unrelated/unconnected	غير مرتبط/ غير متصل
similarity	تَشَابُه	resemblance/likeness		difference/contrast	اختلاف/ تباين
surround	يُحِيط	enclose/circle		release/free	يطلق/ يحرر
unique	فَرِيد	distinctive/special		common/ordinary	شائع/ عادى

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Suez Canal serves as a between Europe and Asia, connecting the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea.
a) role b) situation c) bridge d) campaign
- Scientists discovered that many health problems are related poor sleep.
a) to b) for c) at d) in
- The ancient fortress was situated the top of a steep hill overlooking the valley.
a) away b) at c) on d) of
- Volunteers in supporting community programs and helping those in need.
a) leave a place b) keep records c) are keen d) play a role
- Many birds migrate south during winter to find warmer climates and more food. The adjective of the verb "migrate" is
a) migrated b) migration c) migrant d) migratory
- The new building design includes ramps and elevators to make it for people with disabilities.
a) physical b) connected c) accessible d) excessive
- The captain made a crucial decision that saved the ship from sinking. The antonym of the word "crucial" is
a) vital b) insignificant c) essential d) faraway
- The old building collapsed because its foundation had weakened over time. The synonym of the word "foundation" is
a) base b) collapse c) surface d) branch

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم اجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

The Crossroads of Civilizations

Egypt's unique **geographical**⁽¹⁾ position has made it one of the most **strategically**⁽²⁾ important countries in the world throughout history. Situated at the northeastern corner of Africa, Egypt serves as a natural bridge connecting three continents: Africa, Asia, and Europe.



The country's location offers several remarkable advantages. The Sinai **Peninsula**⁽³⁾ is Egypt's only land bridge to Asia and beyond. This strategic positioning has made Egypt a crucial gateway for trade, culture, and human migration for thousands of years.

- (1) جغرافى (2) استراتيجيًا
(3) شبه جزيرة (4) بحرى
(5) ملقى

Egypt's **maritime**⁽⁴⁾ advantages are equally impressive. The country controls both the Mediterranean Sea to the north and the Red Sea to the east, providing access to major shipping routes. The Suez Canal, completed in 1869, revolutionized global trade by creating a direct water route between Europe and Asia, eliminating the need for the lengthy journey around Africa.

The **confluence**⁽⁵⁾ of the Nile River with the Mediterranean Sea has created the fertile Nile Delta, one of the world's most productive agricultural regions. This river system, flowing north for over 4,000 miles from East Africa, has been Egypt's lifeline since ancient times.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What continents does Egypt's geographical position connect?
 - a) Africa, Asia, and North America.
 - b) Africa, Asia, and Europe.
 - c) Africa, Europe, and South America.
 - d) Asia, Europe, and North America.
2. What can be inferred about Egypt's economy based on its control of the Suez Canal and access to major shipping routes?
 - a) It is a major player in global trade.
 - b) It is heavily reliant on agriculture.
 - c) It is isolated from international commerce.
 - d) It is primarily a tourist-based economy.
3. How has the Suez Canal impacted global trade?
 - a) It increased reliance on African ports.
 - b) It reduced trade between Europe and Asia.
 - c) It eliminated the need for lengthy journeys around Africa.
 - d) It had a minimal impact on global commerce.
4. What would likely happen to Egypt's agricultural production if the Nile River were to change course or dry up?
 - a) It would have no impact on the country's economy.
 - b) It would lead to an increase in agricultural production.
 - c) It would have no effect on the country's food supply.
 - d) It would severely impact the country's agricultural production.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



"I Am Hammurabi, King of Babylon"

I am Hammurabi, ruler⁽¹⁾ of Babylon, the heart of Mesopotamia, the land between the mighty⁽²⁾ Tigris and Euphrates rivers. Floods from the two rivers made our land blessed with fertile soil, which allowed my people to grow abundant crops and build great cities. We learned early that water must be controlled, so we built canals and irrigation systems⁽³⁾ to feed our fields and our families.



But our greatness was not in farming alone. Under my reign, we created one of the first written legal codes⁽⁴⁾, the Code of Hammurabi, so that justice would be the same for all - rich or poor. Traders came from distant lands, bringing goods, ideas, and knowledge. Our scribes wrote stories on clay tablets, and our astronomers⁽⁵⁾ charted the stars. In Babylon, we built temples called ziggurats that rose high into the sky to show our power. The hanging gardens, if you could see them, were like paradise⁽⁶⁾ itself: green terraces overflowing with life.

Mesopotamia was unique because we laid the foundation⁽⁷⁾ for cities, laws, and learning. Though empires⁽⁸⁾ rise and fall, the ideas born here still live in your world today. Remember us, for we were the first to build a civilization.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| (1) حاكم | (2) عظيم/مهيب |
| (3) أنظمة ري | (4) نظام قانوني |
| (5) علماء الفلك | (6) جنة |
| (7) أساس | (8) إمبراطوريات |

Definitions

confluence	ملتقى	the coming together of two rivers or streams
fertile soil	تربة خصبة	soil that contains the necessary nutrients مواد غذائية for plant growth, making it suitable for agriculture
foundation	أساس / مؤسسة	the lowest part of a structure or building, providing support and stability استقرار to prevent collapse or damage
geographical	جغرافي	related to the physical features of the earth's surface
irrigation system	نظام ري	system designed to supply water to agricultural land, maintaining plant growth and crop yields
legal code	مدونة قانونية	a collection of laws and regulations تشريعات that govern the behavior of individuals and societies
maritime	بحري	related to the sea, shipping, or navigation
peninsula	شبه جزيرة	a piece of land almost surrounded by water, but connected to the mainland
scribe	كاتب (مهنة قديمة)	a person who writes documents, records historical events, and creates written copies of important texts
strategically	استراتيجيًا	in a way that is important for planning and advantage in position
ziggurat	زقورة (بُرج هَمِي)	an ancient Mesopotamian بلاد الرافدين temple tower, typically built in stepped layers, serving as a center of worship and religious rituals طقوس

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	region	إقليم (منطقة كبيرة محددة بخصائص مميزة (طبيعية، مناخية، ثقافية، إدارية)	The Nile Delta is a very fertile region in Egypt. This region is known for its hot climate and beautiful deserts.
	territory	منطقة / أرض (منطقة جغرافية تخضع لسيطرة دولة أو سلطة ما)	That island is considered part of the country's territory .
2	route	طريق بين منطقتين / بلدين / نقطتين	What is the safest route to the city center?
	road	طريق (مصطلح عام لأي مسار ممد يربط بين المدن أو المناطق)	The road between Cairo and Alexandria is very busy.
	street	شارع في منطقة حضرية (مدينة أو بلدة غالبًا بمبانٍ على جانبيها)	I live on a quiet street near the market.
	avenue	طريق / سبيل (طريق عريض وهام، غالبًا به أشجار على الجانبين)	They walked down the main avenue lined with palm trees.

base (n)

- ١- قاعدة / أساس (الجزء الأسفل الذي يحمل فوقه باقى الشيء)
٢- قاعدة (لشركة / عسكرية)
٣- فكرة أساسية لشيء

The sculptor's name can be found at the **base** of the statue.
After the attack, the aircraft returned to the **base**.
She used her family's history as a **base** for her novel.

basis (n)

- أساس / قاعدة (الأفكار والحقائق الهامة التي منها يمكن للشيء أن يتطور)

The scientist's work forms the **basis** of all modern physiology.

basic (adj)

- أساسى / جوهري (أهم جزء فى الشيء الذى بدونه لا يمكن لهذا الشيء أن يوجد).

Rice is the **basic** ingredient of this dish.

basics (n)

- أساسيات (تشير إلى العناصر أو المبادئ أو المهارات الأساسية الضرورية لفهم أو إنجاز شيء ما).

Before learning advanced grammar, you must understand the **basics** of English.

convince

- يُقْنِع (يجعلك مقتنعًا بشيء من الناحية الفكرية أو الاعتقادية (بتغيير رأيك أو معتقدك).

She tried to **convince** her parents that she was telling the truth.

persuade

- يُقْنِع / يَحْت (يدفعك لاتخاذ إجراء أو القيام بعمل ما (بتغيير سلوكك).

He finally **persuaded** his friend to join the football team.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A is the lowest part of a structure or building, providing support and stability to prevent collapse or damage.
a) ziggurat b) confluence c) foundation d) peninsula
- A legal is a collection of laws and regulations that govern the behavior of individuals and societies.
a) basis b) code c) password d) guide
- The memorial نصب تذكاري is built on a hard made of concrete.
a) base b) basic c) basis d) basics
- The bus company changed its due to bridge construction on Main Street.
a) road b) street c) avenue d) route
- The salesman couldn't us that the product was worth such a high price.
a) convince b) influence c) push d) refrain
- The Egyptian soldiers have carried out their orders to defend their bravely.
a) limits b) region c) territory d) groundwork

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Fishermen often find good catches at the where warm and cold ocean currents meet.
a) confluence b) road c) irrigation d) route
2. Farmers prefer to plant crops in soil where plants grow easily and more productively.
a) desert b) fertile c) barren d) enormous
3. The government invested millions of pounds in improving the system in rural areas to save water.
a) education b) transportation c) irrigation d) location
4. In Ancient Egypt, a was responsible for recording important events and keeping administrative records.
a) warrior b) confluence c) merchant d) scribe
5. The Citadel in Cairo was built on a high hill to control access to Egypt.
a) accidentally b) carelessly c) strategically d) secretly
6. A/An is an ancient Mesopotamian temple tower, typically built in stepped layers, serving as a center of worship and religious rituals.
a) counter b) ziggurat c) obelisk d) memorial
7. The health organization started a national to encourage people to stop smoking.
a) campaign b) competition c) company d) migration
8. For many farmers, the Nile River is a real that provides water for their crops.
a) guideline b) deadline c) pipeline d) lifeline
9. It's to arrive early for the interview if you want to make a good impression.
a) banned b) crucial c) useless d) optional
10. Our company decided to unnecessary expenses to improve profits and production.
a) increase b) charge c) eliminate d) change
11. The main of most shopping websites and applications is their user-friendly interface.
a) feature b) mistake c) surface d) flow
12. Alexander the Great was one of history's most powerful who controlled many countries.
a) scribes b) inventors c) citizens d) rulers
13. Seasonal helps animals find food and survive tough weather all over the world.
a) meditation b) migration c) motivation d) maritime
14. The Rosetta Stone حجر رشيد is an important artifact that helped decipher يفك شفرة ancient Egyptian hieroglyphs.
a) modern b) contemporary c) historical d) fictional
15. The younger spends a lot of time using smartphones and social media.
a) generation b) formation c) education d) elimination
16. New machines have made the factory much more than before.
a) fertile b) productive c) historical d) outdated
17. The National Museum as an educational resource for school and university students.
a) reduces b) fights c) plays d) serves
18. Tourists like to visit the ancient of old temples in Rome and other Italian cities.
a) ruins b) situations c) positions d) reflections
19. In the past, high walls were built to palaces to keep enemies away.
a) follow b) cross c) surround d) block
20. Only members of the family were allowed to attend the private dinner with the queen.
a) central b) royal c) political d) traditional

21. Dams are built to stop the of water during heavy rain or floods and protect people.
 a) decline b) flow c) wave d) storm
22. It is a fact that modern techniques have increased crop yields significantly.
 a) cultural b) commercial c) informal d) agricultural
23. All environmentalists علماء البيئة claim that using natural is better for the environment than chemical ones.
 a) services b) fertilizers c) drainage d) groundwork
24. A modernized railway connects all cities and governorates in Egypt at reasonable prices.
 a) access b) location c) network d) station
25. The High Dam in Aswan generates for many cities in Upper Egypt.
 a) power b) powder c) drainage d) safety
26. Many charities help food and water to poor families in poor villages all over the country.
 a) prevent b) prefer c) focus d) provide
27. Due to modern technology, you can data safely on a computer or in the cloud site.
 a) appear b) store c) hide d) lose
28. Smartphones have how we access information and entertainment especially for young people.
 a) stabilized b) accepted c) revolutionized d) explored
29. Scientists must be sure to all the experiment results carefully to reach accurate conclusions.
 a) record b) neglect c) discover d) connect
30. Patients often complain about the waiting times at most public hospitals.
 a) short-term b) lengthy c) strategic d) slight

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

31. It's important to of your expenses to manage your money well.
 a) exchange notes b) make errors c) raise budget d) keep records
32. This gym advantages, such as a wide range of fitness classes and free online fitness tips.
 a) offers b) takes c) devises d) exchanges
33. You'll do better on the test if you focus what you're doing.
 a) of b) with c) on d) out
34. This small port became a major gateway trade between Asia and Europe.
 a) at b) for c) to d) on
35. University students from different countries took part in a exchange program to learn about each other's traditions.
 a) cultural b) commercial c) geographical d) trading
36. You need to connect your phone to the charger before the battery dies. The adjective of the verb "connect" is
 a) connects b) connected c) connection d) connector
37. The police found evidence related to the missing car. The synonym of the word "related" is
 a) separate b) enclosed c) linked d) delayed
38. Every person has a unique personality that makes them special. The antonym of the word "unique" is
 a) distinctive b) strategic c) contained d) common
39. The view from the top of the mountain was truly impressive. The adjective "impressive" is similar in meaning to
 a) inspiring b) crucial c) dull d) lengthy
40. There is a strong similarity between the two twins; they look almost the same. The noun "similarity" is opposite of
 a) resemblance b) conflict c) difference d) exchange

B Language

Active & Passive

المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active

المبنى للمعلوم

نستخدم المبنى للمعلوم عندما يكون الفاعل (سواء العاقل أو غير العاقل) أكثر أهمية من المفعول.

Hesham visited his neighbor last week.

من المهم هنا ذكر من قام بالزيارة.

وتتكون الجملة في المبنى للمعلوم من:

How to form the active:



Passive

المبنى للمجهول

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الحدث أكثر أهمية من الفاعل:

Stars are seen in the sky every night. (It is not important who sees them.)

وهو الجملة التي نبدأ فيها بالمفعول عندما لا نعرف من الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره أو هو معروف جداً:

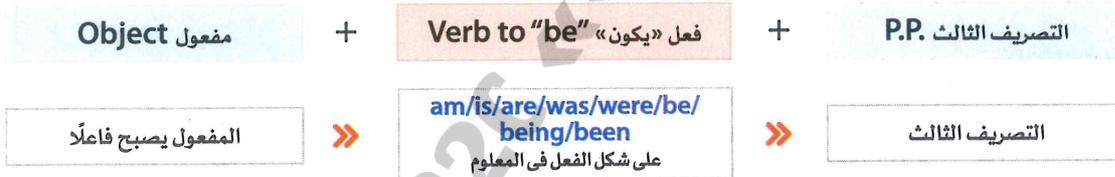
Ahmed's mobile phone was stolen last night. (We don't know who stole it.)

The thieves were arrested yesterday.

قُبِضَ على اللصوص أمس (معرفة من الذي يقبض على اللصوص فلا داعي لذكر البوليس)

How to form the passive:

وتتكون الجملة في المبنى للمجهول من:



1 Present simple passive

المضارع البسيط في المبنى للمجهول

Ahmed waters the plants every week.

(Active)

Affirmative الإثبات	Object المفعول + am/is/are + P.P. التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل. • The plants are watered by Ahmed every week.
Negative النفي	Object + am/is/are not + P.P. + by + subject. • The plants aren't watered by Ahmed every week.
Question السؤال	Am/Is/Are + object + P.P. + by + subject? • Are the plants watered by Ahmed every week? Wh-word + am/is/are + object + P.P. + by + subject? • When are the plants watered by Ahmed?

2 Present continuous passive

المضارع المستمر في المبني للمجهول

The porter **is carrying** the bag.

(Active)

Affirmative

الإثبات

Object المفعول + **am/is/are** + **being** + P.P. التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل.

• The bag **is being carried** by the porter.

Negative

النفي

Object + **am/is/are not** + **being** + P.P. + by + subject.

• The bag **isn't being carried** by the porter.

Question

السؤال

Am/Is/Are + object + **being** + P.P. + by + subject?

• **Is** the bag **being carried** by the porter?

Wh-word + **am/is/are** + object + **being** + P.P. + by + subject?

• Why **is** the bag **being carried** by the porter?

3 Past simple passive

الماضي البسيط في المبني للمجهول

Fatma **sent** the email.

(Active)

Affirmative

الإثبات

Object المفعول + **was/were** + P.P. التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل.

• The email **was sent** by Fatma.

Negative

النفي

Object + **was/were not** + P.P. + by + subject.

• The email **wasn't sent** by Fatma.

Question

السؤال

Was/Were + object + P.P. + by + subject?

• **Was** the email **sent** by Fatma?

Wh-word + **was/were** + object + P.P. + by + subject?

• When **was** the email **sent** by Fatma?

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Spanish at our school. We learn only English, German, and French.
a) is taught b) isn't taught c) doesn't teach d) teaches
- Repairs to the car at the moment.
a) are made b) are making
c) will be made d) are being made
- The fax machine by Alexander Bain in 1843.
a) was inventing b) has been invented
c) was invented d) invented
- This picture in the nineteenth century.
a) was painted b) was painting c) is painted d) could paint
- This museum by over 1,000 people every day.
a) is visiting b) is being visited c) is visited d) will be visited

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. We always take the bottles for recycling. (The bottles ...)
2. The chef is preparing lunch now. (prepared)
3. The government built a new school in the village last year. (was)
4. Does Osama study his lessons every day? (Are)
5. I didn't sell my old car as my son needed it. (sold)

4 Present perfect passive

المضارع التام في المبنى للمجهول

Mona **has bought** much food. (Active)

Affirmative
الإثبات

Object المفعول + **has/have + been + P.P.** التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل.
• Much food **has been bought** by Mona.

Negative
النفي

Object + **has/have + not + been + P.P.** + by + subject.
• Much food **hasn't been bought** by Mona.

Question
السؤال

Has/Have + object + been + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Has** much food **been bought** by Mona?
Wh-word + has/have + object + been + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Who has** much food **been bought** by?

5 Past continuous passive

الماضي المستمر في المبنى للمجهول

Rana **was cleaning** the room at 7 a.m. yesterday. (Active)

Affirmative
الإثبات

Object المفعول + **was/were + being + P.P.** التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل.
• The room **was being cleaned** by Rana at 7 a.m. yesterday.

Negative
النفي

Object + **was/were not + being + P.P.** + by + subject.
• The room **wasn't being cleaned** by Rana at 7 a.m. yesterday.

Question
السؤال

Was/Were + object + being + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Was** the room **being cleaned** by Rana at 7 a.m. yesterday?
Wh-word + was/were + object + being + P.P. + by + subject?
• **When was** the room **being cleaned** by Rana?

6 Past perfect passive

الماضى التام فى المبني للمجهول

Ali **had sent** the email before sleeping.

(Active)

Affirmative الإثبات

Object المفعول + **had + been + P.P.** التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل.
• The email **had been sent** by Ali before sleeping.

Negative النفى

Object + **had + not + been + P.P.** + by + subject.
• The email **hadn't been sent** by Ali before sleeping.

Question السؤال

Had + object + been + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Had** the email **been sent** by Ali before sleeping?
Wh-word + **had + object + been + P.P.** + by + subject?
• When **had** the email **been sent** by Ali?

Language

Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The dog yet.
a) hadn't been fed b) hasn't been fed c) has been fed d) hasn't feed
- The gate painted when it fell over the boy.
a) has been b) was c) was being d) is
- After the letter, it was posted.
a) has been written b) had written c) has written d) had been written
- The hotel before the flats were built.
a) had been opened b) was opening
c) will be opened d) has been opened
- The TV, so I turned it off.
a) was watching b) watched
c) wasn't being watched d) didn't watch

2 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:

- It has reported that the captain of the team is ill. (.....)
- When she heard that her flat had robbed, she reported it to the police. (.....)
- No one hasn't been allowed to enter without a ticket. (.....)
- While the washing machine was repaired, it made a strange sound. (.....)
- As soon as the criminal was arrested, he had been taken to prison. (.....)

7 Future simple passive (will)

المستقبل البسيط باستخدام (will) فى المبني للمجهول

Ayman **will build** a house in Assuit.

(Active)

Affirmative الإثبات

Object المفعول + **will + be + P.P.** التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل.
• A house **will be built** in Assiut by Ayman.

Negative النفى

Object + **will not (won't) + be + P.P.** + by + subject.
• A house **won't be built** in Assiut by Ayman.

Question السؤال

Will + object + be + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Will** a house **be built** in Assiut by Ayman?
Wh-word + **will + object + be + P.P.** + by + subject?
• Where **will** a house **be built** by Ayman?

8 Future passive (be going to)

المستقبل باستخدام (be going to) في المبني للمجهول

They **are going to** invite Samy to the party.

(Active)

Affirmative
الإثبات

Object المفعول + **am/is/are + going to + be + P.P.** التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل
• Samy **is going to be invited** to the party by them.

Negative
النفي

Object + **am/is/are + not + going to + be + P.P.** + by + subject.
• Samy **isn't going to be invited** to the party by them.

Question
السؤال

Am/Is/Are + object + going to + be + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Is Samy going to be invited** to the party by them?
Wh-word + am/is/are + object + going to + be + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Who is Samy going to be invited** to the party by?

9 Future perfect passive

المستقبل التام في المبني للمجهول

By 9 p.m., she **will have cleaned** the flat.

(Active)

Affirmative
الإثبات

Object المفعول + **will + have been + P.P.** التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل
• By 9 p.m., the flat **will have been cleaned**.

Negative
النفي

Object + **will not (won't) + have been + P.P.** + by + subject.
• The flat **won't have been cleaned** until 9 p.m.

Question
السؤال

Will + object + have been + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Will the flat have been cleaned** by 9 p.m.?
Wh-word + will + object + have been + P.P. + by + subject?
• **When will the flat have been cleaned?**

10 Modal verbs passive

الأفعال الناقصة في المبني للمجهول

They **can solve** this problem.

(Active)

Affirmative
الإثبات

Object المفعول + **modal verb + be + P.P.** التصريف الثالث + by + subject الفاعل
• This problem **can be solved**.

Negative
النفي

Object + **modal verb + not + be + P.P.** + by + subject.
• This problem **can't be solved**.

Question
السؤال

Modal verb + object + be + P.P. + by + subject?
• **Can this problem be solved?**
Wh-word + modal verb + object + be + P.P. + by + subject?
• **How can this problem be solved?**

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The kidnappers before trying to escape.
 a) were arresting b) had been arrested c) have been arrested d) will arrest
2. Taking pictures near military or important buildings.
 a) is allowing b) allows c) is not allowed d) aren't allowed
3. My car now.
 a) is being serviced b) was serviced
 c) is servicing d) had been serviced
4. When the car is taken for a service, the oil and the brakes are tested.
 a) changes b) was changed c) changing d) is changed
5. The party invitations to all my friends yesterday afternoon.
 a) were sent b) sent c) have been sent d) were sending
6. Were the bags when the porter dropped them?
 a) been carried b) being carried c) carry d) carrying
7. Look at all the dust in here! It looks as if this room for a month.
 a) wasn't cleaned b) isn't cleaned c) hasn't been cleaned d) has cleaned
8. "Great Expectations" by my brother when the lights went out.
 a) were being read b) have been read c) was reading d) was being read
9. New cities and bridges in Egypt recently.
 a) have been built b) have built c) were building d) were being built
10. The man who by a snake was given a serum.
 a) is bitten b) has been bitten c) had bitten d) had been bitten
11. I hate it when my meat cooked properly.
 a) not b) wasn't c) isn't d) won't be
12. Was Nader when he saw his exam results?
 a) being delighted b) delighted c) been delighted d) delight
13. Naguib Mahfouz's books into many languages.
 a) have translated b) had been translated
 c) were translating d) have been translated
14. I fell asleep while the movie
 a) was being watched b) watched
 c) was watching d) could be watched
15. The new library by the Prime Minister next month.
 a) is being opened b) was opened c) will be opened d) is opening
16. The house tomorrow.
 a) will paint b) was being painted c) is going to be painted d) is painted
17. Something about the problem of pollution.
 a) has to be done b) must do
 c) is done d) need to be done
18. Colored clothes separately.
 a) must wash b) must be washed c) should wash d) are washing
19. Meat well before it is eaten.
 a) have to be cooked b) is cooking
 c) should cook d) should be cooked

20. Many trees by the gardener since he was employed.
 a) have been planted b) were planted c) have planted d) were planting
21. A new space station in the future.
 a) will build b) will be built c) is built d) should build
22. Could your math problem?
 a) be solving b) solve c) be solved d) being solved
23. A new airport in this area by next October.
 a) had been built b) has been built
 c) will build d) will have been built
24. Don't touch that electric stove while it
 a) was being repaired b) being repaired
 c) is being repaired d) will be repairing
25. No one because the teacher forgave all students.
 a) punished b) was punished c) wasn't punished d) was punishing
26. Rainforests in the areas where it rains a lot.
 a) grow b) growing c) will be grown d) are grown
27. They couldn't find the woman who
 a) was disappearing b) had been disappeared
 c) was disappeared d) had disappeared
28. The archaeologists believe that the lost city of Atlantis beneath the waves for centuries.
 a) was lying b) has been lying c) has been laid d) will have lain
29. Leila seems to break the bottles. The passive form is ".....".
 a) The bottles seem to be broken by Leila
 b) The bottles are seemed to break by Leila
 c) The bottles will be broken by Leila
 d) The bottles are seemed to be broken by Leila
30. Choose the sentence that gives the best sense in English.
 a) The cleaners are collecting the rubbish every morning at 7 a.m.
 b) The rubbish is collected every morning at 7 a.m.
 c) They collect it every morning at 7 a.m.
 d) It is collected every morning at 7 a.m.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I expect the author will publish the new story soon. (be)

2. People in Japan build houses of wood because of the earthquakes there. (Houses ...)

3. It's banned to smoke here. It's a "No Smoking" place. (Smoking)

4. Two men are polishing the new furniture now. (polished)

5. The boys opened the boxes and stole the books. (The boxes ...)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. That famous mosque is visited by millions of people at the moment. (.....)
2. Food is well preparing at this restaurant. (.....)
3. It is no use trying. You will be wasted your time. (.....)
4. Information about global warming can find on the internet. (.....)
5. You will inform of the company's decision tomorrow. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Before the invention of the printing press, a/an would carefully copy manuscripts by hand.
a) sculptor b) author c) sailor d) scribe
2. A/An is a piece of land almost surrounded by water but connected to the mainland.
a) region b) peninsula c) island d) desert
3. The country's economy depends heavily on its trade, as it exports most goods by sea.
a) maritime b) domestic c) agricultural d) aerial
4. The city lies at the of two great rivers, making it a strategic location for trade.
a) distance b) mouth c) confluence d) surface
5. Scientists study features like mountains, rivers, and valleys to understand the Earth's surface.
a) geographical b) biological c) chemical d) historical
6. The desert landscape was completely with no trees, plants, or signs of life anywhere.
a) fertile b) barren c) tropical d) risky
7. The military established a near the border to monitor the area and protect the region.
a) center b) ziggurat c) foundation d) base
8. When you travel abroad, it's important to respect the local and follow customs and etiquette.
a) currency b) literature c) culture d) fiction
9. Education is often described as the to success and better opportunities in life.
a) gateway b) barrier c) terminal d) lounge
10. Climate change is a/an issue that affects every country and requires international cooperation to solve.
a) local b) global c) personal d) individual
11. The documentary shows events that actually happened during World War II, not fictional stories.
a) imaginary b) royal c) real d) created
12. The Mona Lisa, a famous portrait, is truly; there's no other artwork like it in the world.
a) real b) fictional c) ordinary d) unique
13. Divers who were looking for the lost boat explored the sea's before diving deeper.
a) summit b) surface c) corner d) access
14. The company is known for its fast and reliable services around the world with a fleet of ships.
a) driving b) industry c) shipping d) farming
15. The King and Queen and their sons and daughters are known as the family.
a) royal b) real c) historical d) imaginary
16. Adding your own personal style and creativity can your project unique and different from everyone else's work.
a) make b) hide c) lose d) do
17. The internet provides people with access information and knowledge from around the world.
a) from b) to c) of d) in
18. Egypt has been trying to increase its ability to trade African countries by improving transportation routes.
a) at b) for c) of d) with
19. English is a major subject that all students must study at school. The antonym of the adjective "major" is
a) significant b) fake c) minor d) common

20. Tall trees surround the house and make it look peaceful. The synonym of the verb "surround" is
- a) enclose b) release c) provide d) notice
- Language**
21. Look! A stage in the square.
- a) is being built b) is built c) is building d) will be built
22. My friend took me in his car while mine repaired.
- a) has been b) was being c) was d) had been
23. Ahmed was punished because many mistakes made by him.
- a) had been b) are c) will be d) were being
24. A lot of money on food, medicine, and education every year.
- a) are spent b) were spent c) spends d) is spent
25. I by anyone of my friends since the last time I was ill.
- a) haven't visited b) haven't been visited
c) was visited d) hadn't been visited
26. By the end of this century, most of the world's oil supplies
- a) have been used up b) will have been used up
c) will have used up d) were used
27. A: Who's going to meet him at the airport? B: He by our ambassador.
- a) will meet b) is met
c) is going to be met d) will have been met
28. This house as it is very old.
- a) have demolished b) is demolished
c) should demolish d) ought to be demolished
29. The amount of energy we use every year
- a) can reduce b) reducing c) must reduce d) must be reduced
30. The windows today.
- a) are washing b) washed
c) are going to be washed d) had been washed
31. A: "Did someone throw those letters away?" B: "Yes, but it was a mistake. They away."
- a) shouldn't have been thrown b) shouldn't be thrown
c) need to be thrown d) mustn't be thrown
32. Yesterday evening, the TV program by nearly a million people.
- a) had been watched b) was watched c) was watching d) has been watched
33. Why before selling the house?
- a) hadn't I told b) I hadn't told c) I wasn't told d) hadn't I been told
34. Arabic in Egypt, Saudi Arabia, Syria, Iraq, and many other countries.
- a) is spoken b) was spoken c) speaks d) is speaking
35. Avoid this fire, or you
- a) will burn b) were burned c) will be burned d) has been burned
36. What hadn't been expected.
- a) was saying b) is saying c) have been said d) was said
37. Trees quickly and well if people give them due care.
- a) are grown b) grow c) will be grown d) are growing
38. The car will be bought as soon as the money
- a) had saved b) had been saved c) is saved d) has been saved
39. I didn't realize that someone was listening to us. The passive form is ".....".
- a) Someone wasn't realized to listen to us b) I didn't realize that we were being listened to
c) We weren't realized to be listened to d) We were being realized by someone
40. Because of the patient's health,
- a) the doctor was advised to lose weight b) he was advised by the doctor to lose weight
c) the doctor wants to lose weight d) he advised the doctor to lose weight

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

birthplace (n)	موطن	innovation (n)	ابتكار	silk road (n)	طريق الحرير
dynasty (n)	سلالة حاكمة	porcelain (n)	خزف صيني / بورسيلين	terracotta (n)	خزف طيني

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

archaeological (adj)	أثرى	fees (n)	رسوم	population (n)	سكان
architecture (n)	عمارة / هندسة معمارية	fluffy (adj)	ناعم	portrait (n)	صورة شخصية
army (n)	جيش	glowing (adj)	متوهج / لامع	powerful (adj)	قوى
art (n)	فن	grilled (adj)	مشوى	preserve (v) (d)	يحفظ / يصون
battle (n)	معركة	growing (adj)	متزايد	printing (n)	طباعة
border (n) (v) (ed)	حدود / يحد	gunpowder (n)	بارود	religion (n)	دين
cargo (n)	بضائع / حمولة	home economics (n)	الاقتصاد المنزلي	religious (adj)	دينى
ceramic (n)	سيراميك	influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير / يؤثر	repetition (n)	تكرار
clay (n)	طين / صلصال	invasion (n)	غزو	revenue (n)	إيرادات / دخل
compass (n)	بوصلة	kingdom (n)	مملكة	rule (n) (v) (d)	قاعدة / يحكم
complex (n) (adj)	مجمع / معقد	life-sized (adj)	بالحجم الطبيعي	scholar (n)	باحث / دارس
Confucianism (n)	الكونفوشيوسية (نظام فلسفى وأخلاقى فى الصين القديمة)	logical (adj)	منطقى	sculpture (n)	تمثال / فن النحت
construct (v) (ed)	يبنى / يشيد	memories (n)	ذكريات	shape (n) (v) (d)	شكل / يشكل
course (n)	مسار	merchant (n)	تاجر	simile (n)	تشبيه
craftsmanship (n)	براعة	metaphor (n)	استعارة (بلاغية)	smuggler (n)	مُهْرَب
deer (n)	ظبي / غزال	northern (adj)	شمالى	text (n)	نص
delight (n)	بهجة / سعادة	oases (n)	واحات	thrive (v) (d)	يزدهر
deliver (v) (ed)	يسلم / يوصل	order (n)	ترتيب	tomb (n)	قبر / ضريح
details (n)	تفاصيل	originate (v) (d)	ينشأ	tradition (n)	تقليد
diary (n)	مذكرة / يوميات	package (n)	طرد / علبة	transform (v) (ed)	يحول
display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض / يعرض	Parthenon (n)	البارثينون (معبد إغريقى فى أثينا)	vast (adj)	شاسع / ضخم
emperor (n)	إمبراطور	pearl (n)	لؤلؤ	warrior (n)	محارب
feed (v)	يطعم / يغذى	philosophy (n)	فلسفة	zone (n)	منطقة

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Egypt is proud to be the of four Nobel Prize winners in many fields.
a) groundwork b) birthplace c) zone d) university
- The new smartphone is a great example of modern in design and technology.
a) competition b) imitation c) innovation d) discovery
- During the war, many young men decided to join the to serve their country.
a) army b) college c) company d) enemy
- Sailors used a to navigate across the ocean before the invention of GPS.
a) telescope b) compass c) terracotta d) thermometer
- The was arrested at the border for trying to transport illegal goods across the country.
a) smuggler b) inventor c) diplomat d) warrior
- People go to special places such as mosques and churches for reasons, such as prayer or worship.
a) faraway b) financial c) educational d) religious
- Firework displays use combined with various chemicals to create colorful explosions.
a) liquid b) pearl c) gunpowder d) powder
- You must make sure any food is sealed مقل before you use it, or it may be harmful.
a) content b) suitcase c) order d) package

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

(be) known as	يُعرف باسم	have in common	يشتركون في	keep knowledge alive	يحافظ على استمرارية المعرفة
(be) remembered for	يُذكر بسبب	in detail	بالتفصيل	stand as a symbol of	يقف رمزاً لـ

Prepositions

حروف الجر

compared to	مقارنة بـ	know about	يعرف عن	surrounded by	محاط بـ
famous for	مشهور بـ	pass down	ينقل / يورث	thanks to	بفضل
impact on	تأثير على	protect ... from	يحمي ... من	walk up	يصعد / يمشى صعوداً

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
construct	يبني / يشيد	construction constructor	بناء منشئ / مشيد	constructive	بناءة / إيجابي
delight	يفرح / يسعد	delight	سعادة / بهجة	delightful delighted	مفرح / مبتهج سعيد / مبتهج
deliver	يسلم	delivery	تسليم	delivered	مسلم / تم توصيله
grow	ينمو	growth	نمو	growing	نام
innovate	يبتكر	innovation innovator	ابتكار مبتكر	innovative	مبتكر

invade	يغزو	invasion invader	غزو غازي	invasive	غزوي
originate	ينشأ	origin originator	أصل مؤسس	original	أصلي
repeat	يكرر	repetition	تكرار	repetitive repeated	تكراري مكرر
smuggle	يهرب	smuggling smuggler	تهريب مهرب	smuggled	مهرب
thrive	يزدهر	thriving	ازدهار	thriving	مُزدهر
transform	يحوّل	transformation transformer	تحويل محوّل	transformative transformed	تحويلي محول

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The company promised to **deliver** high-quality products that meet customer expectations. (v)
- We ordered pizza online and the **delivery** arrived at our door in just 20 minutes. (n)
- The **delivered** pizza was cold, so we asked for a refund from the restaurant. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
archaeological	أثري	ancient/historical		modern/contemporary	حديث/معاصر
construct	يبني/يشيد	build/create		demolish/destroy	يهدم/يدمر
display	يعرض	exhibit/demonstrate		hide/conceal	يخبيئ/يخفي
glowing	متوهج	radiant/bright		dull/dim	باهت/خافت
influence	تأثير	impact/effect		insignificance/irrelevance	عدم الأهمية/عدم الصلة
invasion	غزو	attack/assault		defense/withdrawal	دفاع/انسحاب
logical	منطقي	rational/reasonable		illogical/absurd	غير منطقي/سخيف
powerful	قوي	strong/influential		weak/powerless	ضعيف/عديم القوة
preserve	يحفظ	protect/conserve		damage/harm/destroy	يتلف/يضر/يدمر
revenue	إيرادات	income/earnings		expense/loss	نفقات/خسارة
thrive	يزدهر	prosper/flourish		fail/decline	يفشل/يتراجع
tradition	تقليد	custom/convention		innovation/modernity	ابتكار/حديث
transform	تحويل	change/alter		preserve/maintain	يحافظ/يصون
vast	شاسع	enormous/huge		small/limited	صغير/محدود

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- All successful people one thing in common — they work hard.
a) take b) have c) focus d) take
- The biography explores the artist's life from her childhood struggles to her rise to international fame.
a) in delay b) in return c) in progress d) in detail
- Tom Cruise, the famous actor, is famous his great performances in action movies.
a) with b) at c) for d) on
- The folk storytelling tradition has been passed through oral history for thousands of years.
a) down b) along c) aside d) beyond
- Shakespeare is considered the of many words and phrases still used in English today.
a) originates b) origin c) original d) originator
- The history book describes the invasion of Egypt by foreign forces. The noun "invasion" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) revenue b) attack c) delight d) defense
- We must preserve our natural resources for future generations. The antonym of the verb "preserve" is ".....".
a) conserve b) reply c) detect d) damage
- Businesses can only thrive in a safe and stable environment. The synonym of the verb "thrive" is
a) flourish b) decline c) construct d) invade

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

For thousands of years, Ancient China was known as The Middle Kingdom, believing itself to be the center of the world. Powerful **dynasties**⁽¹⁾ like the Shang, Zhou, and Han ruled vast territories, shaping Chinese culture and traditions. One of China's most remarkable achievements was the Great Wall, built to protect its people from northern invasions.

China was also a **birthplace**⁽²⁾ of **innovation**⁽³⁾. Paper, printing, gunpowder, and the compass all originated here, changing the course of world history. Through **the Silk Road**⁽⁴⁾, merchants carried silk, tea, and **porcelain**⁽⁵⁾ across deserts and mountains, exchanging goods, ideas, and technology with faraway lands.

Religion and philosophy played an important role. Scholars studied ancient texts, keeping knowledge alive for generations. Agriculture thrived thanks to the fertile lands along the Yellow and Yangtze rivers, feeding a growing population.

One of the most fascinating discoveries is the **Terracotta**⁽⁶⁾ Army—thousands of life-sized clay soldiers built to guard the tomb of China's first emperor, Qin Shi Huang. These silent warriors stand as a symbol of China's power and craftsmanship.

Ancient China's influence continues today, from its philosophy and inventions to its art and home economics. Truly, it was one of the civilizations that shaped the world.



(1) سلالات حاكمة

(2) موطن

(3) ابتكار

(4) طريق الحرير

(5) خزف صيني / بورسيلين

(6) خزف طيني

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ancient China was called "The Middle Kingdom" because the Chinese believed their country was
 a) the smallest in the world
 b) the center of the world
 c) located in the middle of Europe
 d) surrounded by oceans
2. The Great Wall of China was built mainly to
 a) protect China from northern invasions
 b) attract tourists from other countries
 c) separate different Chinese dynasties
 d) store food and supplies
3. Which of the following inventions did NOT originate in Ancient China according to the text?
 a) Paper
 b) Gunpowder
 c) The compass
 d) The wheel
4. The Terracotta Army was created to
 a) train real soldiers for battle
 b) decorate the imperial palace
 c) guard the tomb of Emperor Qin Shi Huang
 d) be sold to foreign merchants

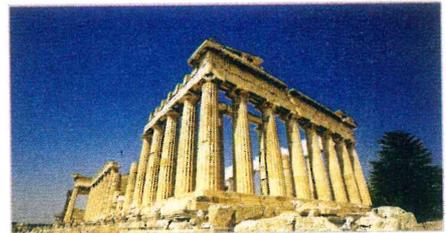
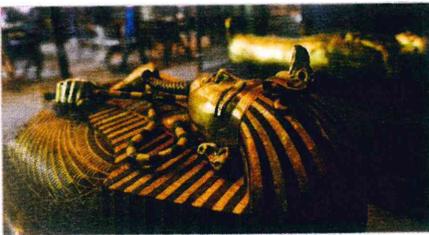
Listening Text



Scan & listen



A Tourist Diary



Last summer, I traveled on a journey that connected two of the world's greatest civilizations, Ancient Egypt and Ancient Greece. My **diary**⁽¹⁾ is full of memories from both places. In Egypt, I visited Luxor, where the Valley of the Kings was explored. There I learned how Tutankhamun's tomb was discovered in 1922 by Howard Carter. It was incredible to see how carefully the treasures had been preserved and **displayed**⁽²⁾ in the museum. I also visited the Temple of Karnak, which is considered one of the largest religious **complexes**⁽³⁾ ever built. The greatness of the pharaohs could be felt everywhere.

After Egypt, I continued my trip to Greece. In Athens, I walked up the Acropolis, where the Parthenon was built more than 2,000 years ago. Standing there, I felt surrounded by history. Greek food was also a delight: fresh olives, feta cheese, and grilled fish were enjoyed every day!

What impressed me most was how much the two civilizations had in common, both are remembered for their art, **architecture**⁽⁴⁾, and culture. Ancient laws, stories, and traditions from Egypt and Greece were passed down, and many of them are still studied today. Truly these civilizations shaped the world.

(1) مفكرة

(2) يعرض

(3) مجمعات

(4) هندسة معمارية

Definitions

التعريفات

dynasty	سلالة حاكمة	a ruler's family line
innovation	ابتكار	the act of creating something new
Silk Road	طريق الحرير	a long-distance trade route connecting East and West
terracotta	خزف طيني	a type of baked clay used for sculptures
porcelain	خزف صيني / بورسيلين	fine ceramic material used for art and dishes
birthplace	موطن	the place where something first started to happen or exist

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	border حَدّ / حُدُود (تشير إلى خط فاصل مادي أو سياسي)	You must show your passport when you cross the border into another country.
	limit حَدّ / حَدّ أَقْصَى (تشير إلى نقطة أو مقدار نهائي لا يمكن تجاوزه)	You should drive carefully and not exceed the speed limit .
2	tomb مقبرة (مكان دفن، غالبًا ما يكون أثريًا/مهملًا ذا هيكل فوق الأرض)	The pharaoh's tomb was filled with gold, jewelry, and treasures.
	grave قبر (مكان الدفن الأساسي والأكثر شيوعًا)	She is used to placing flowers on her grandmother's grave on her birthday.
	mausoleum ضريح (مبنى ضخم يحتوي على قبر أو قبور)	The Taj Mahal is a famous mausoleum .
3	fee ١- رسوم لدخول مكان أو استخدام خدمة ٢- أتعاب تدفع لشخص مثل طبيب أو محام	- There is no entrance fee at this charity exhibition. - Many people complain that the fees of doctors have recently increased much.
	fare أجرة وسيلة مواصلات	I didn't have enough money for my bus fare as I lost my wallet.
	fine غرامة (مال يدفع كعقاب على مخالفة قانون أو قاعدة)	Drivers will get big fin es if they drive too fast near schools.
	rent إيجار شقة أو مكان سكن	The rent of my new flat is 2000 pounds a month.

shape

تستخدم كلمة (shape) بمعاني كثيرة منها:

What **shape** is the table?

١- شكل

For an old car, it's in pretty good **shape**.

٢- حالة/هيئة

You can't change your natural body **shape**.

٣- قوام (شكل الجسم)

A dark **shape** moved behind the children.

٤- خيال (ظل)

People's political beliefs are **shaped** by what they see in the media.

٥- يشكل

4

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- can be defined as the act of creating something new.
 - Birthplace
 - Fee
 - Discovery
 - Innovation
- is fine ceramic material used for art and dishes.
 - Clay
 - Porcelain
 - Metal
 - Ziggurat
- Many tourists visit the of Tutankhamun to learn about Ancient Egypt.
 - tomb
 - pyramid
 - grave
 - museum
- I could just see a dark shape in the distance. "Shape" in this sentence means ".....".
 - form
 - ingredient
 - figure
 - state
- At airports, passengers must not bring more than the weight for luggage.
 - surface
 - limit
 - depth
 - border
- Due to the rise in petrol prices, the of taxis have risen in the last few weeks.
 - fares
 - rents
 - fees
 - salaries

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The ancient Chinese Army consists of thousands of life-sized clay soldier sculptures.
a) Granite b) Terracotta c) Marble d) Bronze
2. Historians divide Egyptian history into different based on ruling families.
a) elections b) displays c) votes d) dynasties
3. The newly discovered site in Luxor revealed ancient pottery and tools from 4,000 years ago.
a) archaeological b) geographical c) complex d) astronomical
4. The restaurant's doubled after it received a positive review from a famous food expert.
a) closure b) delight c) revenue d) menu
5. Over the years, ancient Egyptian is still admired for its massive temples and pyramids.
a) agriculture b) architecture c) literature d) culture
6. The government plans to build a new residential for low-income families in each new city.
a) region b) temple c) complex d) entity
7. By law, no one can build houses in this safety because of the power lines.
a) oasis b) tomb c) tradition d) zone
8. Visiting my grandparents' house always fills me with sweet of the years I spent there.
a) memories b) souvenirs c) courses d) traditions
9. When we went hiking, we saw the stars illuminating the dark desert sky beautifully.
a) growing b) glowing c) hidden d) fading
10. India has taken China's place as the world's most populous nation, with its exceeding 1.4 billion.
a) temperature b) elevation c) population d) pollution
11. The port at Alexandria handles millions of tons of every month from around the world.
a) tourists b) clay c) ceramic d) cargo
12. Historians believe that World War II changed the of history and reshaped international relations.
a) texture b) route c) course d) way
13. Wearing white at weddings is a/an in many cultures whether in the East or the West.
a) crime b) tradition c) relief d) incident
14. Keeping a helps people remember important events and feelings and plan for the future.
a) diary b) record c) schedule d) border
15. The gardens of old Roman palaces were decorated with beautiful stone of animals and mythical creatures.
a) melodies b) packages c) recipes d) sculptures
16. The Grand Egyptian Museum is expected to ancient Egyptian treasures shown for the first time.
a) rule b) display c) invade d) hide
17. Paper money is thought to have in China during the Tang Dynasty and passed on to Europe.
a) disappeared b) evaporated c) originated d) focused
18. Historical like Siwa in Egypt have supported civilizations in the desert for thousands of years.
a) oases b) storms c) streams d) peninsulas
19. The furniture at this gallery shows excellent; every detail is perfectly made.
a) membership b) craftsmanship c) architecture d) pottery

20. Alexander the Great over a vast empire that stretched across many countries in Europe, Africa, and Asia.
 a) escaped b) originated c) avoided d) ruled
21. Before the invention of, all books had to be copied by hand and so knowledge was only local.
 a) photography b) editing c) printing d) philosophy
22. teaches students how to manage a house and prepare healthy meals.
 a) Mathematics b) Home economics c) History d) Social studies
23. I watched a documentary about the of Waterloo, a key conflict in European history.
 a) Battle b) Peace c) Pace d) Dynasty
24. Wildlife can't without a clean and healthy environment, so we all should try to protect the environment.
 a) disappear b) suffer c) thrive d) dive
25. The Chinese built the Great Wall to protect his kingdom and keep the invaders away.
 a) architect b) innovator c) emperor d) dynasty
26. The Terracotta Army was created from baked over 2,000 years ago.
 a) bronze b) clay c) pearl d) wood
27. The internet contains a amount of information on almost every topic imaginable.
 a) traditional b) narrow c) limited d) vast
28. A is a small, round, white object that forms inside an oyster and is a valuable jewel.
 a) pearl b) diamond c) silver d) stem
29. Social media has become a tool for spreading information and news quickly nowadays.
 a) useless b) powerful c) reflective d) defective
30. A famous artist was asked to paint a of King Charles after the coronation.
 a) model b) sketch c) portrait d) package

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

31. The Nile River is the lifeline of Egypt because it provides water for farming and daily life.
 a) shown as b) made as c) forgotten as d) known as
32. Museums and libraries help knowledge alive by preserving old books, inventions, and cultural treasures.
 a) keep b) teach c) miss d) deliver
33. The Pyramids stand as a of Egypt's rich history and the great achievements of its ancient builders.
 a) museum b) part c) symbol d) sculpture
34. The house gardens in the area near the forest are a high fence to keep the animals out.
 a) locked in b) surrounded by c) planted with d) built from
35. Visitors to Paris can walk to the top of the Eiffel Tower for a spectacular view and a delicious meal.
 a) for b) at c) on d) up
36. The teacher had to repeat the instructions because the students weren't listening. The noun of the verb "repeat" is ".....".
 a) repeated b) repetition c) repetitive d) repetitively
37. It took workers five years to construct the massive tower. The antonym of the verb "construct" is ".....".
 a) build b) deliver c) demolish d) carve
38. It's logical to save money for the future instead of spending it all now. The synonym of the adjective "logical" is ".....".
 a) rational b) religious c) innovative d) national
39. Egypt is famous for its archaeological sites, such as the Valley of the Kings. The adjective "archaeological" can be replaced by ".....".
 a) ancient b) contemporary c) innovative d) powerful
40. The artist used glowing colors to make the painting look full of life. The opposite of the word "glowing" is ".....".
 a) bright b) massive c) growing d) dull

B Language

Passive constructions starting with (It ... & الفاعل الثانى)

الأفعال الآتية تُحول بطريقتين إلى المجهول: ١- طريقة **It** تستخدم تعبيرات خاصة مع **it** عندما لا نعرف أو لا نريد ذكر الفاعل ومن هذه الأفعال: ٢- طريقة الفاعل الثانى

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
People think	يعتقد	It is thought that ...	يعتقد
People believe	يعتقد	It is believed that ...	يعتقد
People say	يقول	It is said that ...	يقول
People report	يخبر/ يبلغ	It is reported that ...	يخبر/ يبلغ
People fear	يخشى/ يخاف	It is feared that ...	يخشى/ يخاف
People predict	يتنبأ	It is predicted that ...	يتنبأ
People know	يعرف	People know	يعرف
People expect	يتوقع	People expect	يتوقع
People consider	يعتبر	People consider	يعتبر
People allege	يزعم	People allege	يزعم
People agree	يتفق	People agree	يتفق
People hope	يأمل	People hope	يأمل

Active: People **think** that **money** brings happiness.
يعتقد الناس أن المال يجلب السعادة وهذا اعتقاد عام وعند المجهول يكون المعنى يُعتقد أن المال يجلب السعادة فتكون الجملة:

Passive: a) **It is thought** that money brings happiness.
b) **Money is thought to bring** happiness.
في الطريقة الأولى لم نغير إلا الفعل **think** إلى المجهول ثم نضع **to + Inf.** إذا كان الفعل الثانى مضارعًا أو مستقبلاً بسيطًا. إذا بدأنا بالفاعل الثانى **money** فإننا نحول **think** إلى المجهول ثم نضع **to + Inf.** إذا كان الفعل الثانى مضارعًا أو مستقبلاً بسيطًا.

Active: The police **alleged** that the criminal **had escaped**.
Passive: a) **It was alleged** that the criminal **had escaped**.
b) **The criminal was alleged to have escaped**.
ونضع **P.P. + have + to** إذا كان الفعل الثانى ماضيًا أو مضارعًا تامًا أو مستقبلاً تامًا.

في الطريقة الأولى «**It**» لم نغير إلا الفعل **allege** عند البدء بالفاعل الثانى **The criminal** فإننا نحول **allege** إلى المجهول ثم نضع **to + have + P.P.** لأن الفعل الثانى ماضٍ. ويمكن أن تكون الجملتين فى المبنى للمجهول:

- The police **alleged** that the criminal **had been killed**.
- It was alleged** that the criminal **had been killed**.
- The criminal **was alleged to have been killed**.

Language Checkpoint 4

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**
1. People think he is guilty. He guilty.
 - a) thought to be
 - b) is thought to be
 - c) thinks he is
 - d) thought he was
 2. It that the climate is changing rapidly.
 - a) believes
 - b) is believing
 - c) was believed
 - d) is believed
 3. The new law is expected by the end of the month.
 - a) that will pass
 - b) to be passed
 - c) passing
 - d) to be passing

4. The monument to date back over a thousand years.
 a) knows b) will know c) is known d) has known
5. He is thought too fast at the time of the accident.
 a) to have been driving b) to drive c) to have driven d) was driving

2 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:

1. It believes that regular exercise is vital. (.....)
2. The actor is believed he is joining the cast. (.....)
3. She is supposing to be the best student in the class. (.....)
4. The thieves are reported stole the valuable jewels last night. (.....)
5. He is know to have worked for the government during the war. (.....)

IMPORTANT NOTES

1 يرتبط المجهول بكل قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية تقريباً ويحتاج إلى فهم دقيق بعد أدوات الربط، فمثلاً بعد **after** ستجد القواعد الآتية:

- After the e-mail **had been written**, it was posted.
- After the e-mail **has been written**, it will be posted.
- After **being written**, the e-mail was posted.
- After **having been written**, the e-mail was posted.
- Having been written**, the e-mail was posted.

وكذلك مع **before/when/while/as soon as** وباقى أدوات الربط

- While the washing machine **was being repaired**, it **made** a strange sound.
- While **being repaired**, the washing machine **made** a strange sound.

2 يأتي **v. to be** الذى هو ضرورى فى المبنى للمجهول على شكل الفعل الأساسى فلو كان الفعل به **ing** نستخدم **being** ولو كان الفعل **to + inf.** نستخدم **to + be** ولو كان الفعل تصريفاً ثالثاً نستخدم **been**.

Active: I like people **helping** me.

Passive: I like **being** helped.

Active: I'd like **to buy** a bike.

Passive: I'd like a bike **to be** bought.

Active: I remember my father **buying** me a bike.

Passive: I remember **being** bought a bike.

Active: I **hate** people **telling** me lies.

Passive: I hate **being** told lies.

3 إذا كانت الجملة مجهول وبها ضمائر الوصل **who/which** فيمكن حذف **who/which + v. to be** وترك التصريف الثالث فقط.

- The meat **which was eaten** yesterday was delicious.
- The meat **which was** eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The boy **who was punished** yesterday was mistaken.
- The boy **who was** punished yesterday was mistaken.

4 الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعولاً) لا تحول إلى المبنى للمجهول مثل:

appear	يظهر	exist	يوجد	occur	يحدث	sneezes	يعطس
arrive	يصل	fall	يسقط	live	يعيش	stand	يقف
belong	ينتمى	float	يطفو	resign	يستقيل	stay	يبقى
collapse	ينهار	grow	ينمو	run	يركض/يجرى	swim	يسبح
come	يأتى	happen	يحدث	rise	ينهض/يرتفع	travel	يسافر
depart	يغادر	hesitate	يتردد	sink	يغرق/يغطس	wait	ينتظر
die	يموت	jump	يقفز	cry	يبكى	walk	يمشى
disappear	يختفى	laugh	يضحك	sleep	ينام	wander	يتجول

Heat and light **come from** the sun.

5 بعض الأفعال المتعدية لا تحول للمجهول وهي **have, fit, suit, etc.**

I **have** a shower every morning. (Not: A shower is had by me.)

6 إذا كان الفاعل والمفعول واحدًا مع الفعل (**let**) نستخدم ضميرًا منعكسًا ثم (**be**) ثم (P.P.)

He **doesn't let** others **laugh at** him.

He **doesn't let himself be laughed at**.

7 نستخدم **with** وليس **by** ثم المادة المصنوع منها الشيء أو الأداة المستخدمة أو المقادير.

The lock **is being broken with** a hammer.

The kite will be **made by** Omar. It will be made **with** paper, paint, and string.

The tiger **is going to be shot with** a gun.

8 عند استخدام المجهول في الأسئلة نستخدم **by** مع **who, whom, which** في آخر السؤال.

Who takes your children to school? (Active)

Who **are** your children **taken** to school **by**? (Passive)

9 الأفعال الآتية تأخذ المصدر في المعلوم (**hear, help, see, and make**) ويسبق المصدر **to** في المجهول.

They **saw** him **leave** the building.

He **was seen to leave** the building.

ولكن إذا جاء بعد **hear, see, watch** الفعل به **ing** فإن الفعل يظل كما هو به **ing**.

They **saw** him **running** down the stairs.

He **was seen running** down the stairs.

10 بعض الأفعال تأخذ مفعولين (عاقل / غير عاقل) فيمكن البدء بأيهما ولكن إذا بدأت بالفاعل غير العاقل نضع قبل الفاعل العاقل **to/for**.

He **sent** me an e-mail. = He **bought** me a bike.

I **was sent** an e-mail. = I **was bought** a bike.

An e-mail was sent **to me**. = A bike was bought **for me**.

ونستخدم (**to**) مع الأفعال الآتية:

bring	يحضّر	lend	يقرض	pass	يمرر/ يناول	show	يظهر/ يعرض
give	يعطى	offer	يعرض	pay	يدفع	tell	يخبر
hand	يعطى/ يناول	owe	يدين	sell	يبيع	write	يكتب

نستخدم (**for**) مع الأفعال الآتية:

book	يحتجز	call	ينادي/ يتصل	find	يجد	leave	يترك
build	يبني	cut	يقطع	get	يحصل على	make	يصنع
buy	يشترى	fetch	يذهب ليحضّر	keep	يحافظ على	save	يوفر

11 يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل (**get**) بدلًا من (**verb to be**) عند التحويل إلى المبني للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأفعال الآتية:

(**catch/arrest/damage/destroy/kill/marry/burn/beat/confuse/stick**)

The police **caught/arrested** the bank robbers.

The bank robbers **got caught/arrested**.

12 هناك كلمات لا نستخدمها بعد **by** لأنها أصلاً غير معروفة مثل **no one/someone/people** وضمائر الغائب **he/she/it/they**

People all over the world **know** Mohamed Salah well.

Mohamed Salah **is well-known** all over the world.

13 هناك أفعال نستخدم معها الفاعل **by + sub.** ليبيان الذي قام بالحدث .

Taha Hussein **wrote** "Al Ayam".

"Al Ayam" **was written by** Taha Hussein.

14 إذا وجدت كلمة نفي مثل **no one** فننفي الفعل المساعد الموجود ونحول **ever** إلى **never**.

- ▶ **No one** visited me when I was ill.
- ▶ I **wasn't visited** when I was ill.
- ▶ No one **has ever climbed** that mountain.
- ▶ That mountain **has never been climbed**.

Language **Checkpoint** **5**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. I tried to keep calm while

a) being interviewed	b) was interviewing
c) was being interviewed	d) the interview
- ▶ 2. I felt worried as soon as the plane off.

a) has taken	b) has been taken
c) took	d) was taken
- ▶ 3. Do you object to Hurghada? Where else can we go?

a) being taking	b) be taken
c) to be taken	d) to being taken
- ▶ 4. She doesn't allow herself by strangers.

a) trick	b) be tricked
c) to be tricked	d) being tricked
- ▶ 5. The book in 1950 is now a classic.

a) wrote	b) was writing
c) writing	d) written

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- ▶ 1. I want you to leave me alone. (left)
.....
- ▶ 2. No one has found my old photos. (been)
.....
- ▶ 3. I hate people shouting at me. (shouted)
.....
- ▶ 4. We saw the thief breaking into our neighbor's flat. (seen)
.....
- ▶ 5. My pen friend sent me an invitation to visit his country. (An invitation ...)
.....

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our team is expected the next match.
 - a) to win
 - b) to will win
 - c) to have won
 - d) to be won
2. A lot of sweets when I was younger.
 - a) were used to eat
 - b) were used to be eaten
 - c) used to eat
 - d) used to be eaten
3. The men after the explosion.
 - a) are said to have been arrested
 - b) are said to being arrested
 - c) are said to be arrested
 - d) are said to arrest
4. Some patients shout in pain while an injection.
 - a) giving
 - b) being given
 - c) were being given
 - d) given
5. He empty the contents of his suitcases onto the counter.
 - a) was made
 - b) will be made
 - c) was made to
 - d) had made
6. Don't worry. The mail in two hours.
 - a) will arrive
 - b) will be arrived
 - c) is arrived
 - d) is being arrived
7. I remember to the national theater when I was young.
 - a) to take
 - b) taking
 - c) taken
 - d) being taken
8. I wouldn't like given instructions if I were on stage.
 - a) to be
 - b) being
 - c) have been
 - d) had been
9. Don't let yourself into buying that fake painting.
 - a) to cheat
 - b) be cheated
 - c) cheating
 - d) cheated
10. My brother is looking forward to as the best student at school.
 - a) be chosen
 - b) choose
 - c) choosing
 - d) being chosen
11. Many spaceships to the moon before Apollo 11 in 1969.
 - a) have flown
 - b) have been flown
 - c) had flown
 - d) were flown
12. The jewels in the museum that last night were recovered this morning.
 - a) which were stealing
 - b) were stolen
 - c) stolen
 - d) which stole
13. The new chair my desk properly; it's too big.
 - a) hasn't been fit
 - b) won't be fitted
 - c) doesn't fit
 - d) isn't fit by
14. The magnificent statue was carved a small, sharp tool.
 - a) with
 - b) from
 - c) of
 - d) by
15. the meeting canceled by?
 - a) Whose
 - b) Who has
 - c) Who was
 - d) Who did
16. The student the hall by the guards after the disturbance.
 - a) was made leave
 - b) made to leave
 - c) was made to leave
 - d) was made to leaving
17. People say that Cairo is quite an amazing place to visit. It one of the world's most interesting cities.
 - a) said to be
 - b) told to be
 - c) was said to be
 - d) is said to be
18. Long ago, people thought that the Earth was not round. It flat.
 - a) was thought to have been
 - b) thought to be
 - c) is thought to be
 - d) was thinking to be
19. "They say he robbed the bank" means ".....".
 - a) They say he's been robbed in the bank
 - b) He is said to rob the bank
 - c) He said he'd robbed the bank
 - d) He is said to have robbed the bank
20. The authorities will make him pay all his debts. He pay all his debts.
 - a) will be made to
 - b) is going to be
 - c) was made to
 - d) will be made

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The Silk was an ancient network of trade routes connecting China to Europe.
a) Road b) Highway c) Railroad d) Airport
2. Ancient Rome saw the rise and fall of many ruling throughout the history of the Empire.
a) ministers b) dynasties c) officers d) enemies
3. Climate change is a concern for scientists worldwide because of its massive effects on the Earth.
a) declining b) fading c) defensive d) growing
4. The Egyptian pyramids were originally built as safe for pharaohs and their families.
a) houses b) farms c) tombs d) venues
5. The children shouted with when they saw the fireworks in the sky.
a) sadness b) delight c) innovation d) intention
6. In ancient times, the traveled long distances to sell their products and buy others.
a) farmers b) scholars c) painters d) merchants
7. Zain's explanation sounded very, so everyone agreed with his ideas about the new project.
a) amazed b) irrational c) logical d) weird
8. Ibn Sina was a famous who made great discoveries in medicine and is considered a great doctor.
a) scholar b) soldier c) merchant d) explorer
9. Salt was traditionally used to meat and some kinds of fish before refrigeration existed.
a) spoil b) grow c) inspect d) preserve
10. Parents have an important on their children's behavior and values, as they are their first models.
a) harm b) affection c) influence d) energy
11. A model of a dinosaur was put at the entrance of the biological museum to show how big it really was.
a) painted b) life-sized c) colorful d) comic
12. Statues of the Terracotta were discovered buried near the emperor's tomb in China.
a) warriors b) artists c) servants d) ministers
13. Education has the power to people's lives and give them better futures.
a) limit b) transform c) delay d) transmit
14. The students were asked to read the carefully before answering the questions.
a) portrait b) photography c) text d) poster
15. During the war, used secret paths to move goods across the border.
a) scholars b) soldiers c) divers d) smugglers
16. The "brave as a lion" helps readers visualize courage and has a powerful effect.
a) diagram b) measurement c) simile d) smile
17. Social media has a significant impact how young people communicate.
a) at b) on c) for d) with
18. Historians believe that Queen Cleopatra will always her beauty and intelligence.
a) be forgotten for b) be called for c) be remembered for d) be known as
19. It's a family tradition to exchange gifts on Christmas morning. The word "tradition" can be replaced with
a) innovation b) convention c) economy d) architecture
20. The vast desert landscape seemed to go on forever. The opposite of the adjective "vast" is
a) enormous b) traditional c) gorgeous d) small

Language

21. A promotion the entire team for their hard work.
 a) was offered by b) offered for c) has offered d) was offered to
22. We rushed her to the hospital immediately after she in the accident.
 a) gets injured b) injured c) got injured d) has got to injure
23. The actor is said to join the cast of the new movie.
 a) he has agreed b) to have agreed
 c) will agree d) to have been agreed
24. English in many countries around the world.
 a) is spoken b) speaks
 c) is spoken by people d) is spoken with people
25. This famous theory a brilliant but obscure scientist.
 a) discovered b) was discovered by
 c) was discovered d) was discovered with
26. After, the room was left until the guests arrived.
 a) being tidied b) it tidied c) tidying d) having tidied
27. The blue shirt does not the color of your new pants.
 a) is suited b) be suited c) is suit by d) suit
28. The bridge is said by an earthquake three decades ago.
 a) that it destroyed b) that it was destroyed
 c) to have been destroyed d) to have destroyed
29. After losing the argument, the politician to change his mind.
 a) let himself be persuaded b) was let persuading
 c) was let to persuade d) let be persuaded
30. The delicate pattern on the pottery was drawn a fine, soft brush.
 a) of b) by c) with d) from
31. The statue by the storm will be repaired.
 a) damages b) damaging c) to damage d) damaged
32. A brand new laptop the winner of the competition.
 a) was given b) was given to c) gave to d) was given for
33. When he entered the room, he the contract immediately.
 a) made to sign b) was made to signing
 c) is made to sign d) was made to sign
34. They didn't hear the alarm when their money from the safe.
 a) gets stolen b) is stolen c) got stolen d) will be stolen
35. Ali doesn't like personal questions.
 a) being asked b) to being asked c) be asked d) to asking
36. Many people that the economy will improve soon.
 a) are thought b) think
 c) thought d) have been thought
37. He is known to five people in the war four years ago.
 a) be killed b) have been killed c) be killing d) have killed
38. to have excellent leadership skills.
 a) It is said b) She is saying c) She is said d) She says
39. They suggested to the movie theater by their mother.
 a) being taken b) taking c) to be taken d) being taken
40. After the package, the courier left immediately.
 a) delivered b) delivering c) being delivered d) it was delivered



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Descriptive Essay

A **descriptive essay** is a type of writing where the author describes a person, place, object, experience, or event using vivid details and sensory language.

– المقال الوصفي هو نوع من الكتابة يقوم فيه الكاتب بوصف شخص أو مكان أو شيء أو تجربة أو حدث باستخدام تفاصيل واضحة ولغة حسية.

Structure of a Descriptive Essay:

تكوين المقال الوصفي:

1. Introduction:

المقدمة:

Start with a hook (an interesting sentence to grab the reader's attention).

– ابدأ بجملة جذابة (جملة مثيرة للاهتمام لجذب انتباه القارئ).

Introduce what you are describing.

– قدم ما ستقوم بوصفه.

Include a thesis statement that gives an overall impression or idea.

– أضف جملة موضوعية توضح الانطباع العام أو الفكرة الرئيسية.

2. Body Paragraphs (Describe your topic in detail):

فقرات الموضوع:

Usually 2 or 3 paragraphs

Each paragraph talks about one main thing you want to describe, like:

Sight: What does it look like? (e.g., "bright red", "tall and crooked")

Sound: What does it sound like? (e.g., "a loud rumble", "a soft whisper")

Smell: What does it smell like? (e.g., "salty ocean air")

Taste: What does it taste like? (e.g., "sweet and tangy", "bitter and spicy")

Touch: What does it feel like? (e.g., "smooth and cold")

Use **sensory details** (words that describe the five senses).

استخدم التفاصيل الحسية (كلمات تصف الحواس الخمس).

Use figurative **language** like similes or metaphors to make it more interesting.

استخدم اللغة التصويرية مثل التشبيهات أو الاستعارات لجعل الوصف أكثر تشويقًا.

3. Conclusion:

الخاتمة:

Summarize the key features.

قدم ملخصًا لأهم الخصائص.

Reflect on your feelings or the significance of what you described.

• فكر في مشاعرك أو في مدى أهمية ما تحدثت عنه.

Leave the reader with a final thought or impression.

• اختتم بنقل فكرة أو انطباع يبقى في ذهن القارئ.

MODEL DESCRIPTIVE ESSAY

A Day You Spent at the Egyptian Museum

Introduction

Last weekend, I visited the Egyptian Museum in Cairo with my family. It was more than just a visit — it felt like a journey back in time. The moment I walked through the large entrance, I was surrounded by history, mystery, and beauty. I knew it would be a day I would never forget.

Body Paragraph 1

The museum building was large and elegant **أنيق**, with tall columns and wide glass windows. Inside, the rooms were spacious and filled with warm light. Ancient statues stood silently, some as tall as the ceiling. The golden mask of King Tutankhamun sparkled under the lights — it looked like it was glowing **يتوهج**. Every corner was filled with treasures: old coins, jewelry, pottery, and ancient tools.

Body Paragraph 2

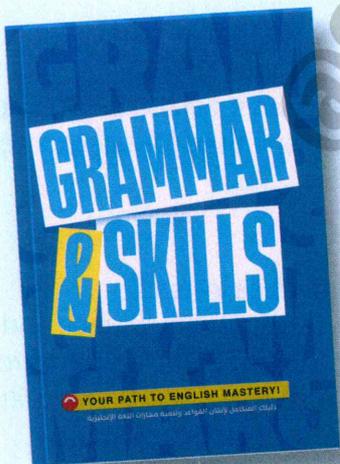
The museum was quiet and peaceful. I could hear the soft footsteps of visitors and the quiet whispers of tour guides. The air smelled a bit old and dusty, like books that hadn't been opened for years. The floors were cool under my shoes, and the stone walls felt smooth. I felt calm, curious, and sometimes amazed by the things I saw.

Body Paragraph 3

As I stood in front of the mummies, I felt both excited and a little scared. Their faces were wrapped in cloth, but I could imagine the lives they lived thousands of years ago. I pictured ancient Egyptians building pyramids, sailing the Nile, and writing with hieroglyphs. It felt like I was walking inside a storybook.

Conclusion

Visiting the Egyptian Museum was like stepping into a time machine. I saw, heard, and felt things I had only read about in books. It was a day full of wonder and learning. That experience made me love history even more, and I hope to visit again and explore the stories that still live inside its walls.



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة!

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة
في قطع الفهم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As a natural link between the two enormous continents of Africa and Asia, Egypt occupies a very unique place on the map of the world. This geographic intersection is distinct. Egypt is an important link in world geography because of the Sinai Peninsula, a triangular stretch of Egyptian land that physically connects the two continents.

Egypt's location provides unmatched access to significant waterways. The Mediterranean Sea lies to the north, while the Red Sea lies to the east. For thousands of years, these coasts have been essential for international travel and trade, allowing the East and West to share commodities and cultures. The Suez Canal, an impressive man-made waterway that passes through Egyptian territory, further emphasizes the importance of the link between the Mediterranean and the Red Sea. Completed in 1869, this canal is one of the world's most significant shipping lanes. By bypassing the lengthy path around the southern tip of Africa, it significantly reduces the time it takes for ships to sail between Europe and Asia.

Beyond the continents and seas, the Nile River further solidifies Egypt's geographical importance. The Nile flows from south to north, crossing the entirety of the country before emptying its waters into the Mediterranean. The river has been the **lifeline** of Egypt for millennia, providing the essential water that makes the surrounding land fertile and allowing a great civilization to flourish in the otherwise desert landscape. The Nile acted as a natural highway, facilitating internal travel and communication. Therefore, Egypt's unique combination of being a continental connection, having access to two vital seas, and being home to the Nile River makes its geographical position unmatched, significantly influencing its history and global role.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Which major landform in Egypt primarily connects Africa and Asia?
a) The Nile River. b) The Mediterranean Sea. c) The Suez Canal. d) The Sinai Peninsula.
- The Nile River flows into which body of water?
a) The Red Sea. b) The Mediterranean Sea. c) The Suez Canal. d) The Indian Ocean.
- What is the primary function of the Suez Canal, as mentioned in the passage?
a) To irrigate crops along the Nile River.
b) To shorten the shipping journey between Europe and Asia.
c) To define the border between Africa and Asia.
d) To provide a natural habitat for fish.
- In the passage, the word "**lifeline**" most closely means
a) a difficult and dangerous path or route b) a crucial and essential source of support
c) a temporary or shifting boundary marker d) a very long rope used for safety or rescue
- The underlined pronoun "its" in the last paragraph refers to
a) The Nile River b) The Suez Canal c) Egypt d) Africa
- What is the main idea of the second paragraph?
a) Because the Suez Canal is so effective, ships have to sail around Africa instead.
b) Thanks to its great location and the Suez Canal, Egypt is a key center for world trade and travel.
c) When the Suez Canal finished in 1869, it became the world's most important shipping route.
d) Historically, the Mediterranean and Red Seas let the East and West share goods and cultures.
- Which of the following would be the best title for this passage?
a) The Wonders of the Nile River. b) The History of the Suez Canal.
c) Egypt: A Geographical Hub. d) The Deserts of Africa.
- Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a feature contributing to Egypt's unique position?
a) Its connection to two continents. b) Its access to the Mediterranean Sea.
c) Its border with Libya. d) The presence of the Suez Canal.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Great Wall of China is one of the greatest wonders of the world. It is also the longest man-made structure on Earth. The wall stretches over 21,000 kilometers across northern China, passing through deserts, mountains, valleys, and forests. It was built more than 2,000 years ago, mainly to protect the Chinese people from enemies and invaders from the north.

The construction of the wall began during the 7th century BC, but the most well-known sections were built during the Ming Dynasty (1368–1644). Building the wall was a massive task. Millions of people — including soldiers, farmers, and even prisoners — worked for many years under difficult and dangerous conditions. Many workers lost their lives during the construction.

The wall was made from different materials, such as stone, bricks, wood, and packed earth, depending on the area. In some parts, the wall is wide enough for five horses or ten soldiers to walk side by side. Watchtowers were built along the wall so that soldiers could see enemies from far away and send signals to warn others.

Today, the Great Wall is not used for protection, but it has become a symbol of China's rich history, culture, and strength. Every year, millions of tourists from around the world visit the wall to explore its ancient paths and enjoy the beautiful views from the top. In 1987, it was named a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

Although many parts of the wall are still standing strong, others have been damaged by weather, time, and human activity. Efforts are now being made to restore and protect this amazing structure so that future generations can continue to learn from it and admire its greatness.

The Great Wall is more than just a wall — it is a powerful reminder of what people can achieve through hard work, determination, and unity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What is the Great Wall of China famous for?
 - It is the tallest mountain in Asia.
 - It is the longest man-made structure in the world.
 - It was built in the 20th century from strong materials.
 - It is made of gold, silver, and other valuable metals.
- What is the wall mostly used for today?
 - It is used for military training for China's army.
 - It is used as a border patrol to keep enemies away.
 - It is used for tourism and as a cultural pride.
 - It is used for agricultural purposes.
- According to the passage, why was the Great Wall originally built?

a) To separate cities in the north of China.	b) To help farmers with their work.
c) To protect China from enemies and invaders.	d) To attract tourists to China.
- Which of the following was not used to build the Great Wall?

a) Bricks	b) Stone	c) Glass	d) Wood
-----------	----------	----------	---------
- What does the text suggest about working conditions during construction?

a) Workers were highly trained.	b) Conditions were dangerous and deadly.
c) It was completed easily.	d) Workers volunteered happily.
- What does the phrase "a powerful reminder of what people can achieve ..." suggest?

a) The wall is still used in war.	b) People can do great things when united.
c) Only ancient people worked hard.	d) It is too old to matter today.
- What does the underlined word "restore" mean?

a) Break them down.	b) Make new buildings beside them.
c) Repair and preserve them.	d) Replace with modern buildings.
- What is the main idea of the passage?
 - How the Great Wall was destroyed by invaders.
 - The history, purpose, and importance of the Great Wall of China.
 - The tools used to build the Great Wall of China.
 - The wildlife and the villages found near the Great Wall.

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt's unique location as a transcontinental nation, bridging Northeast Africa and Western Asia, allows it to influence trade and cultural exchange between continents. This geographical advantage solidifies its role as a global hub.

- (a) تمتلك مصر موقعًا فريدًا كدولة عابرة للقارات، حيث تربط بين شمال شرق إفريقيا وغرب آسيا، مما يمكنها من التأثير على التجارة والتبادل الثقافي بين القارات. وهذه الميزة الجغرافية ترسخ دورها كمركز عالمي.
- (b) تمتلك مصر موقعًا فريدًا كدولة عابرة للقارات، حيث تربط بين شمال شرق إفريقيا وغرب آسيا، مما يمكنها من التأثير على التجارة والتبادل الاقتصادي بين القارات. وهذه الميزة الجغرافية تزيد دورها كمركز عالمي.
- (c) تمتلك مصر موقعًا فريدًا كدولة عابرة للقارات، حيث تربط بين شمال شرق إفريقيا وغرب آسيا، مما يمكنها من التحكم في التجارة والتبادل الثقافي بين القارات. وهذه الميزة الجغرافية ترسخ دورها كجسر عالمي.
- (d) تمتلك مصر موقعًا فريدًا كدولة عابرة للقارات، حيث تربط بين شمال شرق إفريقيا وغرب آسيا، مما يمكنها من التحكم على التجارة والتبادل الثقافي بين القارات. وهذه الميزة الجغرافية تزيد دورها كملتقى عالمي.

2. China is one of the ancient cradles of civilization. It gifted the world with paper, gunpowder, and the compass, innovations that fundamentally reshaped the course of global history.

- (a) تُعد الصين أحد أقدم موالد للحضارة في العالم. وقد قدمت للكون الورق والبارود والبوصلة، وهي إبداعات أعادت تطوير مسار التاريخ العالمي بشكل جذري.
- (b) تُعد الصين أحد أقدم مهد للحضارة في العالم. وقد قدمت للعالم الورق والبارود والبوصلة، وهي إبداعات أعادت تشكيل مسار التاريخ العالمي بشكل جذري.
- (c) تُعد الصين أحد أقدم موالد للحضارة في العالم. وقد قدمت للعالم الورق والبارود والبوصلة، وهي إبداعات أعادت تشكيل مسار التاريخ العلمي بشكل جذري.
- (d) تُعد الصين أحد أقدم مهد للحضارة في العالم. وقد قدمت للعلم الورق والبارود والبوصلة، وهي اكتشافات أعادت تأسيس مسار التاريخ العالمي بشكل جذري.

3. Many young people today value creativity and fairness. They use social media to share ideas and support causes they believe in, hoping to make a positive difference.

- (a) يقدر كثير من الشباب اليوم الإبداع والعدالة. يستخدمون وسائل التواصل لنشر الأفكار ودعم الأسباب التي يؤمنون بها، أملًا في تشجيع تغيير إيجابي.
- (b) يقدر كثير من الشباب اليوم الإبداع والرفقة. يستخدمون وسائل التواصل لنشر الأفكار ودعم القضايا التي يصدقونها، أملًا في إحداث تغيير إيجابي.
- (c) يقدر كثير من الشباب اليوم الإبداع والعدالة. يستخدمون وسائل التواصل لنشر الأفكار ودعم المسببات التي يؤمنون بها، أملًا في تصميم تغيير إيجابي.
- (d) يقدر كثير من الشباب اليوم الإبداع والعدالة. يستخدمون وسائل التواصل لنشر الأفكار ودعم القضايا التي يؤمنون بها، أملًا في إحداث تغيير إيجابي.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. ينجذب السياح إلى مصر كل عام بسبب آثارها القديمة وتاريخها الغني. كما تُعدُّ الأهرامات من أكثر المعالم شهرة في العالم، وتوفّر البلاد تجربة ثقافية متكاملة تجمع بين الماضي والحاضر.

- a) Tourists are sent to Egypt every month because of its ancient monuments and rich history. The Pyramids are among the most famous regions in the world, and the country offers a complete cultural experience that adds the past and the present.
- b) Tourists are attracted to Egypt annually because of its ancient moments and rich history. The Pyramids are among the most famous landmarks in the world, and the country offers a complete cultured experience that adds the past and the present.
- c) Tourists are attracted to Egypt every year because of its ancient monuments and rich history. The pyramids are among the most famous landmarks in the world, and the country offers a complete cultural experience that blends the past and the present.
- d) Tourists are attached to Egypt every year because its ancient monuments and rich history. The pyramids are among the most famous landmarks in the world, and the country offers a complete cultural experience that blends the past and the present.

5. يُقال إن كثيرًا من الاختراعات الحديثة التي تستخدم في مجال الاتصالات تمت تجربتها في الفضاء قبل استخدامها على الأرض.

- a) It says that many of the modern inventions that are used in the field of communications and have been tried in space before being used on Earth.
- b) It says that many of the modern inventions that used in the field of communications have been tried in space before being used on Earth.
- c) It is said that many of the modern inventions that are used in the field of communications have been tried in space before being used on Earth.
- d) It is said that many of the modern inventions using in the field of communications have been tried in space before being used on Earth.

6. يتم تدريس الحضارة المصرية القديمة في المدارس في كل أنحاء العالم بسبب أهميتها التاريخية. ويتعلم الطلاب عن إنجازاتها في الفن والعلوم والدين، وتأثيرها العميق على الحضارات الأخرى.

- Ancient Egyptian civilization is taught in schools around the world due to its geographical significance. Students learn about its achievements in art, science, and religion, and its strong influence on other countries.
- Ancient Egyptian civilization is taught in schools around the world because of its historical importance. Students learn about its achievements in art, science, and religion, and its deep reflection on other civilizations.
- Ancient Egyptian civilization is taught in schools around the world because of its historical influence. Students learn about its achievements in art, math, and religion, and its strong influence on other countries.
- Ancient Egyptian civilization is taught in schools around the world due to its historical significance. Students learn about its achievements in art, science, and religion, and its strong influence on other civilizations.

(c) Writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Choose the sentence that is correctly punctuated.

- The policeman said we had to make a U:turn after 100 meters.
- The policeman said we had to make a U,turn after 100 meters.
- The policeman said we had to make a U-turn after 100 meters.
- The policeman said we had to make a U;turn after 100 meters.

2. Which of the following is correctly punctuated?

- Some people work best in the mornings. others do better in the evenings.
- Some people work best in the mornings; others do better in the evenings.
- Some people work best in the mornings; Others do better in the evenings.
- Some people work best in the mornings! others do better in the evenings!

3. Which of the following isn't punctuated correctly?

- She went shopping and bought shoes, a dress, two shirts, and a handbag.
- They didn't have time to waste it was already late.
- A mother-in-law is the mother of one's husband or wife.
- I have a meeting tomorrow morning; I can't go out tonight.

4. Which of the following would most likely appear in a descriptive essay?

- "In 1995, the company was founded by..."
- "The mountain was covered in a soft blanket of snow, glowing under the sunrise."
- "Studies show that eating vegetables reduces heart disease."
- "I believe online learning is better than traditional schools."

5. What should the introduction of a descriptive essay include?

- A quote from a famous person.
- The reason for supporting that issue.
- A question and your opinion.
- A hook and a clear description of the topic.

6. What makes a descriptive essay more interesting?

- Using detailed adjectives and the five senses.
- Including personal opinions.
- Using many facts and dates.
- Writing in bullet points.

5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

"You spent the mid-year vacation in Luxor. Describe one of the wonders you visited there."

Enrich your vocabulary

shipping	شحن	cradle	مهد	course	مسار
blend	يمزج / يخلط	significance	أهمية	wonders	عجائب



Vocabulary

1 Match the words in column (A) to their meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. geographical	a) a piece of land almost surrounded by water but connected to the mainland
2. strategically	b) related to the physical features of the Earth's surface
3. peninsula	c) coming together of two rivers or streams
4. maritime	d) related to the sea, shipping, or navigation
5. confluence	e) in a way that is important for planning and advantage in position

2 Match the words in column (A) to their meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. dynasty	a) a long-distance trade route connecting East and West
2. innovation	b) a ruler's family line
3. Silk Road	c) fine ceramic material used for art and dishes
4. terracotta	d) the act of creating something new
5. porcelain	e) a type of baked clay used for sculptures

3 Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box:

fertile – foundation – scribe – ziggurat – irrigation

1. Ancient farmers used systems to bring water from rivers to their fields.
2. The land near the Nile was very, so crops grew easily.
3. The new school was built on a strong stone
4. In Mesopotamia, a was responsible for writing records on clay tablets.
5. In Babylon, temples called rose high into the sky.

Language

4 Label these sentences as Active (A) or Passive (P):

1. Egypt borders three countries. ()
2. The Suez Canal was opened in 1869. ()
3. Tourists visit the Pyramids every year. ()
4. Arabic is spoken throughout Egypt. ()
5. The Nile River has been called Egypt's lifeline. ()

5 Change these Active sentences into Passive:

1. Ferdinand de Lesseps designed the Suez Canal.
- The Suez Canal
2. Workers completed the project in 1869.
- The project
3. Ships carry millions of tons of cargo through the canal.
- Millions of tons of cargo

6 Change these Passive sentences into Active:

1. The smuggler was arrested by the police.
2. A kite was being flown by Shady.
3. The deer was attacked by the lion.
4. This portrait has been drawn by my sister.

7 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The new library last year.

a) was building	b) built
c) builds	d) was built
2. The chef a five-star meal.

a) has been prepared	b) has prepared
c) was prepared	d) have prepared
3. The packages by the delivery service.

a) are being delivered	b) delivered
c) are delivering	d) is delivered
4. They the new song on the radio.

a) are being played	b) were played
c) played	d) was playing
5. The concert by thousands of fans.

a) was enjoyed	b) enjoyed
c) is enjoying	d) was enjoying

8 Complete the Text: Use the correct active or passive form of the verbs in brackets:

Egypt (situate) at the crossroads of Africa and Asia. The country (border) by Libya to the west and Sudan to the south. The Suez Canal (construct) in the 19th century and (transform) global shipping. Today, thousands of ships (pass) through the canal each year. The Egyptian government (collect) significant revenue from canal fees.

9 Find and correct the one mistake in each sentence:

1. The Pyramids built by ancient Egyptians thousands of years ago. (.....)
2. Many tourists are visited the Nile River every year. (.....)
3. The climate zones in Egypt explained by Dr. Azmi on the radio program. (.....)
4. Mediterranean cities located along the coast and get more rain. (.....)
5. Underground water finds in some desert oases. (.....)

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء: www.aladwaa.com






1 Finish the following dialog:

Returning a call to the child's teacher at school

Parent : I believe that you called me?

Teacher : Oh, hi. Thanks for getting back to me quickly.

Parent : (1).....?

Teacher : I was calling about your son.

Parent : (2).....?

Teacher : Yes, your son was acting up in class.

Parent : What do you mean?

Teacher : (3).....

Parent : I don't know why he did all that trouble. I'll ask him.

Teacher : If you could just talk to him, I would greatly appreciate it.

Parent : (4)....., and I'll make sure he won't do that again.

Teacher : Thank you very much.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids thousands of years ago. (were)

.....

2. People think that Omar is wealthy. (It ...)

.....

A Glimpse of Revelation

3 (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The crowd had to stand behind inspection before they left.

- a) barriers b) radios c) walls d) fences

2. The Qur'an introduced knowledge of human beings.

- a) unrivalled b) ordinary c) strange d) unclear

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. What are the major divine ideas explained in the Qur'an?

2. What is the definition of Qur'an?

(C) Write [T] for true statements and [F] for false ones:

1. The Qur'an is coherent despite its length. []

2. The Qur'an considers the dignity of human beings to be one of the essences of humanity. []

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Bad friends can ruin our life completely, whereas good friends motivate us to do any hard work and pass bad times cheerfully.

2. People differ in their color, height, weight, size, strength, hairstyle, and even in their intelligence.

(B) Translate into English:

3. إن زيادة الإنتاج هي السبيل الوحيد لبناء المجتمع المثالي الذي نأمل جميعًا في الوصول إليه.

4. الأشخاص المحظوظون هم أولئك الذين يستطيعون التوازن بين متطلبات عملهم وامتلاك الوقت.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED TWENTY (120) words on the following:

The recent changes that have taken place in Egypt.

.....

.....

.....

أولاً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجة واحدة»:

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ancient Egypt had its own legal to organize justice and punish crimes.
a) history b) code c) secret d) religion
2. The trade routes connected Europe, Asia, and Africa for centuries before air travel existed.
a) northern b) underground c) maritime d) overland
3. At the of the Nile and the Blue Nile, the water becomes wider and stronger.
a) source b) bank c) strategy d) confluence
4. It is believed that ancient Greek ideas the foundation for modern science and philosophy.
a) laid b) lied c) stood d) replayed
5. Getting enough sleep is crucial for maintaining good health and mental performance. The synonym of the word "crucial" is
a) religious b) essential c) vast d) unimportant
6. The Ming ruled China for nearly three centuries, from 1368 to 1644.
a) Republic b) Dynasty c) Innovators d) Scribes
7. The army stopped the enemy's before they reached the capital and saved the country.
a) innovation b) relation c) invasion d) confusion
8. Animals' skin to make shoes.
a) are used b) is using c) is used d) uses
9. You'll have to find another computer. This one by Maha.
a) is using b) is being used c) was being used d) has been used
10., the car became ready for the long trip.
a) After repairing b) Having been repaired
c) After it has been repaired d) Having repaired
11. You must be patient; lunch
a) is being prepared b) is preparing c) was preparing d) was being prepared

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most people know that a balanced diet and regular exercise are very important. However, most people do not know how to exercise properly. Exercising the right way is important for people who are worried about their health and their appearance.

One of the most common workout mistakes is doing the same routine over and over again. This does not challenge your muscles, and it can actually prevent muscles from growing and repairing themselves. Instead of always sticking to the same old workout, it is important to change your routine every six to eight weeks. It is also important to add a variety of workouts to your routine, such as swimming, yoga, or biking, to make sure your whole body stays fit.

Another mistake people tend to make is to work out too hard, too often. Your body needs to rest between workouts; otherwise, no progress will be made. It is best to keep the number of hard workout routines to no more than two per week. Then, for those who don't want to get off schedule by skipping a day, shorter workouts of about twenty minutes can be used on other days. For more variety in workouts, you could also plan an easier routine for forty to sixty minutes between days of shorter, more intense workouts.

Experts recommend, however, taking at least one day off completely each week, especially after several hard workout days in a row. In reality, no one is perfect. However, if you want to make a difference in your overall health, there are some things you can do. Stretch before and after every workout. Do not rush your routine, and do not work out too little or too much. Remember not to make these common workout mistakes, and always have fun while exercising!

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

12. What is the main idea of this text?
 a) Daily exercise can often be bad for your health.
 b) Working out properly is an important way to gain effective health results.
 c) Most people know how to work out efficiently and effectively.
 d) Adding a variety of workouts to your routine is not important.
13. Which of the following statements is NOT correct?
 a) Daily intense workouts help one stay healthy.
 b) One's body needs to rest between workouts.
 c) A variety of exercises is better than doing the same one all the time.
 d) It can be good to take a day off from exercising.
14. Which word is closest in meaning to the word "stretch" in this reading?
 a) Exaggerate. b) Widen. c) Make tight. d) Extend or reach.
15. The mistakes people make when they work out show that
 a) they are very harmful to the body b) people who rarely work out make them
 c) people think it is OK to make them d) athletes would not make these mistakes
16. Why should you change your workout routine every six to eight weeks?
 a) To challenge your muscles. b) To become faster.
 c) To avoid bone problems. d) To exercise your brain.
17. It is better to take a complete off every week from exercise.
 a) week b) day c) 20 minutes d) night
18. It is important to add different physical exercises to your routine, such as
 a) climbing mountains b) diving c) parachuting d) cycling
19. The underlined word "it" refers to
 a) workout b) bone problem c) doing the same routine d) yoga

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Henry attended a friend's birthday party today. It was an army-themed party. The moment he arrived, he had to give a salute at the door entrance. He was asked to report his name and purpose of visit.

"What is your name, soldier?"

"Henry, sir!"

"And why are you here?"

"To attend Matthew's birthday party, sir!" Once the 'commander' was satisfied with Henry's answer, he was allowed to enter.

The first activity was a camouflage competition. There were tubes of camouflage face paint available. Everyone had to apply it to their face like a real soldier. Henry had never done anything like this before, so it took him a rather long time to get the hang of it. He realized that putting on different shades of green and black was much more effective. Once everyone was ready, their camouflage had to be tested. A camouflage netting was placed in front of each person, and the person who was the most well-hidden behind the netting was the winner. Surprisingly, Henry won the second prize.

Once the competition was over, there was a short break for lunch. After that, the children were provided with toy guns and army print sunglasses. They formed two teams and played army war games. The two groups had a 'war' and fought to see who would emerge victorious. It was chaotic, as the children were running everywhere and shooting and shouting. It sounded like a real war.

The last thing before the party ended was the cake cutting. Matthew had a mango sponge cake. The children sang the birthday song, and Matthew blew out the birthday candles. That day, Henry had tremendous fun. He really enjoyed the camouflage competition. He had fun applying the goeoy cream on his face and looking like a real soldier.

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

20. The best title for the passage is ".....".

- a) Camouflage is a good activity
b) Henry's prize was a surprise
c) An enjoyable army-themed party
d) The children's war at the party

21. According to the passage, which of the following is not true?

- a) Henry had to salute before he could enter the party.
b) Henry had to shout his name before he could enter the party.
c) Henry had to put on camouflage before he could enter the party.
d) Henry had to report his purpose of visit before he could enter the party.

22. Why did Henry take a long time to apply the camouflage paint to his face?

- a) He wanted to look like a real soldier.
b) There were many tubes of camouflage paint.
c) He had never done it before.
d) He wanted to find the most effective way of doing it.

23. The winner of the camouflage competition

- a) looked like a real soldier
b) used only tubes of black and green paint
c) covered his face with a camouflage netting
d) concealed himself the best behind the camouflage netting

24. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

- a) The war game.
b) The two teams.
c) The children at the party.
d) The shouting of the children.

25. Henry had tremendous fun at the party because

- a) he liked dressing up as a soldier
b) he liked the mango sponge cake
c) he liked singing the birthday song
d) he liked behaving like a soldier in the game

26. The synonym of the word "gooey" is ".....".

- a) faint
b) bright
c) bad
d) sticky

27. The party was really

- a) in an army camp
b) in Matthew's house
c) in the nearby school
d) in Henry's neighbor's house

ثانياً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجتان»:

28. Some valuable paintings from the museum last night

- a) stole
b) stolen
c) had been stolen
d) were stolen

29. It's believed that the missing documents in a secret drawer.

- a) are being kept
b) were kept
c) have kept
d) had been kept

30. I didn't enjoy the meal. The vegetables for too long.

- a) are cooked
b) cooked
c) had been cooked
d) have been cooked

31. Once, the email will be sent to all clients.

- a) wrote
b) written
c) writing
d) has been written

32. The company is said major financial problems last year.

- a) to face
b) to have faced
c) to be facing
d) to have been faced

33. Penicillin Sir Alexander Fleming in 1928.

- a) was discovered with
b) was discovered
c) discovered
d) was discovered by

34. Which of the following sentences isn't punctuated correctly?

- a) "Please, don't forget your homework," said the teacher.
b) My brother, who lives in London, is coming to visit.
c) What a great idea Let's try it right now!
d) It's raining heavily, so we should stay indoors.

35. What transition word or phrase couldn't you use to express contrasting ideas?

- a) However,
b) In addition,
c) On the other hand,
d) Despite

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

36. Egyptian society proudly preserves its ancient heritage and traditions. From celebrations to daily customs, these practices strengthen community bonds and connect generations to their rich historical roots.

- (a) يفخر المجتمع المصري بحفاظه على ميراثه وتقاليده العريقة. من الاحتفالات إلى العادات اليومية، تُعزز هذه التدريبات روابط المجتمع وتربط الأجيال بجذورها التاريخية العريقة.
- (b) يفخر المجتمع المصري بحفاظه على تراثه وتقاليده العريقة. من المهرجانات إلى العادات اليومية، تُعزز هذه الممارسات أطر المجتمع وتربط الأجيال بجذورها التاريخية الغالية.
- (c) يفخر المجتمع المصري بحفاظه على تراثه وتقاليده العريقة. من الاحتفالات إلى العادات اليومية، تُعزز هذه الممارسات روابط المجتمع وتربط الأجيال بجذورها التاريخية الغنية.
- (d) يفخر المجتمع المصري بحفاظه على ميراثه وتقاليده العريقة. من الاحتفالات إلى العادات اليومية، تُعزز هذه التدريبات العريقة اتصالات المجتمع وتربط الأجيال بجذورها التاريخية الغنية.

37. Ancient civilizations transformed through cultural exchange. The Silk Road spread goods and ideas, while conquests blended Greek, Persian, and Egyptian traditions, creating lasting hybrid cultures.

- (a) شهدت الحضارات القديمة تطوراً عبر التبادل الثقافي. فنشر طريق الحرير البضائع والأفكار، بينما غيرت الفتوحات التقاليد اليونانية والفارسية والمصرية، منتجةً ثقافات هجينة دائمة.
- (b) شهدت الحضارات القديمة تحولاً عبر التبادل الثقافي. فنشر طريق الحرير البضائع والأفكار، بينما مزجت الفتوحات بين التقاليد اليونانية والفارسية والمصرية، منتجةً ثقافات هجينة دائمة.
- (c) شهدت الحضارات القديمة تحولاً عبر التبادل الثقافي. فنشر طريق الحرير البضائع والأفكار، بينما غيرت الفتوحات التقاليد اليونانية والفارسية والمصرية، منتجةً ثقافات متنوعة مؤقتة.
- (d) شهدت الحضارات القديمة تحولاً عبر التبادل الثقافي. فنشر طريق الحرير المحاصيل والأفكار، بينما مزجت الفتوحات بين التقاليد اليونانية والفارسية والمصرية، منتجةً ثقافات متغيرة دائمة.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

38. ساهمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة في زيادة نسب البطالة لاعتماد الكثير من الشركات على عدد أقل من الموظفين، معتمدين على تأدية الأجهزة الإلكترونية لنفس وظائفهم.

- (a) Old technology has contributed to higher unemployment rates as many countries rely on fewer employees, depending on electronic devices to perform the same jobs.
- (b) Modern technology has contributed to higher unemployment rates, as many companies rely on fewer employees, depending on electronic devices to perform the same jobs.
- (c) Modern technology has contributed to higher unemployment rates as some companies rely on fewer employees, depending on electrical devices to perform the same jobs.
- (d) Modern technology has contributed to higher employment rates as many companies rely on more employees, depending on electronic devices to perform the same jobs.

39. يعمل الكثير من كبار السن بعد وصول سن التقاعد لأسباب عديدة اقتصادية أو اجتماعية، لكن أهمها هو الإحساس بأنهم ما زالوا قادرين على العطاء وذوو قيمة في الحياة.

- (a) Many aged people work after retirement for fun or sports reasons, mainly because they feel tired and useless.
- (b) Most old people avoid working after retirement for social and health reasons, and they believe they are no longer valuable.
- (c) Many elderly people continue to work after reaching retirement age for various economic or social reasons, but mainly because they still feel capable of giving and being valuable in life.
- (d) A lot of old workers leave jobs before retirement only because of social and economic reasons, but mainly because they still feel incapable of giving and being valuable in life.

ثالثاً: الأسئلة المقالية (كل سؤال درجتان):

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

40. Does the mechanic check the tires before the trip?

(Are)

41. He enjoys his fans asking him for autographs.

(asked)

Answer the following questions: (The Count of Monte Cristo)

42. Do you agree with Edmond's plan to seek revenge, or should he forgive and move on? Why?

43. If you could take on a completely new identity, how would you use it to change?

رابعاً: الأسئلة المقالية (سؤال واحد خمس درجات):

Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

44. Which are better—team sports or individual sports? State your opinion.

Unit 9

The Universe's Mysteries



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Read short texts/dialogs about space phenomena (black holes, event horizon, singularity) and identify the main idea, key details, and author's viewpoint/symbolism.
- Language** - Control of to-infinitive vs. gerund (form, meaning, verb patterns like stop/remember/try).
- Review/extend active vs. passive in science reporting.
- Listening** - Listen for gist and detail in interviews/broadcasts about black holes; infer speaker attitude; verify facts vs. misconceptions.
- Writing** - Write a focused paragraph about a concept in the unit; craft a short news report (2019 black-hole image); write a mystery story.
- Speaking** - Discuss perspectives (fear vs admiration), run "Myth or Fact?" discussions, present brief explanations, and justify opinions with evidence.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

black hole (n)	ثقب أسود	escape (n) (v) (d)	هروب/ يهرب/ يفلت	invisible (adj)	غير مرئي
boundary (n)	حد/ حدود	event horizon (n)	أفق الحدث	mystery (n)	غموض/ لغز
curiosity (n)	فضول	gateway (n)	بوابة/ ممر	opportunity (n)	فرصة
dimension (n)	بُعد	horizon (n)	أفق	trapdoor (n)	باب سرى

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

adventure (n)	مغامرة	galaxy (n)	مجرة	myth (n)	أسطورة
aspect (n)	وجه/ جانب	gravity (n)	جاذبية	orbit (n) (v) (ted)	مدار/ يدور
beginning (n)	بداية	guardian (n)	حارس	planet (n)	كوكب
broadcast (n) (v) (ed)	بث/ يبث/ يذيع	hidden (adj)	مخياً/ خفي	remain (v) (ed)	يبقى
chance (n)	فرصة	hide (v)	يختبئ/ يخفي	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
creator (n)	صانع/ مبتكر	human (n) (adj)	إنسان/ بشري	represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ ينوب عن
cross (v) (ed)	يعبر	humanity (n)	بشرية/ إنسانية	secret (n) (adj)	سر/ سرى
danger (n)	خطر	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل	silent (adj)	صامت
dare (v) (d)	يجرؤ	key (n)	مفتاح	space (n)	فضاء
desire (n) (v) (d)	رغبة/ يرغب	light (n) (adj)	ضوء/ خفيف	swallow (v) (ed)	يبتلع
detect (v) (ed)	يكشف	line (n)	خط	symbol (n) (ed)	رمز
directly (adv)	بطريقة مباشرة	measurement (n)	قياس/ مقاس	symbolic (adj)	رمزي
discover (v) (ed)	يكشف	misconception (n)	فكرة خاطئة	telescope (n)	تلسكوب
edge (n)	حافة/ طرف	monster (n)	وحش	universe (n)	الكون
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف	moviemaker (n)	صانع الأفلام	vacuum cleaner (n)	مكنسة كهربائية
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/ يخشى	mysterious (adj)	غامض		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Most scientific inventions began with someone's simple about how things work.
 - memory
 - secret
 - mystery
 - curiosity
- Astronauts wear special suits to help them danger in space.
 - escape
 - deny
 - imagine
 - share
- Studying abroad gave me the to experience a different culture.
 - idea
 - opportunity
 - symbol
 - schedule

4. Black holes are in space because even light cannot escape from them.
 - a) visible
 - b) symbolic
 - c) invisible
 - d) slow
5. My friend's strong to help others inspired her to volunteer in a charity for the homeless.
 - a) desire
 - b) refusal
 - c) mystery
 - d) opportunity
6. The Earth is the only in our solar system known to have life.
 - a) comet
 - b) planet
 - c) star
 - d) symbol
7. Ancient Roman myths often describe with multiple heads and supernatural powers.
 - a) innovations
 - b) galaxies
 - c) sculptures
 - d) monsters
8. The Hubble Space has captured amazing images of distant galaxies.
 - a) Symbol
 - b) Planet
 - c) Telescope
 - d) Microscope

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

come to your mind	يخطر ببالك / بذهنك	in fact	في الحقيقة	shape the universe	يشكل الكون
door to the unknown	باب إلى المجهول	in the face of the universe	في مواجهة الكون	stay in orbit	تبقى في المدار
have an effect on	له تأثير على	look very different	تبدو مختلفة جدًا	stay together	تبقى معًا

Prepositions

حروف الجر

described as	موصوف كـ	give off	يطلق / يبعث	stay away	يبتعد
edge of	حافة / طرف لـ	know about	يُعرف عن	step into	يخطو داخل
escape from	يهرب / يفلت من	lead to	يؤدي إلى	travel through	يسافر عبر
fall in	يسقط داخل	look up	ينظر إلى أعلى / يبحث عن	turn into	يتحول إلى

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
detect	يكتشف	detection detector	كشف / كاشف	detectable	قابل للكشف
discover	يكتشف	discovery	اكتشاف	discovered	مكتشف
endanger	يعرض للخطر	danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير
fear	يخاف	fear fearfulness	خوف مخافة	fearful fearsome	مزعج مخيف
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative	خيالي واسع الخيال
measure	يقيس	measurement measure	قياس مقياس	measurable	قابل للقياس
mystify	يحير	mystery	غموض	mysterious	غامض
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال	replaceable	قابل للاستبدال
represent	يمثل	representation representative	تمثيل ممثل	representative	تمثيلي / نموذجي

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- ▶ The mechanic will **replace** the old engine with a new one. (v)
- ▶ The company sent a **replacement** for the broken phone. (n)
- ▶ These parts are easily **replaceable** if they get damaged. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
beginning	بداية	start/initiation		end/conclusion	نهاية / خاتمة
boundary	حد	limit/border		center/middle	مركز / وسط
curiosity	فضول	interest/wonder		disinterest/indifference	عدم اهتمام / لامبالاة
danger	خطر	risk/threat		safety/protection	سلامة / حماية
explore	يستكشف	investigate/examine		ignore/overlook/neglect	يتجاهل / يهمل
fear	خوف	scare/panic		courage/daring	شجاعة / جرأة
hidden	مخفي	concealed/secret		obvious/clear/apparent	واضح / جلي / ظاهر
invisible	غير مرئي	unseen/hidden		visible/apparent	مرئي / واضح
mystery	غموض	puzzle/secret		certainty/obviousness	يقين / وضوح
replace	يستبدل	substitute/exchange		keep/preserve	يحافظ / يحفظ
silent	صامت	mute/speechless		loud/noisy	صاخب / مزعج

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many solutions can to your mind when you think about solving climate change.
a) come b) show c) arrive d) reach
- Some medications may an effect on your ability to drive safely, so you should take them before you sleep.
a) make b) take c) have d) give
- The International Space Station must stay in at approximately 400 kilometers above Earth.
a) flight b) orbit c) rotation d) recycling
- Doctors say that skipping breakfast regularly can lead decreased energy levels throughout the day.
a) from b) in c) at d) to
- It's a big decision to the world of entrepreneurship and start your own business.
a) step into b) keep away c) keep up d) run over
- Creatures like the dragon and the unicorn are completely and don't exist in real life.
a) imagines b) imagination c) imaginary d) imaginative
- The fence around the field marks the farm's boundary. The synonym of the noun "boundary" is
a) edge b) center c) secret d) safety
- When the teacher entered the room, all the students became silent immediately. The antonym of the adjective "silent" is
a) mute b) visible c) obvious d) noisy

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم اجب عن الاسئلة للتدريب على اسئلة قطعة الفهم.

A Journey to a Black Hole

When people think of **black holes**⁽¹⁾, they often imagine dark monsters in space swallowing everything around them. But perhaps we can see them differently. A black hole is not just an invisible place in space where gravity is so strong that not even light can **escape**⁽²⁾, but it is also a **mystery**⁽³⁾, a silent guardian of secrets that the universe keeps from us.



Imagine a place where time slows down, where light itself cannot escape. This is what happens at the edge of a black hole, a **boundary**⁽⁴⁾ called the "**event horizon**"⁽⁵⁾. To cross it is like stepping into another world, one that no human has ever visited and perhaps never will. Yet, black holes are not always something to fear. They remind us how small we are in the face of the universe, and how much there is left to discover.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| (1) ثقب سوداء | (2) يهرب/ يفلت |
| (3) غموض/ لخبز | (4) حد/ حدود |
| (5) افق الحدث | (6) فرصة |
| (7) بوابة/ ممر | (8) بُعد |
| (9) فضول | |

Writers and moviemakers often use black holes as symbols of the unknown. For some, they represent danger; for others, they represent **opportunity**⁽⁶⁾. Who knows—maybe one day, far in the future, black holes could even become a **gateway**⁽⁷⁾ to other **dimensions**⁽⁸⁾, like doors leading to new adventures.

For now, they remain far away, hidden among the stars, silently shaping galaxies without us even noticing. When we look up at the night sky, black holes remind us of two things: that the universe is full of mysteries, and **curiosity**⁽⁹⁾ is the key to understanding them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What makes a black hole "invisible"?
 - a) It is too small to see with telescopes.
 - b) It moves too quickly through space.
 - c) Its gravity is so strong that light cannot escape.
 - d) It hides behind other stars.
2. What does the "event horizon" represent in the passage?
 - a) The center of the black hole.
 - b) The boundary where time stops completely.
 - c) The place where new stars are born.
 - d) The edge where nothing, not even light, can escape.
3. According to the writer, what do black holes remind us of?
 - a) The mysteries of the universe.
 - b) The power of science fiction.
 - c) The dangers of space travel.
 - d) The need to fear the unknown.
4. How are black holes used by writers and moviemakers?
 - a) As examples of scientific discoveries.
 - b) As symbols of mystery, danger, or opportunity.
 - c) As real places for humans to visit.
 - d) As explanations for how galaxies are made.

Listening Text



Misconception

Radio Host Voice:

Good evening, listeners, and welcome to *Mysteries of the Sky*. Tonight, we're exploring one of the most fascinating puzzles of the **universe**⁽¹⁾: Black Holes. For many, the very name sounds frightening.

A black hole is an **invisible**⁽²⁾ place in space where gravity is so strong that not even light can escape. Imagine a **trapdoor**⁽³⁾ in the universe. Once you fall in, there is no way back. Scientists call the edge of this trapdoor the event horizon.

But are black holes only about danger? Not really. They are also creators. In fact, black holes help **galaxies**⁽⁴⁾ stay together. Without them, the universe would look very different. Some scientists even suggest that black holes might hide secrets about time, space, or even other dimensions.

Of course, we don't yet have all the answers. Telescopes can't see black holes directly. They can only detect the effect black holes have on nearby stars and gas. This is why black holes remain one of the greatest mysteries in the sky.

So next time you look up at the stars, remember, somewhere out there, hidden in the darkness, a black hole may be quietly shaping the universe around you.



- (1) الكون (2) غير مرئي
(3) باب سرى (4) مجرات

Definitions

التعريفات

boundary	حد / حدود	the edge or limit of an area
curiosity	فضول / حب استطلاع	a strong desire to know or learn something
dimension	بُعد	a measurement or aspect of something
mystery	غموض / لغز	something that is difficult to explain or understand
opportunity	فرصة	a chance to do something
invisible	غير مرئي	something that cannot be seen
trapdoor	باب سرى	a secret or hidden door
horizon	أفق	the line where the Earth or the sky seem to meet

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

boundary

حدّ (خط وهمي أو حقيقي يفصل بين منطقتين، غالبًا ما يكون له أبعاد اجتماعية أو نفسية)

- The fence marks the **boundary** between our school and the park.

border

حدّ (خط فعلي ومحدد جغرافيًا وخاصة بين الدول أو المقاطعات، له طابع سياسي ورسمي)

- You need a passport to cross the **border** into another country.

2	orbit يَدُورُ/مَدَارٌ (مسار منحنى يجرى فيه جرم سماوي حول جرم آخر أكبر بفعل الجاذبية)	▶ The Earth moves in an orbit around the Sun once every year.
	spin يَدُورُ حَوْلَ نَفْسِهِ/دَوْرَانٌ (الحركة الدائرية لجرم حول محوره أو مركزه نفسه)	▶ The planet continues to spin on its axis day and night.
3	explore يَسْتَكْشِفُ (البحث والسفر في منطقة أو فكرة غير معروفة للتعرف عليها)	▶ Scientists want to explore the deepest parts of the ocean.
	discover يَكْتَشِفُ (العثور على شيء ما كان موجودًا ولكن غير معروف سابقًا)	▶ Columbus wanted to discover a new route to Asia.
	invent يَخْتَرِعُ (إنشاء أو تصميم شيء جديد لم يكن موجودًا من قبل)	▶ Alexander Graham Bell managed to invent the telephone.
4	innovate يَبْدِعُ/يَطْوِرُ/يَجَدِّدُ (تحسين أو تطوير شيء موجود مسبقًا لجعله أفضل أو أكثر كفاءة)	▶ Good companies must innovate to stay successful.
	guardian وصي/قيم (مسئولية شاملة عن الحماية والرعاية (لشخص أو شيء))	▶ The old man acted as a guardian to the orphaned boy.
	guard حارس (يقوم بمهمة حراسة وحماية نشطة من تهديد أو خطر خارجي محدد)	▶ A soldier stood at the gate to guard the palace.
	keeper حارس (مسئول عن الحفظ والصيانة والإدارة اليومية لشيء ما)	▶ The keeper at the zoo feeds the lions every morning.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is the line where the Earth and the sky seem to meet.
 - Dimension
 - Trapdoor
 - Horizon
 - Mystery
- A can be defined as something that is difficult to explain or understand.
 - mystery
 - dimension
 - boundary
 - broadcast
- The Moon takes approximately 28 days to the Earth.
 - cycle
 - orbit
 - spin
 - come
- The at the palace gate checks everyone's identification carefully before letting them in.
 - guardian
 - keeper
 - defender
 - guard
- Archaeologists hope to more ancient artifacts at the new excavation site.
 - invent
 - discover
 - explore
 - create
- Scientists are pushing the of human knowledge with their research on quantum physics. فيزياء الكم.
 - boundaries
 - edges
 - borders
 - lines

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. A is a region in space where gravity is so strong that nothing can escape from it.
a) horizon b) black hole c) planet d) star
2. The architect had to consider every of the building design, including height, width, and depth.
a) system b) horizon c) size d) dimension
3. The internet has become the main to information and communication worldwide.
a) gateway b) gate c) invasion d) entrance
4. Scientists cannot observe what happens beyond the event because no light can escape from there.
a) zone b) dimension c) horizon d) center
5. The Great Pyramid is full of secrets and still remains a great to historians.
a) opportunity b) story c) aspect d) mystery
6. The thief escaped through a secret under the floor of his house that he specially designed for this.
a) edge b) fear c) trapdoor d) bridge
7. The teacher asked students to discuss different of climate change in their essays.
a) divisions b) aspects c) visions d) gateways
8. What unit of do you use for distance in your country—kilometers or miles?
a) symbol b) measurement c) sight d) dimension
9. The flag of each country is designed to its history and culture.
a) act b) imagine c) represent d) desire
10. The Opening Ceremony of the World Cup will be on several international channels at the same time.
a) detected b) delayed c) transferred d) broadcast
11. The director used special effects to make the scary look more realistic in the movie.
a) monster b) human c) line d) horizon
12. The child found it difficult to the large vitamin tablet, so the doctor changed his prescription.
a) inhale b) explore c) swallow d) fade
13. Special telescopes help astronomers black holes by observing their effects on nearby matter.
a) avoid b) detect c) invent d) hide
14. Astronomers wonder if there could be other life forms somewhere in the universe.
a) symbolic b) fake c) artificial d) human
15. Our, the Milky Way, contains billions of stars and at least one supermassive black hole.
a) path b) universe c) galaxy d) system
16. Despite the challenges we faced during the project, I decided to calm and focused.
a) dare b) remain c) devise d) change
17. This art competition gives students a great to show their talents in many fields.
a) chance b) rule c) task d) desire
18. A talented can turn an ordinary story into an unforgettable movie.
a) photographer b) moviemaker c) musician d) architect
19. The Olympic rings are a famous of international unity and sportsmanship all over the world.
a) myth b) sign c) symbol d) signal

- 20. The ancient temple in Mexico contained symbols that no one could decipher.
 a) key b) silent c) normal d) mysterious
21. The of the lost island of Atlantis has fascinated people for thousands of years.
 a) guard b) myth c) tale d) innovation
22. The teacher advised us that practice is the to success in learning English.
 a) rule b) boundary c) key d) chance
23. Some scientists believe the began with the Big Bang about 13.8 billion years ago.
 a) universe b) atmosphere c) planet d) line
24. Many people have a of flying on planes, even though it's very safe.
 a) skill b) desire c) dream d) fear
25. Astronauts in space experience a sense of weightlessness due to the lack of
 a) power b) gravity c) force d) orbit
26. Many people have the that black holes "suck" everything like a vacuum, but that's not true.
 a) misconception b) aspect c) detection d) dependence
27. The explorers set out on a dangerous across the desert to find the lost city.
 a) event b) flight c) accident d) adventure
28. If your phone stops working, the company will it for free during the warranty period.
 a) devise b) remove c) replace d) dare
29. The bus driver followed the yellow painted on the road.
 a) stripe b) line c) sign d) orbit
30. The teacher asked the students to answer the question without any delay.
 a) directly b) slowly c) rarely d) secretly

► Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

31. Some stars look small to the eye., they are much larger than our sun.
 a) For example b) On the other hand c) In fact d) After all
32. Real friends should together and support each other even when life gets difficult.
 a) leave b) separate c) argue d) stay
33. The forces of gravity and time work together to the universe we live in.
 a) distract b) design c) shape d) move
34. When wood burns, it gives smoke and gases into the air.
 a) up b) off c) in d) for
35. The movie gives a realistic of what life was like a hundred years ago.
 a) represented b) representative c) representation d) representatively
36. Germs are invisible to the naked eye, so we need a microscope to see them. The synonym of the adjective "invisible" is ".....".
 a) unseen b) apparent c) silent d) risky
37. The guide warned the climbers about the danger of falling rocks. The antonym of the noun "danger" is ".....".
 a) threat b) revenge c) desire d) safety
38. The child's curiosity led her to ask many questions about how machines work. The noun "curiosity" can be replaced by ".....".
 a) indifference b) adventure c) wonder d) courage
39. The museum allows visitors to explore its exhibits freely. The opposite of the verb "explore" is ".....".
 a) investigate b) ignore c) deny d) detect
40. Many artificial satellites the Earth to collect weather and communication data.
 a) orbit b) spin c) remove d) signal

B Language

The gerund (verb + -ing) or the infinitive

من الطبيعي أن نجد فعلا واحدا قبل المفعول في الجملة مثل:

▶ Ahmed **studied** his lessons yesterday.

ولكن أحيانا نجد فعلين وفي هذه الحالة الفعل الأول يصرف حسب الزمن ولكن الفعل الثاني يكون إما **v.ing** أو **to + inf.** أو مصدراً بدون **to** حسب نوع الفعل الأول، فمثلاً:

▶ I **finished studying** English early yesterday.

▶ I **decided to study** English yesterday.

▶ I help **my brother study English**.

1 Some verbs are followed by to + infinitive:

١- أفعال يأتي بعدها **to + inf.**

arrange	يُنظّم	hope	يأمل	promise	يُوعِد
decide	يُقرّر	learn	يَتعلّم	plan	يُخطّط
agree	يَقْبَل/يوافق	allow	يسمح	advise	ينصح
want	يُرِيد	demand	يطلب	hurry	يسرع
aim	يهدف	deserve	يستحق	forbid	يمنع
appear	يبدو	pretend	يتظاهر	determine	يصمم
prepare	يعد/يجهز	prove	يثبت	ask	يطلب
long	يشاق	manage	يتمكن	refuse	يرفض
warn	يحذر	fail	يفشل	threaten	يهدد
attempt	يحاول	guarantee	يضمن	neglect	يهمل
care	يهتم	struggle	يكافح	happen	يتصادف
wait	ينتظر	wish	يتمنى	seem	يبدو
dare	يجرؤ	encourage	يشجع	urge	يحث
afford	يتحمل تكلفة	hesitate	يتردد		
need	يحتاج	tend	يميل الى	choose	يختار
expect	يَتَوَقّع	offer	يُقَدِّم		

Examples

- ▶ Everyone **agreed/arranged/decided to meet** at the airport.
- ▶ I **expect/hope to finish** my homework later this evening.
- ▶ I **learned to swim** when I was three years old.
- ▶ She **offered/promised to help** her mother prepare lunch.
- ▶ What do you **plan/want to do** in the summer?

2 Some verbs are followed by the gerund (verb + -ing):

٢- أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل به ing

admit (to)	يَعْتَرِفُ بـ	dislike	يُبْغِضُ / يكره	suggest	يُقْتَرِحُ
deny	يُنْكِرُ	enjoy	يَتَمَتَّعُ بـ	finish	يُنْهَى
avoid	يَتَجَنَّبُ	practice	يُمَارِسُ	go (activities)	يَذْهَبُ
spend	يَقْضِي	understand	يَفْهَمُ	recall	يَسْتَرْجِعُ
appreciate	يُقَدِّرُ	imagine	يَتَخَيَّلُ	recollect	يَسْتَخْضِرُ
consider	يُفَكِّرُ / يَتَأَمَّلُ	involve	يَخْتَوِي	report	يُنْبِغُ
continue	يُواصل	keep	يُواصل / يُحَافِظُ	resent	يَسْتَاءُ
delay	يُؤَجِّلُ	mention	يَذْكُرُ	resist	يُقَاوِمُ
discuss	يُنَاقِشُ	mind	يَمَانَعُ	risk	يُخَاطِرُ
escape	يَهْرُبُ	miss	يُخْطِئُ	save	يَنْقِذُ / يَدْخِرُ / يُوَفِّرُ
excuse	يُسَامِحُ	postpone	يُؤَخِّرُ	stand	يَضْمُدُ / يَبْقَى
fancy	يَتَخَيَّلُ	prevent	يَمْنَعُ	tolerate	يَتَسَامَحُ
forgive	يُسَامِحُ	quit	يُوقِفُ / يَتْرِكُ	confess	يَعْتَرِفُ

Examples

- ▶ Karim **admitted/denied borrowing** my pen without asking me.
- ▶ The driver of the car **avoided hitting** the motorbike.
- ▶ He **dislikes/enjoys sleeping** during the day.
- ▶ They're going home as soon as they've **finished working**.
- ▶ Samir and his brother **practice playing** tennis every day.
- ▶ My friend **suggested going** for a picnic on the beach.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Don't be nervous. I want you
 a) not nervous b) relax c) to relax d) relaxing
2. You should avoid during the rush hour.
 a) traveling b) to travel c) traveled d) to traveling
3. People are not allowed in the lecture hall.
 a) smoking b) smoke c) to smoking d) to smoke
4. Karim finished his dinner at 8.30.
 a) to have eaten b) eating c) to eat d) eaten
5. The doctor advised her in bed for a week.
 a) stay b) to staying c) staying d) to stay

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. We don't allow students talking to each other during exams. (.....)
2. I don't want my children watch many movies. (.....)
3. I can't decide what wear to the party. (.....)
4. I hate to waiting for the bus every day. (.....)
5. I'll never forget to travel by plane for the first time. (.....)

3

Some verbs can be followed by to + the infinitive or the -ing form, with no change in meaning.

٣- أفعال يأتي بعدها to + inf أو v.ing بدون تغيير في المعنى.

hate	يكره	like	يُحب	love	يُحب
prefer	يُفضّل	start	يبدأ	continue	يستمر
intend	ينوي	begin	يبدأ		

- ▶ I **hate/like/love/prefer to do/doing** exercise every day.
- ▶ It has **started to rain/raining**.

4

Some verbs can be followed by to + infinitive or the -ing form, but there is a change in meaning:

٤- أفعال يأتي بعدها to + inf أو v.ing وهناك تغيير في المعنى.

A) stop

Stop + v.ing

Stop + to + inf.

- ▶ Leila **stopped buying** sweets.
- ▶ Leila **stopped to buy** sweets.

يتوقف عن فعل شيء لفترة أو يقطع عن الشيء تمامًا.

يتوقف عن شيء ليفعل شيئًا آخر (هدف).

توقفت ليلي عن شراء الحلوى.

توقفت ليلي لكي تشتري الحلوى.

B) remember

remember + v.ing

remember + to + inf.

- ▶ I **remember watching** a TV program about wild life. It was interesting.
- ▶ I **remembered to phone** my mother.

يتذكر أنه فعل شيئًا. تم الحدوث أولاً ثم تذكر ثانيًا.

يتذكر أن يفعل شيئًا. يتذكر أولاً ثم يفعل الشيء ثانيًا.

شاهدت البرنامج واتذكره جيدًا لأنه كان شيقًا.

تذكرت أن أتصل بأمي.

C) forget

forget + v.ing

forget + to + inf.

- ▶ I **forgot adding** the milk.
- ▶ I'll never **forget driving** my car for the first time.
- ▶ I **forgot to bring** my book. I'm sorry.

تم حدوث الشيء أولاً ثم نسيه أو لم ينسّه بعد ذلك.

نسى أن يفعل الشيء أصلاً. فيعترض أو يذهب ليفعله بعد ذلك.

أضفت اللبن ولكنني نسيت.

عالق في ذاكرتي قيادة السيارة لأول مرة.

نسيت أن أحضر كتابي. (الفعل لم يتم لأن الفاعل نسيه)

D) regret

regret + v.ing

regret + to + inf.

- ▶ I **regret going** to the movie theater. It was not a very good movie.
- ▶ He **regrets to say** that he can't go.

فعل شيئًا ثم ندم بعد ذلك.

يأسف أن يقول شيئًا أو يفعل شيئًا مضطراً لذلك.

نادم على الذهاب للسينما لأن الفيلم لم يكن جيدًا.

هو يأسف أن يقول إنه لا يستطيع أن يذهب.

E) try

try + v.ing

try + to + inf.

- ▶ Why don't you **try adding** some sugar to taste better.
- ▶ The firemen are **trying to put** out the fire.

حاول أن يفعل شيئًا ونجح فيه - يحاول تجريب شيء ويرى نتيجته.

يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا ببذل الجهد.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He prefers to driving because it's better exercise.
a) walking
b) to walking
c) to walk
d) walks
2. Did you remember the letter I gave you yesterday?
a) to have posted
b) to be posted
c) to post
d) posting
3. My father intended last month a house in a quiet neighborhood.
a) buying
b) to buy
c) to have bought
d) both a & b
4. She never forgets a rat by accident when she was young.
a) to kill
b) killing
c) kill
d) killed
5. If the car won't start, try it.
a) push
b) to pushing
c) pushing
d) to be pushed

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. They would rather read a book than watch television. (prefer)
.....
2. She always takes her keys when leaving the house. (remember)
.....
3. He didn't pay the electricity bill before leaving for vacation. (forgot)
.....
4. He was making an effort to resolve the issue as quickly as possible. (tried)
.....
5. I was going to call the office first thing in the morning. (intended)
.....

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

تزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



- ▶ 20. The mad man was leaning against a wall to himself.
 a) talking b) talked c) talks d) talk
21. I can't forgive Tim's his promise.
 a) to break b) breaking c) break d) broken
22. I dislike late at night.
 a) visiting b) to visit c) being visited d) was visited
23. Don't just stand there nothing. Help me!
 a) doing b) to do c) to have done d) being done
24. We regret you that your application has been rejected.
 a) informing b) to inform c) to informing d) informed
25. He hates when he is having his after-lunch nap.
 a) to disturb b) being disturbed
 c) to have disturbed d) having been disturbed
26. I completely forgot you my electronic dictionary. I thought I had lost it.
 a) lend b) to lend c) to lending d) lending
27. Hala hoped to Jana's party.
 a) to be invited b) she will be invited
 c) being invited d) for being invited
28. I went to the airport to meet her, but she didn't arrive.
 a) to have expected b) to expect c) expecting d) to be expected
29. I prefer by bus to by train.
 a) to travel/traveling b) being traveled/having traveled
 c) traveling/to travel d) traveling/traveling
30. Ali forgot locking the door when he left home this morning.
 a) Ali didn't lock the door, and it's still open.
 b) Ali didn't remember to lock the door.
 c) Ali locked the door, but he forgot the action.
 d) Ali doesn't lock the door anymore.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- ▶ 1. Let's go out and visit the zoo. (I suggest)

2. Ahmed said that he hadn't broken the classroom window. (denied)

3. He didn't manage to arrive at the station on time. (failed)

4. She said that she would submit the assignment before the deadline. (promised)

5. It's OK to take the earlier train if necessary. (don't mind)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- ▶ 1. I expect the children finish their projects by Friday. (.....)
 2. She suggested to go for a hike this weekend. (.....)
 3. They offered lending us their spare tent for the trip. (.....)
 4. The politician denied to take any illicit funds during the campaign. (.....)
 5. They struggled understand the dense philosophical text. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Astronauts wear special suits so that no air can from them and cause trouble breathing.
a) escape b) fly c) desire d) release
2. Travel to foreign countries provides an excellent for passengers to learn about different cultures.
a) curiosity b) opportunity c) operation d) opposite
3. Mathematicians study shapes in more than one to understand their structure.
a) horizon b) rule c) dimension d) figure
4. The explorer stood at the of the cliff and looked down at the sea below.
a) bottom b) space c) corner d) edge
5. The teacher explained that travels faster than sound, which is why we see lightning before we hear thunder.
a) gravity b) energy c) light d) radiation
6. Great leaders are remembered not only for their power, but for their and compassion.
a) relevance b) humanity c) myth d) detection
7. Scientists are studying whether any other could support human life. Mars is a strong candidate.
a) planets b) asteroids c) stars d) events
8. Astronauts travel to outer in rockets and spacecrafts, and can return safely to Earth.
a) room b) space c) hole d) area
9. The mountain was so high that only a few climbers to reach its top.
a) explored b) feared c) dared d) discovered
10. The Great Pyramid is a structure that represents the power of Ancient Egypt.
a) dared b) passive c) scientific d) symbolic
11. The recipe for the sauce is a closely guarded as a/an by the owners of the local restaurant.
a) secret b) exploration c) mystery d) key
12. Radio waves are, but they transmit information across vast distances.
a) digital b) visual c) invisible d) obvious
13. The teacher asked the students to take the of the table in centimeters.
a) material b) figure c) form d) measurement
14. Archaeologists found tombs for workers under the sand near the Giza Pyramids.
a) visible b) hidden c) updated d) broken
15. A is a massive system of stars, gas, and dust held together by gravity.
a) planetarium b) meteorite c) planet d) galaxy
16. The moon's is weaker than Earth's, so objects weigh less there.
a) force b) light c) gravity d) energy
17. The FIFA decided to the World Cup final on both TV and the internet.
a) broadcast b) record c) produce d) predict
18. Lack of sleep can seriously an effect on your concentration at school.
a) give b) have c) reduce d) take
19. The explorers had to travel dense jungle for two weeks before reaching the ancient ruins.
a) for b) out c) around d) through
20. At the beginning of the story, the hero is just an ordinary boy. The synonym of the word "beginning" is ".....".
a) internship b) intensity c) initiation d) conclusion

Language

21. Our teacher refused our questions as we were talking during the lesson.
 a) to answer b) answering c) answer d) being answered
22. They expect thousands of people Sapporo for the Snow Festival.
 a) visit b) to visit c) visiting d) to visiting
23. If I were you, I'd avoid into the city during the festival.
 a) travel b) to travel c) traveling d) to traveling
24. Gehan forgot her money, so I lent her ten pounds.
 a) bring b) to bringing c) bringing d) to bring
25. She tried him the terrible truth, but she just couldn't bring herself to do it.
 a) tell b) to tell c) telling d) to telling
26. He could remember along the road just before the accident, but he couldn't remember the accident itself.
 a) to drive b) drove c) driving d) driven
27. The missing document didn't appear anywhere in the filing cabinet.
 a) to be b) being c) to being d) be
28. We should go while the lake is still warm.
 a) to swim b) swim c) to swimming d) swimming
29. Despite the bad weather, they managed the roof repairs on schedule.
 a) to finish b) finishing c) to finishing d) finish
30. The suspect ^{المشتبه به} denied the stolen items from the store.
 a) to take b) taking c) takes d) to taking
31. Would you opening the window? It's getting a little warm in here.
 a) like b) offer c) promise d) mind
32. She always keeps even when the task seems impossible.
 a) to try b) try c) trying d) to trying
33. They had to signing the contract until they had talked to their lawyer.
 a) postpone b) practice c) imagine d) go
34. We spent a very enjoyable evening about old times.
 a) having talked b) talk c) talking d) to talk
35. I don't regret her what I thought, even if it upsets her.
 a) tell b) to tell c) to have told d) telling
36. I tried her flowers, but it didn't have any effect.
 a) to send b) sending c) sent d) to be sent
37. Well, you can try an aspirin, if you like.
 a) to be taken b) to take c) taking d) taken
38. Can you imagine through the Sahara Desert under a full moon?
 a) walking b) to walking c) to walk d) walk
39. I suggest early tomorrow morning to avoid the traffic on the highway.
 a) to leave b) to leaving c) leave d) leaving
40. He to catch the 6 a.m. flight, but his alarm didn't go off.
 a) started b) admitted c) intended d) seemed

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
astronomer (n)	عالم فلك	dense (adj)	كثيف / مُركّز
bend (v)	ينحني / يلوى	galaxy (n)	مجرة
compressed (adj)	مضغوط	gravity (n)	جاذبية
cosmic (adj)	كوني	Milky Way (n)	مجرة درب التبانة
cosmos (n)	نظام الكون	reputation (n)	سمعة
		shadow (n)	ظل
		singularity (n)	المتفرد (نقطة سحق المواد داخل الثقب الأسود)
		theory (n)	نظرية
		universe (n)	الكون

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts		مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع	
accept (v) (ed)	يقبل	force (n) (v) (d)	قوة / يجبر
agency (n)	وكالة	form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل / يشكل
alien (n)	كائن فضائي	fuel (n)	وقود
assumptions (n)	افتراضات	funding (n)	تمويل
calculations (n)	حسابات	gravitational (adj)	خاص بالجاذبية
capture (v) (d)	يأسر / يمسك / يلتقط	guesses (n)	تخمينات
claim (n) (v) (ed)	ادعاء / فرض علمي / يدعى	hopeful (adj)	متفائل
clue (n)	دليل / مفتاح حل	infinite density (n)	كثافة لانهاية
collapse (n) (v) (d)	انهيار / ينهار	inspire (v) (d)	يلهم / يحث
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوي على	launch (v) (ed)	يطلق
crime (n)	جريمة	lie (v) (d)	يقع / يكمن / يكذب
crush (v) (ed)	يسحق	mass (n)	كتلة
detective (n)	محقق	matter (n)	مادة
dust (n)	غبار	misleading (adj)	مضلل
evidence (n)	دليل	mission (n)	مهمة / بعثة
evolve (v) (d)	ينشأ / يتطور	NASA (n)	ناسا (وكالة الفضاء الامريكية)
fact (n)	حقيقة	object (n) (v) (ed)	جسم / يعترض
fearsome (adj)	مرعب	observe (v) (d)	يلاحظ / يراقب
float (v) (ed)	يطفو	pause (n) (v) (d)	صمت / يصمت / يتوقف
		poet (n)	شاعر
		poetry (n)	شعر
		portal (n)	بوابة
		postpone (v) (d)	يؤجل
		predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ
		proof (n)	برهان
		quantum physics (n)	فيزياء الكم
		Red Herrings (n)	أدلة مضللة
		reveal (v) (ed)	يكشف
		satellite (n)	قمر صناعي
		solar system (n)	النظام الشمسي
		spacewalk (n)	سير في الفضاء
		spiral (n)	شكل حلزوني (ملتوي)
		stellar (adj)	نجمي
		suck up (v)	يتمص
		supermassive (adj)	فائق الكتلة
		suspect (n) (v) (ed)	مشتببه به / يشتبه بـ
		unproven (adj)	غير مثبت

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The road signs warn drivers that the road sharply ahead, so they must slow down.
a) develops b) orbits c) bends d) pauses
- The Amazon Rainforest is so that sunlight barely reaches the forest floor.
a) spiral b) dense c) bent d) massive
- The businessman built a strong for honesty and hard work throughout his career.
a) business b) activity c) movement d) reputation
- During the eclipse, the moon's fell over a large part of the Earth.
a) shadow b) density c) surface d) brightness
- The old bridge began to after years of neglect and heavy traffic.
a) shine b) collapse c) evolve d) construct
- Even in difficult times, our team remained and believed we could win the League.
a) doubtful b) shiny c) hopeful d) nervous
- The new architect spoke about the project without a for nearly twenty minutes straight.
a) pause b) rotation c) clue d) debate
- GPS navigation systems rely on signals from orbiting the Earth to show routes.
a) flights b) planets c) asteroids d) satellites

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعابير والمصطلحات

at the same time في نفس الوقت	capture the first photograph يلتقط الصورة الأولى	reach the end of their lives تصل إلى نهاية عمرها
(be) at risk يكون في خطر/معرض للخطر	have strong gravitational pull يتمتع بقوة جاذبية شديدة	sit at the center of توجد في مركز
(be) built on facts مبنى على حقائق	portals to other worlds بوابات إلى عوالم أخرى	the point of no return نقطة اللاعودة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

fascinated by منبهرب	formed from مُكون من	pull down يسحب للأسفل
float into يطفو نحو	funding for تمويل لـ	run out of يستنفد

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
assume يفترض	assumption	assumed مفترض assumable قابل للافتراض
calculate يحسب	calculation	calculated محسوب calculable قابل للحساب
compress يضغط	compression compressor	compressed مضغوط
crush يسحق	crush	crushing ساحق

evolve	يتطور	evolution	تطور	evolutionary	تطوري
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring/inspired	مُلهم/مُلهم
mislead	يضل	misleading	تضليل	misleading	مُضلل/مُضلل
observe	يلاحظ	observation	ملاحظة	observant	ملاحظ
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	متوقع
prove	يثبت	proof	دليل	proven unproven	مُثبت غير مُثبت
reveal	يكشف	revelation	كشف/وحي	revealing	كاشف
suspect	يشك/يشتهبه بـ	suspect	مشتهبه به	suspicious suspected	مريب/شكاك مشتهبه به

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Great teachers **inspire** their students to achieve their dreams. (v)
- The poet found **inspiration** in nature and the changing seasons. (n)
- She is an **inspiring** leader who motivates her team to excel. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
collapse	انهيار	fall/breakdown		stability/endurance	استقرار/متانة
compressed	مضغوط	compact/squeezed		expanded/enlarged	موسع/ممتد
dense	كثيف	thick/heavy		sparse/thin	متناثر/رقيق
evolve	يتطور	develop/progress		decline/deteriorate	تدهور/تراجع
fearsome	مرعب	frightening/terrifying		reassuring/comforting	مطمئن/مريح
hopeful	متفائل	optimistic/encouraging		pessimistic/hopeless	متشائم/يائس
inspire	يلهم	motivate/encourage		discourage/demotivate	يثبط الهمة/يحبط
launch	يطلق	start/introduce		terminate/cancel	ينهي/يلغى
misleading	مضل	deceptive/false		accurate/truthful	دقيق/صادق
observe	يراقب	notice/perceive		overlook/ignore	يتجاهل/يغض الطرف
portal	بوابة	gateway/entrance		exit/outlet	مخرج/منفذ
postpone	يؤجل	delay/defer		advance/hasten	يعجل/يسرع
reveal	يكشف	expose/show		conceal/hide	يخفي/يكتُم
unproven	غير مثبت	unverified/uncertain		proven/verified	مثبت/مؤكد

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Black holes are so powerful that nothing can escape once it crosses the
 - solar system
 - event horizon
 - Milky Way
 - cosmic dust
- Most black holes are formed when massive stars at the end of their lives.
 - grow larger
 - disappear suddenly
 - collapse under their own gravity
 - cool down slowly
- Supermassive black holes are found at the of most galaxies, including the Milky Way.
 - center
 - edge
 - surface
 - orbit
- In 2019, scientists captured the first photograph of a black hole's, proving many theories about them.
 - light
 - orbit
 - explosion
 - shadow

Listening Text



Universe's Mysteries

Good evening, listeners. Today we're talking about the way scientists think and work when studying the universe. Scientists often refuse to guess without **evidence**⁽¹⁾. They believe that every claim should be tested carefully.

At the same time, many people enjoy imagining black holes as **portals**⁽²⁾ to other worlds, even if there is no proof. Astronomers are very hopeful. They want to reveal new discoveries soon, and their research may change how we see the universe.

However, experts usually avoid making unproven **theories**⁽³⁾ because science is built on facts not guesses. NASA also makes big plans. The **agency**⁽⁴⁾ plans to launch new space telescopes next year. Astronomers enjoy discovering new planets, and the work never stops. Sometimes a scientist may pause. For example, she might stop to check her calculations. Others remember reading about the first moon landing and feel inspired.

Big decisions are always made. Teams often decide to postpone **missions**⁽⁵⁾ when safety is at risk, and teachers tell students that we should avoid making assumptions about **alien**⁽⁶⁾ life until we have real evidence. So, science is not only about learning facts, but also about choosing carefully between acting and not acting.



- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| (1) دليل | (2) بوابات |
| (3) نظريات | (4) وكالة |
| (5) مهمات | (6) كائن فضائي |

Definitions

التعريفات

universe	الكون	everything that exists - space, time, matter, and energy
singularity	المفرد	the point in a black hole where matter is crushed to infinite density
gravity	جاذبية	the force that pulls objects toward each other, like Earth pulling us down
galaxy	مجرة	a huge system of stars, gas, and dust held together by gravity
Milky Way	مجرة درب التبانة	the galaxy that contains our solar system
cosmic	الكون	another word for the universe, often used in poetry or science

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	detective/investigator مُحَقِّق (يجمع الأدلة لحل لغز مثل الجرائم والكشف عن الحقائق)	- The famous detective solved the mystery using only a small piece of evidence. - The investigator carefully examined the crime scene for any hidden clues.
	inspector مُفَقِّش (يفحص للتأكد من تطبيق القوانين والمعايير)	- The inspector checked all the safety equipment before the train left the station. - The school inspector came to observe how the teachers were doing their work.
2	evidence دليل (حقائق أو علامات تظهر وجود أو صدق شيء بوضوح)	Scientists are hoping to find evidence that there was once life on Mars. There was not enough evidence to convict him of murder.
	symptom عرض (علامة على وجود مرض أو مشكلة) خطيرة	لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (sign) أو (indicator) بهذا المعنى Some of the symptoms of the flu are tiredness and muscle pains.
3	astronomer عالم فلك	Astronomers all over the world will be observing the solar eclipse.
	astronaut رائد فضاء	Inside a spacecraft, astronauts float weightless, hardly in contact with the floor.
	astrologer منجم / مشعوذ	Some people believe what astrologers tell them about their future.
4	reputation سمعة (رأى عن شخص أو شركة مثلا بسبب الماضي)	The restaurant has an excellent reputation and attracts many customers.
	stereotype صورة نمطية (رأى غالبا غير صحيح)	The new movie defies the stereotype of women as passive victims.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is the point in a black hole where matter is crushed to infinite density
 a) Galaxy b) Singularity c) Shadow d) Orbit
- is the galaxy that contains our solar system.
 a) Milky Way b) Andromeda c) Earth d) Cosmic
- The trained for months to prepare for their mission to the moon.
 a) archaeologists b) astronomers c) astrologers d) astronauts
- The patient reported a strange, dizziness after taking the medicine.
 a) symptom b) signal c) evidence d) note
- The restaurant's for excellent service attracts customers from all over the city.
 a) fair b) reputation c) stereotype d) view
- A health visited the restaurant to make sure it was clean and safe.
 a) officer b) inspector c) detective d) designer

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Natural gas is into small tanks to make it easier to transport on ships.
a) evolved b) compressed c) collapsed d) predicted
2. The telescope captured stunning images of dust clouds forming new stars.
a) national b) theoretical c) cosmic d) solar
3. Einstein's of relativity changed the way scientists understand time and space.
a) rule b) law c) opinion d) theory
4. The space agency plans to a new weather satellite from South America next month.
a) catch b) launch c) bend d) evolve
5. The telescope was able to an image of a distant galaxy because of its strong lenses.
a) destroy b) ignore c) capture d) launch
6. The vacuum cleaner can easily dust and dirt from the carpet.
a) spread b) intensify c) lie d) suck up
7. The mall security guards tirelessly the monitors for any suspicious activity.
a) compress b) observe c) launch d) prove
8. The volcano's power destroyed everything in its path when it erupted last month.
a) theoretical b) compressed c) fearsome d) fabulous
9. The company's that their product is the best has not been proven yet.
a) claim b) law c) design d) experiment
10. To fight pollution, hydrogen is considered a clean for future vehicles.
a) clue b) fuel c) claim d) proof
11. Due to bad weather, the famous band had to the outdoor concert until next week.
a) observe b) reveal c) postpone d) organize
12. The artist will his new masterpiece at the gallery opening tonight.
a) rely b) improve c) compress d) reveal
13. The astronauts completed their space successfully and returned to Earth safely.
a) intention b) experience c) mission d) invention
14. The powerful machine can large stones into small pieces to use them in construction.
a) collect b) crush c) build d) lift
15. The rate has decreased significantly since new security measures were introduced.
a) crime b) observation c) assumption d) claim
16. The witness was accused of giving a description that confused the police.
a) clear b) proven c) misleading d) spiral
17. During the, the astronaut repaired a part of the International Space Station.
a) launch b) spacewalk c) orbit d) gravity
18. Experts warn against relying on health advice from the internet or AI applications.
a) fearsome b) cosmic c) global d) unproven
19. Technology continues to rapidly, changing how people live and work.
a) evolve b) bend c) suspect d) vanish
20. Helium balloons in the air because helium is lighter than air.
a) collapse b) observe c) float d) raise

21. Scientists believe that a singularity has density compressed into a point.
 a) unproven b) fearsome c) cosmic d) infinite
22. The research project was delayed because there wasn't enough to continue.
 a) restriction b) funding c) evidence d) matter
23. Gravity is the that keeps planets in the solar system orbiting around the Sun.
 a) force b) energy c) form d) quantum
24. The expert accountant's revealed an error in the financial report that the company presented.
 a) tasks b) subjects c) calculations d) lies
25. Some local and small restaurants don't credit cards; they only take cash.
 a) regard b) accept c) detect d) shape
26. The Sun has a much greater than all the planets combined.
 a) light b) matter c) surface d) mass
27. In many science fiction stories, a allows people to travel instantly to another world.
 a) tunnel b) drill c) portal d) signal
28. Earth is the only known planet in the that supports life.
 a) event horizon b) solar system c) black hole d) moon orbit
29. The museum one of the largest art collections in the world.
 a) contains b) encloses c) consists d) circles
30. The puzzle was difficult because there were no to help solve it.
 a) detectives b) clues c) forces d) workers

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

31. The fireworks exploded at the time in the sky, making a beautiful display for the crowd.
 a) late b) different c) same d) early
32. It is a known fact that scientific theories must, not speculation or guesses.
 a) be built on facts b) reach the end c) be at risk d) have strong pull
33. The government approved funding the new hospital construction in the small town.
 a) with b) for c) in d) at
34. Gravity tends to pull objects toward the center of the Earth.
 a) aside b) up c) out d) down
35. Once we sign the contract, we'll reach the of no return and can't back out.
 a) goal b) view c) point d) score
36. Old satellites eventually the end of their lives and burn up in the atmosphere.
 a) arrive b) reach c) leave d) delay
37. The map was misleading, and it led us to a dead end instead of the scenic viewpoint.
 The adjective "misleading" is similar in meaning to
 a) deceptive b) sparse c) thick d) truthful
38. The country is trying to prevent an economic collapse. The antonym of the noun "collapse" is ".....".
 a) breakdown b) curiosity c) assumption d) endurance
39. The fog was too dense to drive safely. The synonym of the adjective "dense" is ".....".
 a) released b) thick c) claimed d) sparse
40. Despite the challenges, she remained hopeful about finding a job. The opposite of the adjective "hopeful" is ".....".
 a) encouraging b) enlarged c) terrifying d) pessimistic

B Language

The gerund (verb + -ing) or the infinitive

EXTRA POINTS

بعض النقاط الإضافية الهامة

1 When "to" is part of an expression, it is often followed by the -ing form

عندما تكون **to** جزءًا من تعبير وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها **v.ing** هنا تعتبر **to** حرف ومن أمثلة ذلك هذه التعبيرات والأفعال:

look forward to	يتطلع إلى	own up to/admit to	يعترف بـ
object to	يعترض على	take to	يعتاد على
(be) (get) used to	يعتاد على	(be) accustomed to	يعتاد على
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	lead to	يؤدي إلى
contribute to	يساهم في	confess to	يعترف بـ
devoted to	مخلص لـ/يكرس الجهد لـ	prefer ... to ...	يفضل.....على...

لاحظ بعد **prefer** نستخدم **gerund (v. ing)** أو الاسم وبعد **to** أيضًا.

- I look forward to/am used to spending the holidays in Sharm.

2 Some expressions are followed by the -ing form

نستخدم **(v + ing)** بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الآتية:

(be) busy	مشغول في	have difficulty in	لديه صعوبة في
(be) worth	يستحق	can't help	لا يستطيع منع
It's no good	لا فائدة من	can't stand	لا يتحمل
It's no use	لا فائدة من	feel like	أشعر برغبة في
How/What about	وماذا عن؟ (اقتراح)	put off	يؤجل
What's the use of	ما فائدة؟	There is no point in	لا جدوى من الجدل

- It's no good/no use wasting time.
- I feel like/can't help eating sweets.

3 We use the infinitive without (to) with the following expressions and verbs

1 نستخدم المصدر بدون **(to)** بعد التعبيرات والأفعال الآتية:

had better	ينبغي	would rather	من الأفضل	let	يسمح
make	يجعل	help/know (+ inf. or to + inf.)			

- The thieves made the man empty his pocket.
- Mona'd better take the umbrella with her in case it rains.

إذا جاء فاعل بعد **d rather** نستخدم أما الماضي البسيط أو التام البسيط إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن المضارع والتام إذا كانت تعبر عن الماضي.

- I'd rather Ali (he) went to bed early.
- I'd rather Ali (he) had gone to bed early yesterday.

2 نستخدم المصدر فقط أيضا بعد الآتي:

١- بعد **modal verbs** مثل **can/will/must etc.**

- You can leave now if you want.

٢- بعد الفعلين **suggest/recommend** إذا كان بعدهما فاعل (أى فاعل)

- He suggested that she help the children with their homework.

4 go on

go on + v.ing

يستمر في عمل شيء.

go on + to + inf.

يستمر في عمل شيء بعد الانتهاء من شيء آخر.

- She went **on talking** for hours.
- After finishing the report, she went **on to type** some letters.

5 mean

mean + v.ing

يشمل/ يضم.

mean + to + inf.

ينوي/ يهدف إلى.

- Finding a job means **attending** many interviews.
- He means **to find** a job abroad.

6 need

need + v.ing

يأتي قبلها المفعول ومعناها يريد أن يفعل شيئاً.

need + to + inf.

يحتاج إلى...

- My shoes are quite dull. They need **polishing** (to be polished).
- My shoes are quite dull. I need **to polish** them.

7 see/hear/listen/watch

see/hear/watch + v.ing

يسمع أو يرى جزءاً من الشيء.

see/hear/watch + inf.

يسمع أو يرى الشيء كله.

- I watched my father **painting** the living room. رأيت والدي يدهن الحجره (جزء من الحدث)
- I watched my father **paint** the living room. رأيت والدي يدهن الحجره من البداية إلى النهاية

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Do you feel like a movie tonight?
 a) watching b) to watching c) to watch d) watch
- Good communication contributes strong relationships.
 a) building b) to build c) to building d) build
- I'm sorry I didn't mean you.
 a) hurting b) to hurt c) to be hurt d) hurt
- I am not used a suit and tie every day.
 a) to wear b) having worn c) to wearing d) to have worn
- I'm looking forward to more on this project.
 a) be done b) do c) did d) doing

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. My parents made me to study for the exam last night. (.....)
2. I'd rather staying at home. I'm exhausted. (.....)
3. I don't let my students to cheat during exams. (.....)
4. I prefer going out to stay at home doing nothing. (.....)
5. After finishing his degree, he went on studying medicine. (.....)

Important Notes

- 1 استخدم **v.ing** كفاعل أول الكلام ويعد فعل الجملة الأساسى ويكون الفعل مفردًا.
 ▶ **Planting** trees is something useful for the environment.
 ▶ **Reading** books gives us much knowledge.
- 2 استخدم **v.ing** كاسم فاعل وليس بعده فعل فى جملته التى تم حذف أداة الربط منها.
 ▶ **Looking** out of the window, I saw an exotic bird.
 ناظرًا من النافذة، (ناظر على وزن فاعل) وأصل الجملة
 ▶ While (When) I **was looking** out,
- 3 لاحظ أننا نستخدم (**not**) قبل (**verb + -ing**) أو (**to + infinitive**) عند النفى:
 ▶ I regret **not warning** him about the drop in the road. He fell off the bike.
 ▶ They decided **not to buy** this house. It's old fashioned.
- 4 الأفعال **advise/permit/allow/forbid** يأتى بعدها **v.ing** إذا لم يأت بعدهم مفعول:
 ▶ My teacher advised **taking** a course during the summer vacation.
- 5 يأتى **v.ing** بعد حروف الجر ماعدا **to** التى يأتى بعدها المصدر:
 ▶ He left the shop **without paying**, so he was accused of stealing.
- 6 يأتى **v.ing** بعد صفات الملكية ليحل محل الاسم مثل:
 ▶ During **his working** on the garden, he found the wallet he had lost a month before.
- 7 نستخدم **to + inf.** مع أدوات الربط الخاصة بالهدف والغرض:
 لى **to/so as to/in order to**
 ▶ I study hard **to/in order to get** good marks.
- 8 نستخدم **to + inf.** بعد كلمة **only** والتعابير **it's the first/second/last, etc.** وصفات التفضيل:
 ▶ Ahmed was **the last one to arrive** at the party.
 ▶ He called me **only to say** that he would be late.
- 9 نستخدم (**to + inf.**) بعد **'d like/'d love/'d prefer**:
 ▶ I'd **love to go** for a walk.
- 10 نستخدم (**to + inf.**) بعد الصفات الدالة على المشاعر والعواطف:
 (**happy, glad, sorry, surprised** etc.).
 ▶ She was **sorry to miss** the conference.
- 11 نستخدم (**to + inf.**) بعد **too/enough**:
 ▶ He's **too shy to meet** the strangers.
 ▶ He's **clever enough to pass** the test.

ملاحظات هامة تتعلق بالمبنى للمجهول

1 نحن نعلم أن المبنى للمجهول به شرطان أساسيان بعد البداية بالمفعول وهم **v. to be + P.P.** وفي هذه الحالة فنحن نستخدم **v. to be** على شكل الفعل فإذا كان الفعل **gerund** نستخدم **being** وإذا كان مصدر نستخدم **be** وإذا كان **to + inf.** نستخدم **to be** مثل:

- ▶ I avoid **meeting** bad people.
- ▶ I remember my father **buying** me a bike.
- ▶ I'd like Ahmed **to meet** me at the airport.
- ▶ He lets people **deceive** him.
- ▶ I avoid **being met** by bad people.
- ▶ I remember **being bought** a bike by my father.
- ▶ I'd like **to be met** at the airport.
- ▶ He lets himself **be deceived**.

2 الفعل **make** بعده مصدر في المعلوم ولكن في المبنى للمجهول بعده **to + inf.**

- ▶ My mother **made** me **clean** and tidy my room.
- ▶ I **was made to clean** and tidy my room.

3 الأفعال **see/hear/listen/watch** إذا جاء بعدها المصدر للحدث كله نستخدم **to + inf.** في المجهول أما إذا جاء **gerund** فلا نستخدم **to** ونستخدم الـ **gerund** مثل:

- ▶ We **saw** the children **play** in the park.
- ▶ The children **were seen to play** in the park.
- ▶ We saw the children **playing** in the park.
- ▶ The children **were seen playing** in the park.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students should follow the rules to avoid
 a) punish b) punishing c) being punished d) to punish
2. I study English, because a foreign language is very important.
 a) speaking b) speak c) spoke d) having spoken
3. The easiest thing is to start again.
 a) being done b) to do c) done d) to have done
4. The doctor advised eating junk food.
 a) to avoid b) avoid c) avoiding d) avoided
5. busy, she couldn't participate in the contest.
 a) Was b) To be c) Been d) Being

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The manager made the staff stay late. (to stay)

2. Our doctor advised us to do exercise daily. (exercising)

3. Mohamed Salah wants to be chosen as the best player in the world. (look forward to)

4. She regrets missing the important conference. (sorry)

5. When he felt tired, he went back home. (Feeling)

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Samia admitted to her sister's dress without asking.
a) wear b) wore c) have worn d) wearing
2. It's no use to him. He's asleep.
a) talk b) talking c) to talk d) having talked
3. I'd like something inspiring for our project.
a) being done b) doing c) to do d) do
4. I asked my father to let me the match at the stadium.
a) watch b) to watch c) watching d) to watching
5. She can't get used to for such a large company.
a) work b) working c) being work d) worked
6. Would you please this case into the boot of the car?
a) help lift b) help to lifting c) help me lifting d) to help lift
7. He advised an automatic car instead of my used Fiat.
a) to be bought b) to buy c) buying d) to buying
8. After talking about the accident, he went on about the match.
a) talks b) to talking c) talking d) to talk
9. I spent a lot of time a birthday cake for him.
a) to making b) make c) to make d) making
10. There is no point in with her. She is narrow-minded.
a) to argue b) arguing c) argued d) to have argued
11. How about our teacher about the best way to study English?
a) asking b) ask c) to ask d) to asking
12. He insisted on paid for every minute he had worked.
a) be b) to be c) being d) been
13. We need to change. We can't go on like this.
a) live b) lived c) to live d) living
14. ill, my father could not attend his old friend's funeral.
a) To be b) Being c) For being d) To have been
15. I saw him to a taxi driver, looking quite distressed and very serious.
a) speaking b) spoke c) speak d) to speak
16. I'd rather in tonight since it looks like it's going to rain.
a) stayed b) to stay c) stay d) staying
17. Do you object to at all, or only in certain situations?
a) have smoked b) be smoked c) smoke d) smoking
18. about his problem, I finally understood the whole situation.
a) Hearing b) Heard c) To hear d) To be heard

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. are constantly searching for planets that may support human life near the Earth.
a) Astrologers b) Astronomers c) Archaeologists d) Psychologists
2. After the young player's fall, she complains that she can't her knee properly.
a) break b) force c) bend d) inspect
3. Bamboo forests are incredibly, with plants growing very close together.
a) fearsome b) integrated c) optimistic d) dense
4. The tall building cast a long that covered most of the playground.
a) shadow b) gateway c) view d) form
5. Many scientists believe the began with a massive explosion billions of years ago.
a) verse b) universe c) star d) planet
6. Wordsworth, the great English, wrote beautiful verses about nature and love.
a) poet b) composer c) architect d) detective
7. Weather experts use digital satellite pictures to future storms and rainfall.
a) delay b) record c) predict d) design
8. The Moon's pull causes the tides to rise and fall on Earth.
a) chemical b) electrical c) magnetic d) gravitational
9. In the science lesson, the teacher explained that atoms are the basic building blocks of any
a) shadow b) matter c) power d) gravity
10. To solve crimes, a good must be patient and pay attention to every small detail.
a) inspector b) actor c) detective d) reporter
11. *Independence Day* is a movie that showed invading Earth in giant spaceships.
a) galaxies b) shadows c) passengers d) aliens
12. The farmers to plans to widen the highway, as it will affect their land.
a) admitted b) rejoiced c) objected d) relieved
13. Scientists must base their conclusions on, not speculation, assumptions, or guesses.
a) fictions b) facts c) myths d) impressions
14. Physicists proved that any object had a gravitational pull strong enough to affect nearby stars.
a) supermassive b) alien c) imaginary d) investigated
15. The police arrested a who was seen near the bank just before the robbery.
a) visitor b) suspect c) neighbor d) customer
16. NASA is the space responsible for America's space exploration programs.
a) cosmos b) identity c) agency d) charity
17. From space, our galaxy looks like a huge of stars and gas.
a) circle b) triangle c) line d) spiral
18. You can press the spacebar to and resume the music playback.
a) capture b) pause c) matter d) form
19. The wildlife photographer spent months trying to the first photograph of the rare bird.
a) pull b) reach c) paint d) capture
20. The magician refused to reveal the secret behind his trick. The noun of the verb "reveal" is ".....".
a) reveals b) revelation c) revealed d) revealingly

Language

21. I couldn't help at Faten's joke.
 a) laughed b) to laugh c) at laughing d) laughing
22. It's no good to fix this machine. It's completely broken.
 a) try b) to try c) trying d) to trying
23. She is afraid of the dentist, so she always puts off till the last possible moment.
 a) to go b) going c) gone d) go
24. My father is too busy his relatives every week.
 a) to visit b) visiting c) visit d) visits
25. It was a mistake the door unlocked.
 a) to leave b) leaving c) to leaving d) left
26. I would love in London, but it is too expensive.
 a) live b) to live c) living d) to living
27. I'm angry with her for me the truth.
 a) not to have told b) not having been told
 c) telling d) not telling
28. Ibrahim was the first one at the office.
 a) arrives b) to arrive c) to arriving d) arrived
29. There will be a crisis if nothing is done inflation.
 a) for controlling b) to be controlled c) to control d) control
30. You should always check your tires before your car.
 a) driving b) you drove c) drive d) you're driving
31. Reem seemed in a hurry. She left without goodbye.
 a) to say b) said c) having said d) saying
32. Jana's father approved of in England for another year in order to improve her English.
 a) her to stay b) her staying c) she will stay d) she to stay
33. The doctor advised in bed for a week.
 a) stay b) to staying c) staying d) to stay
34. Mr. Adel is very busy writing his memoirs. He is too busy any calls.
 a) to receive b) receiving c) received d) to receiving
35. It is very pleasant in the river on hot days in the summers.
 a) swim b) swum c) swam d) to swim
36. I'm annoyed about your to phone me yesterday.
 a) forget b) forgetting
 c) to forget d) to have forgotten
37. He can't stand what to do.
 a) to tell b) telling c) to telling d) being told
38. His eyes need before he can safely renew his driver's license.
 a) testing b) be tested
 c) to test d) to have been tested
39. He's the second man in this way.
 a) killing b) to be killed c) to kill d) having killed
40. The new Grand Egyptian Museum is worth
 a) to visit b) to be visited c) visiting d) visit



Writing Skill

Writing tips

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

A Mystery Story

A **Mystery Story** is a short tale about a puzzle or crime that needs to be solved—like a missing object, a secret message, or a strange event. The main character (the detective) follows clues to find the answer.

– القصة الغامضة قصة قصيرة تدور حول لغز أو جريمة تحتاج إلى حل — مثل شيء مفقود، رسالة سرية، أو حدث غريب. الشخصية الرئيسية (المحقق) تتبع الأدلة لتجد الإجابة.

Writing a mystery story is a fun and creative process that involves crafting suspense, building tension, and keeping your readers guessing until the very end.

– كتابة قصة غموض هي عملية ممتعة ومبدعة تتطلب خلق التشويق، بناء التوتر، وجعل القراء في حالة ترقب وتخمين حتى النهاية.

A **step-by-step guide to help you write a compelling mystery story:**

1. Think of a Mystery - Start with the Central Mystery

Decide what the mystery is. It's usually a **crime, disappearance, or puzzling event.**

– حدد ما هو اللغز. عادةً ما يكون جريمة، اختفاء، أو حدث محير.

- **Start with a question:**

What happened?

Who is involved?

Why is it mysterious?

Example:

A priceless painting is stolen from a museum with no signs of forced entry.

2. Create a Detective

Your main character should be someone who is curious, clever, and determined to solve the case.

– يجب أن تكون شخصيتك الرئيسية شخصًا فضوليًا، ذكيًا، ومصممًا على حل القضية.

3. Add the Clues and Red Herrings

A good mystery provides **clues** that help the reader solve the puzzle (e.g., a muddy footprint, a note), but also includes **red herrings** (false clues) to keep them guessing (e.g., a suspect who looks guilty but didn't do it).

– القصة الغامضة الجيدة تقدم أدلة تساعد القارئ على حل اللغز (مثل أثر قدم موحلة، أو ملاحظة)، لكنها تحتوي أيضًا على "مشتمتات" (أدلة كاذبة) لتبقى القارئ في حالة تخمين، مثل مشتبه به يبدو مذنبًا لكنه لم يرتكب الجريمة.

4. Develop Your Suspects

Include several believable suspects with possible motives and opportunities. Each one should seem like they **could** be guilty.

– ضمّن عدة مشتبه بهم مقنعين، لكل منهم دوافع وفرص محتملة. يجب أن يبدو كل واحد منهم وكأنه قد يكون الجاني.

5. Build Suspense and Tension

Mystery stories thrive on suspense. Keep the reader on edge by revealing new information gradually and ending scenes or chapters with questions or cliffhangers.

– قصص الغموض تزدهر على الإثارة والتشويق. حافظ على توتر القارئ من خلال كشف المعلومات تدريجيًا وإنهاء المشاهد أو الفصول بأسئلة أو نهايات مفتوحة تجعل القارئ متشوقًا لمعرفة المزيد.

6. Reveal the Solution Satisfyingly

The ending should tie up loose ends and explain all the clues. The solution must feel **earned** — the reader should be able to look back and see how everything fits.

– يجب أن يكون النهاية مرتبطة بجميع الخيوط المبعثرة وتوضح كل الأدلة. يجب أن يكون الحل منطقيًا ومكتسبًا — بحيث يستطيع القارئ أن ينظر إلى الوراء ويرى كيف تتناسب كل الأمور معًا.

MODEL MYSTERY STORY

The Case of the Missing Paintbrush

Activity	Content/Step
<p>Activity 1: Create a Mystery Box</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ During art class, the teacher's favorite paintbrush went missing. ▶ Only three students stayed late: Mai, Maha, and Manar. ▶ Later, the brush was found under a chair, still wet with blue paint. But ... no one was using blue. <p>Who took it?</p>
<p>Activity 2: Who's the Detective?</p>	<p>Name : Detective Noura</p> <p>Personality : Smart and observant</p> <p>Tool : A notebook and a small magnifying glass</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Detective Noura was called to solve the case. She interviewed the three students and carefully looked around the art room.
<p>Activity 3: Clue Hunt!</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A small drop of blue paint was on Manar's skirt. 2. Manar had asked for blue paint earlier, but quickly returned it. 3. The brush was under the exact chair where Manar was sitting. <p>Misleading Clue:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Mai was holding a similar paintbrush, but it was her own and completely clean.
<p>Activity 4: Finish the Story</p>	<p>Story Start:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ During art class, the teacher's favorite paintbrush went missing. ▶ Only three students stayed late: Mai, Maha, and Manar. ▶ The brush was found under a chair, still wet with blue paint. ▶ But no one was using blue ... Who took it? <p>What really happened?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Manar accidentally dropped the paintbrush while cleaning her area. She used blue paint earlier to fix a mistake, but quickly switched to red when the teacher wasn't looking. She didn't return the brush properly, and it rolled under a chair.
<p>The Solution:</p>	<p>How did Detective Noura solve it?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Detective Noura noticed a small drop of blue paint on Manar's skirt. ▶ She also remembered Manar asked for blue paint earlier, but returned it quickly. ▶ When Noura asked kindly, Manar admitted it — it was a mistake, not a theft.
<p>The Ending</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ The teacher smiled, happy to have the brush back, and reminded the class: "Always return brushes properly — even if you're in a hurry!"

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة
في قطع الفهم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The universe is huge and full of both things we understand and things that are still mysterious. Scientists like Newton and Einstein helped us understand a lot about the universe we can see, but some big things are still confusing.

One big puzzle is 'dark matter'. This is a substance we can't see at all, and it makes up about 85% of everything's mass in the universe. We only know it exists because of its gravity. It pulls on visible things, like galaxies, and helps them form. If dark matter wasn't there, our current ideas about how the universe is built wouldn't work.

Another mystery is 'dark energy'. This is a strange force that is pushing the universe to expand faster and faster. Scientists found this in the late 1990s. Dark energy makes up about 68% of the universe's total energy. This means that both dark matter and dark energy are much more common than the normal stuff we're made of! We still don't know what they actually are.

There are also questions about the 'Big Bang'. This theory explains how the universe started from a very small, hot point. But it doesn't explain what started the Big Bang or what was there before it. This leads to the biggest puzzle: finding a "theory of everything." This would be one single idea that brings together the physics of huge things (like planets) with the physics of tiny things (like atoms). Finding this theory would answer the deepest questions about space, time, and the universe's future. These important mysteries show us that we still have a long way to go in science.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What percentage of the universe's mass is made up of dark matter?
 - About 68%
 - About 85%
 - Less than 5%
 - Exactly 15%
- How do we know that dark matter exists?
 - We can see it with special telescopes.
 - Its light is very bright.
 - It moves galaxies with its gravity.
 - It only touches normal matter.
- When did scientists discover that the universe's expansion is getting faster?
 - In the late 1990s.
 - With the start of the Big Bang theory.
 - In the early 1900s.
 - When Newton was alive.
- The phrase "This theory" in the fourth paragraph refers to
 - the theory of dark matter
 - the theory of everything
 - the big bang theory
 - the physics of tiny things
- Which sentence best describes the second paragraph?
 - Dark matter is easy to see and touches normal matter.
 - The universe is built only by normal matter and light.
 - Dark matter is an invisible thing that uses gravity to shape the universe.
 - Scientists cannot yet fully agree on the fundamental nature and true mechanics of gravity.
- Which of the following statements is true according to the passage?
 - Dark energy is a force that slows down the universe's expansion.
 - We have already found the "theory of everything."
 - Dark matter and dark energy are less common than normal matter.
 - Dark energy is the force that makes the universe expand faster.
- What is the opposite of the underlined word "mysterious" in the first paragraph?
 - Large.
 - Expensive.
 - Obvious.
 - Unknown.
- What is the best title for this passage?
 - The History of Albert Einstein.
 - Gravity and Planets.
 - The Big Puzzles of the Universe.
 - How to Find Dark Energy.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Monday 5th June

I have always wished that I knew more about the moon, so I did a project about it at school.

The moon orbits the Earth every 27.3 days, so that is about once a month. However, we only see one side of it. That is because it takes about the same time for the moon to spin once as it takes for the moon to orbit the Earth. The side which we do not see is called "the dark side of the moon". However, like the Earth, both sides of the moon are illuminated by the sun at different times, so it is not dark all the time. We just can't see it. Like the sun, the moon rises in the east and sets in the west. A full moon is when we see the moon as a circle. This occurs when the moon is on the opposite side of the Earth to the sun. Scientists think that there is probably some water on the moon, but there are no clouds and there is no wind. The average temperature on the moon is 107 degrees centigrade in the day and -153 degrees centigrade at night. If the astronauts who visited the moon hadn't worn **spacesuits**, they would have died. The moon is usually about 385,000 kilometers from Earth, but its gravity makes our seas rise and fall twice a day.

I wish I could visit the moon! It is not very big. The surface of the moon is about the same size as Africa. I would like to see Mons Huygens, the moon's tallest mountain, which is half as high as Mount Everest. Gravity on the moon is only 17% as strong as it is on Earth. That means you can jump really high there!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Why is one side of the moon called "the dark side of the moon"?
 - It is always dark there.
 - It is never dark there.
 - We can't see it from Earth.
 - You can't see it from a spaceship.
- What do you think would be most dangerous about visiting the moon?
 - The temperature.
 - The gravity.
 - The height of the mountains.
 - The fact that it is dark.
- What kind of text is this?
 - A newspaper article.
 - A diary extract.
 - A novel.
 - A poem.
- What does the underlined word "That" refer to?
 - The fact that you can jump.
 - The fact that the moon's gravity is weaker.
 - The fact that the Earth's gravity is weak.
 - The fact that you are on the moon.
- What do you think **spacesuits** are?
 - Special clothes that astronauts wear.
 - Special helmets.
 - Special shoes.
 - Special hats.
- How long is the moon's orbit around the Earth?
 - Nearly a year.
 - Nearly a day.
 - About a week.
 - About a month.
- The text suggests that the moon is for human life.
 - not suitable
 - available
 - perfect
 - simple
- From the passage, the verb which means "to shine light on something" is
 - orbit
 - illuminate
 - rise
 - set

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Scientists study the planets using powerful telescopes and space missions. They hope to discover new information about life and other secrets of the universe.

- (a) يدرس العلماء الكواكب باستخدام تلسكوبات قوية ورحلات فضائية. وهم يأملون في اكتشاف معلومات جديدة عن الحياة ومعلومات أخرى في الكون.
 (b) يدرس العلماء الكواكب باستخدام تلسكوبات قوية ومهام فضائية. وهم يأملون في اكتشاف معلومات جديدة عن الحياة وأسرار أخرى في الكون.
 (c) يدرس العلماء النجوم باستخدام تلسكوبات قوية ومهام فضائية. وهم يأملون في دراسة معلومات جديدة عن الحياة وأسرار أخرى في الكون.
 (d) يدرس العلماء النباتات باستخدام تلسكوبات قوية ومهام فضائية. وهم يأملون في اكتشاف معلومات جديدة عن الحياة وأسرار أخرى في الكون.

2. A black hole forms when a massive star collapses after it explodes. Because of its strong gravity, we cannot see it directly, but scientists can detect its location by watching the movement of stars and gases around it.

- (a) يتكوّن الثقب الأسود عندما ينهار نجم ضخم بعد أن ينفجر. وبسبب جاذبيته القوية، لا يمكننا رؤيته بشكل مباشر، لكن العلماء يستطيعون معرفة مكانه من خلال مراقبة حركة النجوم والغازات حوله.
 (b) يتكوّن الثقب الأسود عندما ينهار نجم ضخم بعد أن ينفجر. وبسبب حرارته القوية، لا يمكننا رؤيته بشكل مباشر، لكن العلماء يستطيعون معرفة مكانه من خلال مراقبة اقتراب النجوم والغازات حوله.
 (c) يتكوّن الثقب الأسود عندما ينهار كوكب ضخم بعد أن ينفجر. وبسبب جاذبيته القوية، لا يمكننا رؤيته بشكل مباشر، لكن العلماء يستطيعون معرفة مكانه من خلال متابعة حركة النجوم والغازات حوله.
 (d) يتكوّن الفراغ الأسود عندما ينهار نجم ضخم بعد أن ينفجر. وبسبب جاذبيته القوية، لا يمكننا رؤيته بشكل مباشر، لكن العلماء يستطيعون معرفة تحركاته من خلال مراقبة حركة النجوم والغازات حوله.

3. Culture plays an important role in shaping the identity of individuals and communities, and it also contributes to enhancing understanding and communication among people positively.

- (a) تلعب الثقافة دورًا مهمًا في تشكيل هوية الأفراد والدول، كما تسهم أيضًا في تعزيز الفهم والتواصل بين الناس على نحو إيجابي.
 (b) تلعب الثقافة دورًا مهمًا في تشكيل هوية الأفراد والمجتمعات، كما تسهم أيضًا في توسيع الفهم والتواصل بين الناس على نحو سريع.
 (c) تلعب الثقافة دورًا مهمًا في تنمية هوية العائلات والمجتمعات، كما تسهم أيضًا في تعزيز الفهم والتواصل بين الناس على نحو إيجابي.
 (d) تلعب الثقافة دورًا مهمًا في تشكيل هوية الأفراد والمجتمعات، كما تسهم أيضًا في تعزيز الفهم والتواصل بين الناس على نحو إيجابي.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. يهتم علماء الفضاء بأسئلة كثيرة مثل: هل توجد حياة في كواكب أخرى؟ وهل يمكن للإنسان أن يعيش على كوكب غير الأرض؟ عملهم صعب لكنه مهم جدًا.

- a) Space scientists are interested in many questions such as: Is there life on other galaxies? And can humans live on another planet than Earth? Their work is difficult, but it is very important.
 b) Space scientists are interested in many questions such as: Is there living on other planets? And can humans live on a planet other than Earth? Their work is simple, but it is very important.
 c) Space scientists are interested in many questions such: Is there life on other planets? And can humans live on a planet other than Earth? Their work is different, but it is very important.
 d) Space scientists are interested in many questions such as: Is there life on other planets? And can humans live on a planet other than Earth? Their work is difficult, but it is very important.

5. يحظى قطاع ريادة الأعمال باهتمام خاص من قبل الحكومة المصرية والتي تحرص على تهيئة المناخ للشباب رواد الأعمال وتوفير التمويل اللازم لمشروعاتهم ومبادراتهم.

- a) The entrepreneurship division receives special attention from the Egyptian government, which is keen to create a climate for young entrepreneurs and provide the necessary funding for their projects and initiatives.
 b) The entrepreneurship sector receives special attention from the Egyptian government, which is keen to create a climate for young entrepreneurs and provide the necessary funding for their projects and initiatives.
 c) The entrepreneurship sector receives special attention from the Egyptian government, which is keen to create a climate for young entrepreneurs and provide the necessary consumption for their projects and initiatives.
 d) The entrepreneurship sector receives special attention from the Egyptian government, which is keen to create a climate for young entrepreneurs and provide the necessary funding for their projects and initiatives.

6. تعمل الدولة المصرية على رفع مستوى معيشة قاطنى العشوائيات من خلال التطويراجتماعيا وبيئيا واقتصاديا، والقضاء على الفوضى فى المناطق غير الآمنة.

- The Egyptian state is working to rise the height of living of slum residents through social, environmental and economic development, and to eliminate chaos in unsafe areas.
- The Egyptian state is working to rise the standard of living of slum expatriates through social, environmental and economic development, and to eliminate chaos in safe areas.
- The Egyptian state is working to raise the standard of living of slum dwellers through social, governmental and economical development, and to eliminate chaos in different areas.
- The Egyptian state is working to raise the standard of living of slum residents through social, environmental and economic development, and to eliminate chaos in unsafe areas.

(C) Writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Choose the correctly punctuated sentence from the options below:

- I was late for school this morning the bus was full and I had to walk.
- I was late for school this morning; the bus was full and I had to walk.
- I was late for school this morning! the bus was full and I had to walk.
- I was late for school this morning, the bus was full and I had to walk

2. Choose the correctly punctuated sentence from the options below:

- Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam because he, had prepared so well over the break.
- Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam because, he had prepared so well over the break.
- Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam, because he had prepared so well over the break.
- Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam because he had prepared so well over the break.

3. What is often the main problem in a mystery story?

- Solving some math problems.
- Solving a crime or uncovering a secret.
- Preparing a party for famous people.
- Learning a new skill and how to use it.

4. What feeling is the author trying to create in a mystery story?

- Excitement and suspense.
- Happiness and fun.
- Boredom and calm.
- Sadness and grief.

5. What should the reader do when reading a mystery story?

- Try to guess what happens next.
- Ignore the details.
- Skip the ending.
- Read only the first page.

6. Which type of essay would this topic sentence best go with?

"I will never forget my graduation day which was the most exciting day of my life."

- Persuasive.
- Expository.
- Descriptive.
- Narrative.

5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

Write an engaging introductory paragraph for a story titled: "A Crime Investigation"

Enrich your vocabulary

collapse	ينهار	distinguished	متميز	appreciation	تقدير
identity	الهوية	gravity	الجاذبية	estimate	يقدر
capture	يأسر	yield	نتاج / يترك وراءه		



Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box:

galaxy – cosmos – event horizon – Milky Way – singularity – universe – gravity

1. Scientists say the contains billions of stars, planets, and galaxies.
2. A black hole's is the point of no return; nothing can escape once it passes this boundary.
3. At the center of a black hole lies a where density becomes infinite.
4. Without, people and objects would float away into space.
5. Our Solar System is part of a large spiral of stars and planets.
6. The is the name of the galaxy that contains Earth.
7. Poets sometimes use the word instead of "universe" to describe the whole of existence.

Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scientists refuse without evidence.

a) to guess	b) guessed	c) to guessing	d) guess
-------------	------------	----------------	----------
2. Many people enjoy black holes as portals.

a) to imagine	b) imagining	c) to imagining	d) imagine
---------------	--------------	-----------------	------------
3. Astronomers hope new discoveries soon.

a) revealing	b) to reveal	c) to revealing	d) reveal
--------------	--------------	-----------------	-----------
4. Experts avoid unproven theories.

a) to make	b) making	c) to making	d) make
------------	-----------	--------------	---------

3 Choose the correct form (infinitive or gerund):

1. Scientists hope (to find/finding) evidence of life on Mars.
2. I suggest (to read/reading) more about quantum physics.
3. The astronaut refused (to comment/commenting) on the mission.
4. We practice (to use/using) the telescope every night.
5. They decided (to postpone/postponing) the spacewalk due to weather.
6. Do you mind (to explain/explaining) this theory again?
7. The researcher tends (to work/working) late when studying black holes.
8. I can't imagine (to live/living) on another planet.

4 Complete these sentences with the correct form, paying attention to meaning:

1. I (remember/set) my alarm last night. (I recall doing it)
2. Please (remember/set) your alarm tonight. (Don't forget)
3. The scientist (stop/work) at midnight. (quit the activity)
4. Leila (stop/listen) to the radio. (quit the activity)
5. Leila (stop/listen) to the radio. (paused)
6. Students should (try/understand) difficult concepts. (make an effort)

5 Complete this text about space exploration using the correct forms:

Dr. Amina enjoys (study) distant galaxies through powerful telescopes. She decided (specialize) in black hole research after (read) Stephen Hawking's work. "I remember (be) fascinated by space as a child," she says. Her team plans (launch) a new satellite next year. They hope (discover) more about dark matter. "We need (continue) (push) the boundaries of our knowledge," Dr. Amina explains. "I would suggest (support) more funding for space research." The team refuses (give up), even when experiments fail. "We practice (learn) from our mistakes," she adds. "Science means never (stop) (ask) questions about the universe."



1 Finish the following dialog:

Amir is hungry and wants to have lunch.

Amir : Hi, could you help me find a place where I could buy some food?

Passer-by : Sure! What (1).....?

Amir : I'm thinking of pizza or something else.

Passer-by : (2).....

Amir : Good! Where is it?

Passer-by : It's right past that building on the left. (3).....

Amir : That would be kind of you if you go with me.

Passer-by : This will be fun!

Amir : Is it expensive?

Passer-by : (4)..... . All people like it.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. My friend Osama gave me a promise to visit me. (promised)

.....

2. The man said it was true that he stole the wallet. (admitted)

.....

A Glimpse of Revelation

3 (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The book aims to cover all of city life.

- a) aspects b) pictures c) discoveries d) agencies

2. No one will be on the Day of Judgment.

- a) spared b) punished c) rewarded d) relayed

(B) Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think mentioning the function of mountains in the Qur'an is miraculous?
- What do the scientific ideas expressed in the Qur'an prove?

(C) Write [T] for true statements and [F] for false ones:

- The Qur'an discourages reverence for individual differences among people. []
- Human embryonic development stages have just been discovered recently. []

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Time is more precious than money as once money lost can be earned by any means however once time lost can never be earned by any means.
- Climbing dangerous mountains is like illegal immigration. In both of them, people risk their lives for a far-fetched goal.

(B) Translate into English:

- يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة.
- نعمل جميعًا على التغلب على مشاكلنا ونكون على قدم المساواة مع البلاد التي حققت نجاحات في العديد من المجالات.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED TWENTY (120) words on the following:

"An embarrassing experience that happened to you"

.....

.....

.....

.....

أولاً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجة واحدة»:

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Respect for personal is essential in any healthy relationship, especially friendship.
 - a) dimensions
 - b) curiosities
 - c) boundaries
 - d) mysteries
2. Virtual reality technology creates the illusion وهم of moving through different
 - a) visions
 - b) dimensions
 - c) memories
 - d) boundaries
3. The teacher corrected the students' about the Earth's rotation.
 - a) mission
 - b) confidence
 - c) inspection
 - d) misconception
4. Harvard University's as a leading research institution helps attract top students.
 - a) reputation
 - b) reflection
 - c) scenery
 - d) horizon
5. The of the black hole makes it impossible for anything, including light, to escape its gravitational pull.
 - a) misconception
 - b) singularity
 - c) foundation
 - d) diversity
6. All the information was compressed into a brief two-page summary. The antonym of the adjective "compressed" is ".....".
 - a) horizontal
 - b) mysterious
 - c) squeezed
 - d) expanded
7. A fantastic fountain at the center of the palace garden, surrounded by colorful flowers.
 - a) sits
 - b) behaves
 - c) relieves
 - d) damages
8. My cousin promised me when he returned from Spain.
 - a) visit
 - b) would visit
 - c) will visit
 - d) to visit
9. The lazy student admitted his homework at home.
 - a) to leave
 - b) left
 - c) leaving
 - d) leaves
10. She should avoid in traffic during rush hour.
 - a) being stuck
 - b) stuck
 - c) sticking
 - d) be stuck
11. Listen! I can hear someone at the door.
 - a) knock
 - b) knocked
 - c) knocking
 - d) to knock

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When the environment is mentioned, all people think of the planet's natural spaces. They mention all the living and non-living things that are present in their surroundings, including the trees, nature, parks, the air we breathe, animals and the water that covers most of the globe. However, nearly half of the world's population lives in cities and many residents want to live in more environmentally friendly places. Most big cities are overcrowded and there is a lot of air contamination from vehicles. In some cities, large groups of people living in very poor neighborhoods share **unforgiving** living conditions. In these districts, there are few opportunities for young people to find work and escape poverty, and this creates problems.

Apart from social problems, most cities are not sustainable and they have a negative impact on the environment around them. The growth of cities destroys the biodiversity of the local countryside and they use up all the resources. Fortunately, governments are now looking for alternative ways of developing cities. Some of them have had a measure of success and have persuaded residents to leave their cars at home and cycle or take public transport to work. But there is still a lot of work to do. Globally, governments must protect ecosystems key to the fight against climate change: rivers, wetlands, oceans, forests, and mangroves which absorb large quantities of carbon and slow warming. Mangroves also serve as a barrier against tropical storms. Will we see a world without pollution?

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

36. Experts say that through language, people preserve their community's history, customs, traditions, and unique modes of thinking. They also use it to construct their future.

- (a) يقول الخبراء إنه من خلال اللغة، يحافظ الناس على تاريخ مجتمعاتهم وزيهم وتقاليدهم وأنماط التفكير الفريدة والمعنى والتعبير. كما يستخدمونها لبناء مستقبلهم.
- (b) يقول الخبراء إنه من خلال اللغة، يحافظ الناس على تاريخ مجتمعاتهم واهتماماتهم وتقاليدهم وأنماط التفكير العادية كما يستخدمونها لبناء مستقبلهم.
- (c) يقول الخبراء إنه من خلال اللغة، يحافظ الناس على تاريخ مجتمعاتهم وعاداتهم وتقاليدهم وأنماط التفكير الفريدة كما يستخدمونها لبناء مستقبلهم.
- (d) يقول الخبراء إنه من خلال اللغة، يحافظ الناس على سجل مجتمعاتهم وعاداتهم وتقاليدهم وأنواع التفكير الفريدة كما يستخدمونها لتخطيط مستقبلهم.

37. Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The powerful substance in the plant cures the illness, while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects.

- (a) العلاجات الطبيعية تجذب اهتمامًا مناسبًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. المادة الفعالة في النبات تعالج المرض بينما تساعد محتويات كل النبات في الوقاية من أي آثار جانبية ضارة.
- (b) العلاجات الطبيعية تجذب اهتمامًا متزايدًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. المادة القوية في النبات تعالج المرض لأنها تساعد محتويات بقية النبات في الوقاية من أي آثار جانبية ضارة.
- (c) العلاجات الطبيعية ترتبط كاهتمام متزايد في جميع أنحاء العالم. المادة الفعالة في النبات تعالج المرض بينما تساعد محتويات بذور النبات في الوقاية من أي آثار جانبية ضارة.
- (d) العلاجات الطبيعية تجذب اهتمامًا متزايدًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. المادة الفعالة في النبات تعالج المرض بينما تساعد محتويات بقية النبات في الوقاية من أي آثار جانبية ضارة.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

38. تختلف أسباب السعادة من شخص لآخر، فالبعض يجدها في جمع المال، وآخرون يجدونها في مساعدة الآخرين والتغلب على لحظات الفشل.

- a) The reasons of happiness are different from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in competing others and gaining moments of failure.
- b) The reasons for happiness are different from one person to another, some imagine it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments sadness.
- c) The causes for happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in saving money and others find it in helping others and overcoming minutes of failure.
- d) The causes of happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

39. أحد أهم أهداف المناهج التعليمية الحديثة هو بناء مهارات التفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب من المرحلة الابتدائية حتى الجامعة.

- a) One of the most important goals of modern educational curricula is to build critical behavior skills among students from preparatory school to university.
- b) One of the most important goals of modern educational curricula is to build critical belief skills between students from primary school to university.
- c) One of the most important goals of modern educational curricula is to build critical thinking skills among students from primary school to university.
- d) One of the most important goals of modern educational qualifications is to build critical thinking skills between students from primary school to university.

ثالثًا: الأسئلة المقالية (كل سؤال درجتان):

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

40. "Yes, I stole the money," said the cashier.

(admitted)

41. It is a habit of mine to drink coffee in the morning.

(accustomed to)

Answer the following questions: (The Count of Monte Cristo)

42. Do you think Edmond's revenge is justified after so many years? Why?

43. If someone betrayed you deeply, would you choose forgiveness or revenge? Explain your reasoning.

رابعًا: الأسئلة المقالية (سؤال واحد خمس درجات):

Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

44. "You spent the mid-year holiday in Luxor. Describe one of the wonders you visited there."

(A) Vocabulary

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Many slaves tried to escape from captivity using secret tunnels. The synonym of the underlined word "escape" is
 a) navigate b) flee c) run away d) feed e) stick
2. Trade routes often formed at the confluence of two major rivers. The synonym of the underlined word "confluence" is
 a) boundary b) complex c) meeting d) gate e) junction
3. Air is invisible, but we still feel its pressure around us. The antonym of the underlined word "invisible" is
 a) unseen b) seen c) visible d) usual e) compressed
4. Farmers preferred land with rich and fertile soil. The antonym of the underlined word "fertile" is
 a) organic b) good c) barren d) poor e) high

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5. The Amazon rainforest is considered the "lungs of the Earth" because of its location.
 a) strategic b) invisible c) mysterious d) luxurious
6. A passport is a to enter new countries.
 a) trapdoor b) gateway c) shadow d) restriction
7. To board an international flight, you must show your at the airport.
 a) terminal b) boarding pass c) departure lounge d) gate
8. Travelers with money often choose to fly in, enjoying better seats and food.
 a) mystery b) luxury c) gateway d) foundation
9. Egypt is located between Africa and Asia.
 a) strategically b) invisibly c) mysteriously d) cosmically
10. Too many on innovation can harm good work.
 a) bustles b) foundations c) curiosities d) restrictions
11. Some people feel in big crowds, while others enjoy the activity.
 a) stuck b) curious c) fertile d) compressed
12. The city square is always full of noise and
 a) bustle b) boundary c) scholar d) theory
13. The Pyramids of Giza stand as a of human engineering skill.
 a) soil b) luxury c) foundation d) monument
14. Water and rich are essential for successful farming.
 a) horizons b) shadows c) soil d) dimensions
15. The professor's attracted students from around the world.
 a) reputation b) horizons c) escape d) boundary
16. Ancient built stone monuments to watch the stars and planets.
 a) astronomers b) scribes c) soldiers d) directors

17. Discovering new worlds has always been part of human
 a) mystery b) curiosity c) dimension d) luxury
18. Ancient civilizations built canals for, bringing water to their crops.
 a) curiosity b) mystery c) education d) irrigation
19. Italy is a, surrounded by the sea on three sides.
 a) dimension b) peninsula c) foundation d) gateway
20. In Mesopotamia, recorded information on clay tablets.
 a) scribes b) astronomers c) scholars d) travelers
21. The tall, temple-like structures called were built in ancient Mesopotamia.
 a) gateways b) ziggurats c) horizons d) bustles
22. A is a person who studies deeply in a particular field of knowledge.
 a) bustler b) scholar c) shadow d) luxury
23. The architect gave the exact of the new bridge before construction began.
 a) dimensions b) horizons c) innovations d) restrictions
24. The gas in the bottle was under high pressure.
 a) compressed b) escaped c) irrigated d) constructed

(B) Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

25. By the time we arrived, the train
 a) had left b) left c) has left d) was leaving
26. She was tired because she all night.
 a) worked b) has worked c) had been working d) works
27. They the movie before we joined them at the cinema.
 a) had seen b) saw c) have seen d) were seeing
28. When I called, he for two hours.
 a) had been studying b) studied c) has studied d) studies
29. After he his homework, he went out with friends.
 a) had finished b) has finished c) finishes d) was finishing
30. She looked exhausted because she for hours.
 a) has run b) running c) had been running d) runs
31. A new product by the company every year.
 a) launching b) launches c) is launched d) launch
32. The police the thief last night.
 a) was caught b) had caught c) caught d) is caught
33. The bridge in 2010.
 a) built b) was built c) has built d) builds
34. The results tomorrow.
 a) will be announced b) announced c) are announcing d) announce
35. She enjoys to music in her free time.
 a) listen b) listening c) to listen d) listened
36. He decided abroad for further studies.
 a) going b) go c) to go d) gone
37. They suggested a new restaurant downtown.
 a) try b) trying c) to try d) tried
38. He can't stand in long queues.
 a) wait b) waiting c) to wait d) waited

39. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) She avoided being late by leaving early. b) She avoided to be late by leaving early.
c) She avoided was late by leaving early. d) She avoided be late by leaving early.

40. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) They agreed finishing the project by Friday. b) They agreed to finish the project by Friday.
c) They agreed finished the project by Friday. d) They agreed finish the project by Friday.

41. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) A new bridge are being built. b) A new bridge is being build.
c) A new bridge is being built. d) A new bridge being built.

42. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) Someone stole my bag yesterday. b) Someone has stolen my bag yesterday.
c) Someone was stolen my bag yesterday. d) Someone is stolen my bag yesterday.

43. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) We were late. The meeting starts when we entered the hall.
b) We were late. The meeting starting when we entered the hall.
c) We were late. The meeting has started when we entered the hall.
d) We were late. The meeting had started when we entered the hall.

44. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) He had been studying English for three years before he moved to London.
b) He was studying English for three years before he moved to London.
c) He is studied English for three years before he moved to London.
d) He has studied English for three years before he moved to London.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1. She finished her homework and then went to bed. | (after) |
| 2. She went to the airport after she had packed her bags. | (before) |
| 3. By the time I got to the station, the train had left. | (No sooner) |
| 4. He left the office after meeting the boss. | (until) |
| 5. They are repairing my car right now. | (being) |
| 6. "I didn't steal the money", he said. | (He denied) |
| 7. The teacher corrected our tests yesterday. | (by) |
| 8. They will announce the results tomorrow. | (be) |
| 9. Someone has stolen my wallet. | (been) |
| 10. People speak English all over the world. | (spoken) |
| 11. She said she would help me. | (promised) |
| 12. He said it was his mistake. | (admitted) |
| 13. We think it's a good idea to go out tonight. | (suggested) |
| 14. I want to buy a new computer. | (decided) |
| 15. He doesn't like waiting in long lines. | (can't stand) |

(C) Translation

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Vitamins found in protective foods are very essential for good health. Their absence causes serious diseases.

- (a) إن الفيتامينات الموجودة في الأطعمة الوقائية ضرورية جدا لصحة جيدة، وغيابها يسبب أمراض خطيرة.
(b) إن الفيتامينات الموجودة في الأطعمة المحمية ضرورية جدا لصحة جيدة، غيابهم يسبب أمراض جادة.
(c) إن الفيتامينات الموجودة في الأطعمة الوقائية ضرورية جدا لصحة جيدة، وغيابها قد يسبب أمراض خطيرة.
(d) إن الفيتامينات الموجودة في الأطعمة الوقائية ضرورية جدا لصحة صالحة، وغيابها لن يسبب أمراض خطيرة.

2. To be employable, each young man or young woman must put in mind that digital skills and foreign languages are of top importance in the labor market.

- (a) يجب على كل شاب أو فتاة أن يضعوا في اعتبارهم أن المهارات الرقمية واللغات الأجنبية لهما أهمية قصوى في سوق العمل ليكونوا مؤهلين للعمل.
 (b) يجب على كل شاب أو فتاة أن يضع في اعتباره أن المهارات الرقمية واللغات الأجنبية لهما أهمية قصوى في سوق العمل ليكونوا مؤهلين للعمل.
 (c) يجب على كل شاب أو فتاة أن يضعوا في اعتبارهم أن المهارات الرقمية واللغات الأجنبية ليس لهما أهمية قصوى في سوق العمل ليكونوا مؤهلين للعمل.
 (d) يجب على كل شاب أو فتاة أن يضع في اعتباره أن المهارات الرقمية واللغات الأجنبية لهما أهمية قصوى في سوق العمل ليكونوا مؤهلين للعمل.

3. People often celebrate various festivals for national, historical, religious, cultural, social and personal occasions.

- (a) يحتفل الناس عادة باحتفالات متنوعة، لمناسبات وطنية وتاريخية ودينية وخيرية ومجتمعية وشخصية.
 (b) دائماً ما يحتفل الناس بأعياد مختلفة، لاحتفالات وطنية وتاريخية ودينية وثقافية واجتماعية وشخصية.
 (c) يحتفل الناس غالباً باحتفالات متنوعة، لمناسبات وطنية وتاريخية ودينية وثقافية واجتماعية وشخصية.
 (d) أحياناً يحتفل الناس باحتفالات مختلفة، لمناسبات وطنية وتاريخية ودينية ومعاصرة واجتماعية وشخصية.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. يجب علينا جميعاً احترام الكبار وأتباع نصائحهم، فخيراتهم بالحياة كنز ثمين لا يُقدَّر بثمن.
 a) We all must respect the elderly and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are a priceless treasure.
 b) We all must respect elders and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are a valueless treasure.
 c) We all must respect elders and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are an unavailable treasure.
 d) We all must respect elders and follow there advise. Their experiences in life are an invaluable treasure.
2. إن قوة الجاذبية التي يتمتع بها الثقب الأسود هائلة لدرجة أنه لا يمكن لأي شيء، حتى الضوء، أن يهرب بمجرد عبوره أفق الحدث.
 a) A black hole's gravitational pull is so immense that nothing, not even light, can escape once it crosses the event horizon.
 b) A black hall's gravitational pull is so impressive that nothing, not even light, can escape once it crosses the event horizon.
 c) A black hole's gravitational pull is so depressive that nothing, not even right, can escape once it crosses the event horizon.
 d) A black holes' gravitational pull is so immense that nothing, not even light, can escape once it crosses the event horizon.

(D) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The old clock on the mantelpiece ticked slowly, its rhythm echoing in the silent study.

Detective Elias Thorne stood over Alistair Finch, the reclusive antiquarian slain by a single gunshot—locked inside his own room, windows bolted, door locked from within. In the victim's clenched hand was an ornate key that didn't match any lock.

A diary lay open on the desk: "The Key of Shadows. A replica—but the secret is in the inscription. I fear my time is running out." Thorne turned the key. Faint runic script glowed in the fading light: "The last light fades."

He scanned the room. No hidden passages. No escape. Then—he noticed the clock. With a magnifying glass, he pried open its mechanism and found a tiny silver disc with a pinhole. He held the key up to the setting sun. A beam pierced the disc, casting a pinpoint of light onto the wall—right where a shadow fell across a bookshelf. Thorne moved the shelf. Behind it: a hidden safe. The key fit.

Inside, a final note: "He will come for this. The only way to stop him is to make it disappear."

It wasn't murder. It was suicide.

Alistair had engineered a flawless riddle—a clock, a key, and sunlight as the trigger—to conceal a dangerous secret. Knowing enemies were closing in, he chose death over capture. The locked room? A theatrical seal. The gunshot? His final act of protection. The key wasn't meant to unlock a door—it was meant to be found, by the right mind, at the right hour.

The mystery wasn't how he died—but why he made it look like a crime.

Thorne closed the safe. Some secrets weren't meant to be kept... just buried.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The story takes place mainly in Alistair Finch's
 a) library b) study c) bedroom d) office
- The ornate key in Alistair's hand did not match any
 a) safe b) inscription c) clock d) lock
- Alistair Finch was found
 a) asleep in his chair b) hiding in a safe
 c) dead from a gunshot d) escaping through a window
- The diary entry mentioned "The Key of Shadows" and warned that
 a) the clock would stop b) time was running out
 c) enemies were defeated d) a treasure was hidden
- The key revealed its secret when Thorne held it up to the
 a) lamp light b) moonlight c) setting sun d) silver disc
- According to the final note, Alistair wanted the secret to
 a) disappear b) remain safe in the clock
 c) be sold d) be passed to his enemies
- The locked door and gunshot were part of Alistair's
 a) hobby as a collector b) plan to confuse enemies
 c) experiment with time d) search for treasure
- The story suggests that the real mystery was not how Alistair died, but
 a) who killed him b) why he staged the crime
 c) where the treasure was d) what happened to the clock

(E) Writing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- An expository essay usually begins with an that presents the topic clearly.
 a) ending b) introduction c) dialogue d) description
- The of an expository essay provide facts, examples, and explanations.
 a) body paragraphs b) mystery clues c) character sketches d) conclusions
- The of an expository essay restates the thesis and summarizes the main points.
 a) setting b) introduction c) conclusion d) mystery twist
- A descriptive essay focuses on creating a clear using sensory details.
 a) thesis b) picture c) argument d) plot twist
- In a descriptive essay, writers often use the senses of sight, sound, smell, taste, and
 a) touch b) introduction c) conclusion d) decision
- The structure of a descriptive essay can follow a logical order, such as moving from general impressions to details.
 a) random b) specific c) mystery d) concluding
- A mystery story often begins with an introduction that sets the
 a) conclusion b) scene c) essay thesis d) evidence
- The middle of a mystery story usually introduces that the reader must piece together.
 a) words b) facts c) arguments d) clues
- A good mystery story builds by keeping readers guessing.
 a) suspense b) introduction c) thesis d) summary

10. At the end of a mystery story, there is often a surprising that explains the case.
a) argument b) setting c) introduction d) twist
11. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?
a) It's raining, we should stay inside. b) Its raining; we should stay inside.
c) It's raining; we should stay inside. d) It's raining we should stay inside.
12. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?
a) "I can't wait to go," she said. b) "I can't wait to go", she said.
c) I can't wait to go she said. d) I can't wait to go," she said.
13. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?
a) The meeting is scheduled for Monday, September 14, at 9:00 a.m.
b) The meeting is scheduled for, Monday September 14 at 9:00 a.m.
c) The meeting is scheduled for Monday September, 14 at 9:00 a.m.
d) The meeting is scheduled, for Monday, September 14, at 9:00 a.m.
14. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?
a) I wanted to go to the park, but it started raining.
b) I wanted to go to the park but, it started raining.
c) I wanted to go to the park but it started, raining.
d) I wanted, to go to the park but it started raining.
15. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?
a) Having finished her housework she went for a walk.
b) Having finished her housework, she went for a walk
c) having finished her housework, she went for a walk.
d) Having finished her housework, she, went for a walk.

2 Write on one of the following:

- a) A descriptive essay about "The way your favorite teacher captivates a classroom."

.....
.....
.....

- b) An expository essay about "The pros and cons of online learning versus traditional schooling."

.....
.....
.....

3 Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- a) A conclusion for an expository essay about "The benefits of a plant-based diet."

.....
.....
.....

- b) Write an engaging introductory paragraph for a story titled: "A Crime Investigation"

.....
.....
.....

Unit 10

Peoples' Hospitality and Kindness



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Read and understand short text, conversations, and stories about kindness and hospitality across cultures.
- Identify main ideas, supporting details, and cultural differences in how people show hospitality.
- Language** - Use defining and non-defining relative clauses accurately in context.
- Correct common grammatical errors in relative clauses.
- Listening** - Listen to real-life hospitality stories and identify problems, solutions, and acts of kindness.
- Complete tables and answer comprehension questions based on listening texts.
- Writing** - Write a diary entry describing personal or imagined experiences of hospitality.
- Speaking** - Discuss kindness and hospitality in their own culture and compare them with other societies.
- Share personal or imagined experiences of kindness through storytelling, role-play, and pair work.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

backpacking (n) السفر بحقيبة الظهر	gesture (n) حركة / إيماءة	thoughtful (adj) مجامل / ودود / مراع لشعور الآخرين
compliment (n) (v) (ed) مجاملة / إطراء / مجامل	hospitality (n) كرم الضيافة	unhesitatingly (adv) بلا تردد
generosity (n) كرم / سخاء	politeness (n) أدب / لطف	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

bow (n) (v) (ed) انحناء / ينحني	honor (n) (v) (ed) شرف / تكريم / يشرف / يكرم	struggle (n) (v) (d) يكافح / يعاني / معاناة
budget (n) ميزانية	hospitable (adj) مضياف / كريم	task (n) مهمة
care (n) (v) (d) رعاية / يري / يهتم	host (n) (v) (ed) مُضيف / يستضيف	tasty (adj) لذيذ
central (adj) مركزي / أساسي	mint (n) نعناع	thoughtfulness (n) مراعاة مشاعر الآخرين
charity (n) صدقة / أعمال خيرية	movement (n) حركة	tiny (adj) صغير جدًا
comfort (n) راحة	natural (adj) طبيعي	treatment (n) معاملة / علاج
common (adj) مشترك / شائع	overnight (adv) خلال ليلة واحدة	unexpectedly (adv) بشكل مفاجئ
core (n) جوهر / أساس	overwhelming (adj) غامر / شديد	unforgettable (adj) باقى / لا يُنسى
customs (n) عادات / تقاليد	owner (n) مالك / صاحب	universal (adj) عالمي / شامل
experience (n) (v) (d) تجربة / يجرب	quality (n) جودة / صفة / سمة	unusual (adj) غير عادي
express (v) (ed) يعبر عن	remark (n) (v) (ed) ملاحظة / يلاحظ	value (n) (v) (d) قيمة / يُقيم
extra (adj) إضافي	respect (n) (v) (ed) احترام / يحترم	verbally (adv) شفهيًا / لفظيًا
genuine (adj) أصلي / حقيقي	service (n) خدمة	volunteering (n) تطوع
gift (n) هدية	souvenir (n) تذكار	warmth (n) دفء
heartfelt (adj) صادق / من القلب	stranger (n) شخص غريب	well-mannered (adj) حسن الأخلاق

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sarah received many on her presentation from her colleagues who were impressed by her research.
a) complements b) treatments c) compliments d) supplements
- The tourists were amazed by the of the local people, who invited them to share a traditional meal.
a) hospitality b) hostility c) ability d) budget
- A person always considers other people's feelings before speaking.
a) natural b) careless c) shy d) thoughtful
- Some people believe that herbal can help with stress and sleep problems.
a) research b) treatment c) invention d) invitation
- Our boss always says that we should focus on the of our work, not just on finishing it quickly.
a) direction b) timing c) movement d) quality

6. The Grand Egyptian Museum displays artifacts from ancient Egypt, allowing visitors to see real pieces of history.
 a) modern b) common c) genuine d) false
7. The chef prepared a dish with ingredients that most customers had never tasted before.
 a) casual b) unusual c) gradual d) regular
8. The manager gave each team member a specific to complete before the end of the week.
 a) experience b) struggle c) task d) movement

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعابير والمصطلحات

as a sign of kindness	كـتعبير عن اللطف	give a detailed tour	يقدم جولة مفصلة	on a budget	بميزانية محدودة
carry deep meaning	يحمل معاني عميقة	make sure	يتأكد	show kindness to	يظهر لطفًا تجاه

Prepositions

حروف الجر

connected to	مرتبط بـ	insist on	يصر على	served with	يعامل بـ
depend on	يعتمد على	part of	جزء من	think about	يفكر في
grateful for	ممتن لـ	remark about	تعليق / ملاحظة على	way of	طريقة لـ

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
comfort	يريح	comfort	راحة	comfortable	مريح
experience	يجرب / يختبر	experience	تجربة / خبرة	experienced	خبير / ذو خبرة
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	تعبيري
move	يتحرك	movement	حركة	moving	مؤثر / متحرك
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respectful	محترم (للآخرين)
				respected	محترم / موقر (يحترمه الناس)
				respectable	جدير بالاحترام / لائق
struggle	يكافح / يعاني	struggle struggler	صراع / كفاح مكافح / مناضل	struggling	مكافح
treat	يعامل / يعالج	treatment	معاملة / علاج	treatable treated	قابل للعلاج مُعالج
value	يقدر / يقيم	value	قيمة	valuable valued	قيم / ثمين مُقدَّر
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteering volunteer	تطوع متطوع	voluntary	تطوعي

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Please **express** your opinion clearly during the meeting. (v)
 Her face had a sad **expression** when she heard the news. (n)
 She has very **expressive** eyes that show every emotion. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
central	مركزي	main/principal		secondary/minor	ثانوي / غير أساسي
compliment	مجاملة / إطراء	praise/flattery		insult/criticism	إهانة / انتقاد
extra	إضافي	additional/bonus		necessary/essential	ضروري / أساسي
heartfelt	صادق / من القلب	sincere/genuine		insincere/hypocritical	غير صادق / منافق
honor	شرف / تكريم	reputation/respect		dishonor/shame	عار / خزي
hospitality	كرم الضيافة	welcome/generosity		coldness/unfriendliness	برود / عدم ترحيب
overwhelming	ساحق	overpowering/ extreme		tolerable/slight	محتمل / طفيف
thoughtful	مجامل	considerate/caring		thoughtless/careless	غير مجامل / مهمل
treatment	معاملة / علاج	care/medication		neglect/maltreatment	إهمال / معاملة سيئة
unexpectedly	بشكل غير متوقع	suddenly/surprisingly		predictably/expectedly	كما هو متوقع / بشكل متوقع
universal	عالمي	global/worldwide		local/limited	محلي / محدود
warmth	دفء	heat/affection		coldness/indifference	برود / لامبالاة
well-mannered	حسن الأخلاق	polite/respectful		ill-mannered/rude	سيئ الأخلاق / وقح

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The museum guide a detailed tour of the ancient artifacts for the students.
a) appeared b) focused c) took d) gave
- The neighbor brought homemade cookies to the new family as a of kindness.
a) notice b) signal c) sign d) ray
- The factory's power failure was connected a damaged electrical transformer that needed maintenance.
a) from b) to c) at d) of
- Zain felt grateful his teacher's advice, which helped him improve a lot and pass tests easily.
a) for b) with c) by d) on
- The teacher always tries to treat her students with respect and fairness. The noun of the verb "treat" is ".....".
a) treated b) treatment c) treatable d) mistreat
- The students took part in a project to clean the beach near their school.
a) volunteer's b) volunteered c) voluntary d) volunteers
- We sent our heartfelt congratulations to our friend on his success. The synonym of the adjective "heartfelt" is ".....".
a) hypocritical b) central c) extra d) sincere
- The mother welcomed her children with love and warmth after a long day. The antonym of the word "warmth" is ".....".
a) heat b) affection c) compliment d) indifference

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Expressions of Kindness Around the World

Kindness is a universal language, but the way it is expressed often depends on culture. What feels natural in one country may be unusual in another, yet the meaning behind it remains the same: care, respect, and connection.

In Japan, kindness is often shown through **politeness**⁽¹⁾ and small acts of service. For example, people **bow**⁽²⁾ when greeting each other, and it is common to bring a small gift, like sweets, when visiting someone's home. These **gestures**⁽³⁾ may seem simple, but they carry deep meaning about respect and **thoughtfulness**⁽⁴⁾.

In India, **hospitality**⁽⁵⁾ is a central way of showing kindness. Guests are often treated like family and served with **generosity**⁽⁶⁾, sometimes even before the host eats. Sharing food and offering comfort are ways to express warmth and honor.

In many Middle Eastern cultures, kindness is strongly connected to hospitality as well. Offering tea or coffee, is a way of showing welcome and respect. A guest should never leave a home without being offered something.

In Western countries, kindness is often expressed **verbally**⁽⁷⁾. Saying "thank you," **complimenting**⁽⁸⁾ someone, or offering to help in small daily tasks are common ways of showing care. Acts of charity, like volunteering, are also highly valued.

Though the customs are different, the heart of kindness is the same everywhere. It reminds us that no matter where we come from, human connection grows stronger when we choose to be kind.



(1) أدب / لطف

(2) ينجني

(3) حركات / إيماءات

(4) مراعاة مشاعر الآخرين

(5) كرم الضيافة

(6) كرم / سخاء

(7) شفهيًا

(8) مجاملة / إطراء

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a) Kindness is expressed differently around the world.
 - b) Kindness is more common in Western countries.
 - c) Kindness is only shown through gifts.
 - d) Kindness is a language that only few understand.
2. What can be inferred about the importance of hospitality in India?
 - a) It is a sign of wealth.
 - b) It is a way to show respect and kindness.
 - c) It is only for special occasions.
 - d) It is a way to show superiority.
3. What does the phrase "Kindness is a universal language" imply?
 - a) Everyone speaks the same language.
 - b) Kindness is only expressed verbally.
 - c) Kindness is understood and appreciated across cultures.
 - d) Kindness is limited to certain cultures.
4. The word "hospitality" in the passage is best illustrated by which action?
 - a) Ignoring a guest.
 - b) Treating a guest warmly.
 - c) Being formal with a guest.
 - d) Leaving a guest unattended.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Narrator : Speaker 1, Maria, Greece.

Speaker 1 : I'll never forget my experience in a tiny Greek village. My car broke down unexpectedly, and I was completely helpless. An elderly couple who spoke no English saw me **struggling**⁽¹⁾ and immediately invited me to their home. They were incredibly **thoughtful**⁽²⁾. They called a mechanic, prepared a tasty meal, and insisted I stay overnight. Their overwhelming kindness made me realize how hospitable Greeks truly are. I felt so grateful for their generosity.



- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| (1) يعانى | (2) مجامل / وودود |
| (3) السفر بحقيبة الظهر | (4) بلا تردد |
| (5) دفء | (6) أصيل |
| (7) لا ينسى | |

Narrator : Speaker 2, James, Colombia.

Speaker 2 : During my **backpacking**⁽³⁾ trip through Columbia, I met a local family at a bus station. When they learned I had nowhere to stay, they **unhesitatingly**⁽⁴⁾ invited me to their home. The mother was wonderfully caring. She prepared extra food and made sure I was comfortable. The children were endlessly curious about my country and asked thoughtful questions. Their **warmth**⁽⁵⁾ was unforgettable, and I learned that Colombian hospitality is genuinely heartfelt.

Narrator : Speaker 3, Kanokwan, Egypt

Speaker 3 : While I was on a trip to the historic city of Aswan, I met a local shop owner. He learned that I was a tourist trying to find my way, and insisted on giving me a detailed tour of the market. He made me a cup of delicious mint tea, and we talked for hours about Egyptian history and my travels. His generosity was so warm and **genuine**⁽⁶⁾. I realized that the hospitality of the Egyptian people is a core part of their culture, and it made my trip **unforgettable**⁽⁷⁾.

Definitions

التعريفات

backpacking	السفر بحقيبة الظهر	traveling with your clothes and things in a large backpack, usually on a budget
compliment	مجاملة / إطراء	a positive remark about someone
generosity	كرم / سخاء	the quality of giving more than expected
gesture	حركة / إيحاء	a movement or action that expresses a feeling
hospitality	كرم الضيافة	friendly and welcoming treatment of guests
politeness	أدب / لطف	respectful and well-mannered behavior
thoughtful	مجامل / وودود	a kind and caring person, showing you are thinking about what someone else needs
unhesitatingly	بلا تردد	without stopping to think, doing something right away

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	custom(s) عادة/عادات	It's the custom in most countries for a bride to wear a white dress in her wedding party.
	customs الجمرك (دائمًا جمع)	The traveler was asked about the laser device in customs .
	costume(s) زى (الملابس التي يرتديها المؤدون لل عروض في مسرحية أو فيلم)	The actors were all dressed in 18 th -century costumes .
2	souvenir تذكار (شيء مادي يذكر برحلة / حدث)	I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.
	memory ذاكرة/ ذكرى (شيء معنوي غير ملموس)	My grandfather suffers from memory loss. He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El-Sheikh.
	anniversary ذكرى سنوية	October 2025 was the 25 th anniversary of our parents' marriage.
3	tasty ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)	My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.
	tasteful مقبول/ حسن الذوق (مختار بعناية)	The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.
4	remark ملاحظة (شفوية)	We must ignore Wael if he starts making rude remarks .
	comment تعليق شفوي أو مكتوب للتعبير عن رأي	All website members are invited to send in their comments and suggestions.
	point نقطة (شيء مذكور عن موضوع في مناقشة أو مناظرة أو مقال)	He mentioned a number of important points in his article.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- means respectful and well-mannered behavior.
a) Generosity b) Politeness c) Gesture d) Backpacking
- A can be defined as a movement or action that expresses a feeling.
a) trip b) hospitality c) debate d) gesture
- Mr. Sameh bought his wife a diamond ring on their tenth wedding
a) memory b) souvenir c) anniversary d) memorial
- The room is filled with furniture and original paintings and pieces of art.
a) taste b) tasted c) tasty d) tasteful
- I think we didn't catch the of what the speaker was attempting to clarify.
a) point b) observation c) remark d) comment
- Many young people don't pay much attention to their society's and traditions.
a) costumes b) customers c) customs d) customaries

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

- Yasser decided to go across Europe for three months with just a small bag and very little luggage.
a) diving b) backpacking c) cooking d) driving
- The wealthy businessman was admired for his toward charitable organizations.
a) selfishness b) politeness c) generosity d) gesture
- The clever student raised her hand to answer the difficult question during the class discussion.
a) unhesitatingly b) doubtfully c) unforgettably d) nervously
- Without a proper, it is very difficult to manage money and achieve long-term savings goals.
a) comfort b) custom c) vacation d) budget
- The chef prepared a meal that delighted all the guests with its wonderful cooked ingredients.
a) bitter b) tasteful c) tasty d) hospitable
- The generous of donating his time to volunteer work inspired others to contribute to the community.
a) comfort b) comment c) sign d) gesture
- Parents should remind their children to be cautious with in public places.
a) actors b) strangers c) members d) guests
- I decided to stay at my friend's house instead of driving home late after the party ended.
a) overnight b) overthinking c) common d) remarkable
- To cure the disease, we had to address the issue rather than its symptoms.
a) minor b) core c) unusual d) moving
- The minister expressed her gratitude to the volunteers who worked hard to organize the community event.
a) internally b) silently c) verbally d) aimlessly
- The young man held the door open for elderly people and greeted everyone with respect and kindness.
a) impolite b) genuine c) thoughtless d) well-mannered
- The prisoner regret for his actions and promised to change his bad behavior.
a) said b) attended c) expressed d) complimented
- By privacy and personal boundaries, friends can maintain healthy relationships built on trust and mutual understanding.
a) decoding b) respecting c) violating d) thinking
- Our trip to the Karnak Temple was truly; I will remember it forever.
a) unforgettable b) hospitable c) strange d) universal
- Education is a/an factor in developing countries that want to improve in all fields especially their economy.
a) secondary b) extra c) generous d) central
- The athlete's to recover from the injury inspired everyone on the team.
a) comfort b) struggle c) victory d) training
- The support from the community helped the victims recover and rebuild their houses after the hurricane.
a) overwhelming b) excited c) tiny d) limited
- The resolutions قرارات of the UN Climate Summit aimed to provide measures for environmental protection.
a) local b) heartfelt c) universal d) sensory

19. The friendship between the two colleagues lasted for many years; they were loyal to each other.
 a) pretended b) overwhelming c) generous d) genuine
20. The hotel's room staff cleaned the rooms very well for guest comfort and convenience.
 a) service b) order c) obedience d) gesture
21. Many people donate clothes and money to organizations to help those in need.
 a) luxury b) charity c) research d) reserve
22. Cairo University decided to the famous professor by naming a building after him.
 a) ignore b) struggle c) promote d) honor
23. The font on the computer screen was difficult for the elderly man to read.
 a) oversized b) tiny c) modernized d) outdated
24. The professor canceled the lecture because of the college bus accident.
 a) unexpectedly b) naturally c) aimlessly d) artificially
25. Before leaving the stage, the actor gave a to thank the audience for their applause.
 a) role b) turn c) wave d) bow
26. Ahmed gave his little brother a beautiful on his birthday to show his love for him.
 a) note b) card c) gift d) prize
27. The resources of the country, including oil, provided important economic benefits to the country.
 a) manufactured b) natural c) miserly d) hesitating
28. At the Safari trip, the Bedouins were very and welcomed the tourists with food and smiles.
 a) unfriendly b) lazy c) common d) hospitable
29. The of the ancient painting was estimated at millions of dollars by art experts and professional appraisers.
 a) rent b) production c) value d) expense
30. The teacher made a positive on the student's improved handwriting that pleased him.
 a) remark b) signal c) degree d) grade

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

31. The students decided to kindness to the new student by inviting her to sit with them at lunch.
 a) give b) show c) follow d) invest
32. The young men planned a vacation to save money while still enjoying the trip.
 a) in luxury b) in progress c) on a budget d) on time
33. Young children depend their parents for food and protection during their early years of growth.
 a) out b) away c) in d) on
34. The parent on bedtime rules because children need enough sleep to stay healthy and do well in school.
 a) insists b) demands c) requires d) expects
35. Families taught their children to be well-mannered when visiting relatives. The synonym of the adjective "well-mannered" is ".....".
 a) rude b) hospitable c) active d) respectful
36. The critic's kind compliment about her artwork boosted her confidence. The antonym of the noun "compliment" is ".....".
 a) criticism b) gesture c) flattery d) reflection
37. My mother always keeps some extra food ready in case guests arrive. The adjective "extra" is similar in meaning to ".....".
 a) unusual b) additional c) common d) essential
38. Good treatment at a hospital makes patients feel safe and respected. The opposite of the word "treatment" is ".....".
 a) care b) politeness c) neglect d) value
39. My grandmother still has a sharp and remembers stories from her childhood.
 a) memory b) souvenir c) anniversary d) innovation
40. The actor forgot part of his backstage خلف الكواليس before the show started.
 a) custom b) customer c) costume d) tradition

B Language

Relative Clauses

جمل الوصل

هي الجمل التي تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها. وضمائر الوصل هي:

who/ that	whom	which/ that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

أنواع جمل الوصل

1- Defining Relative Clauses

1- النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية وبدونها سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أوما هو المقصود. ونستخدم في هذا النوع (**who/ which/ whom**) ولا نستخدم (**comma**) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (**that**) بدلاً من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة.

The man **who (that)** robbed the bank was sent to prison.

The book **which (that)** tells you about history is useful.

2- Non-defining Relative Clauses

2- النوع الثاني يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (**comma**) قبل وبعد جملة الوصل ولا تستخدم (**that**) في هذا النوع.

My father, **whom** I love, works as a teacher.

My car, **which** is outside, needs some repairs. (I have one car.)

وهناك أسماء تأتي بعدها جملة الوصل **non-defining** وهي:

1 أسماء الأعلام (أسماء الأشخاص والأسماء الفريدة).

2 الأسماء المسبوقة بصفة ملكية **my, his, her, our, etc.** (وهي تميز من صاحب الشيء).

3 الأسماء المسبوقة بأسماء الإشارة **this, that, these and those**.

ولكن لو لزم التفريق الشديد حتى مع هذه الأسماء يمكن استخدام كلا النوعين مثل:

My sister, **who lives in Assiut**, came to visit me in Cairo last week.

في هذا المثال جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية وهذا يعني أن لدى أختنا واحدة فقط فلا أحتاج للتعريف.

My sister **who lives in Assiut** came to visit me in Cairo last week.

في المثال الثاني جملة الوصل تعطى معلومة أساسية وضرورية وهذا يعني أنني لدى أكثر من أخت، فوجب التفريق؛ من التي زارتنى منهن.

Ahmed rang me last night. **He** introduced us at the party.

- Ahmed, **who (He)** introduced us at the party, rang me last night.

في هذه الجملة **Ahmed** اسم علم؛ فجملة الوصل التي بعده تعتبر معلومة زيادة **extra information** فالجملة الأصلية **Ahmed rang me last night** تؤدي معنى تاماً بمفردها ولا نضع **that** ونضع **comma**.

The footballer has been banned from playing again. **He** took drugs.

- The footballer **who/that (He)** took drugs has been banned from playing again.

في هذه الجملة جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذي مُنع من اللعب وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل **defining** وهنا يمكن استخدام **that** وعدم وضع **comma**.

1 verb + الذي / التي / الذين / التي + **who/ that** + اسم عاقل

تحل (**who/ that**) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدها فعل.

Ahmed helped me last night. **He** is very kind.

- Ahmed, **who** is very kind, helped me last night.

The student was very happy. **He** won the science competition.

- The student **who/ that** won the science competition was very happy.

2 subject + الذى / التى / الذين + whom/ who/ that + اسم عاقل

تحل (whom/ who/ that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدهم فاعل.

- The woman was happy. We gave her the money.
 - The woman who/whom/that we gave the money was happy.
 The suspect was very dangerous. We saw him in the car.
 - The suspect who/whom/that we saw in the car was dangerous.
 Osama is my neighbor. I go to the club with him.
 - Osama, who/whom I go to the club with, is my neighbor.

في الجملة الأخيرة لاحظ عدم وضع that لأن الجملة بها comma ولأن جملة الوصل non-defining.

ولاحظ أيضًا أن حرف الجر with لم يأت قبل ضمير الوصل، فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم إلا whom.

Osama, with whom I go to the club, is my neighbor.

3 verb/ subject + الذى / التى / الذين + which/ that + اسم غير عاقل

تحل (which/ that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية إذا كانتا محل فاعل فيأتي بعدهما في الربط فعل وإذا كانتا محل مفعول فيأتي بعدهما فاعل.

- The car needs to be repaired. It has just broken down.
 - The car which/that has just broken down needs to be repaired. (حلت محل الفاعل)
 The watch is expensive. I have just bought it.
 - The watch which/that I have just bought is expensive. (حلت محل المفعول)
 The Nile is the main source of water in Egypt. It flows from south to north.
 - The Nile, which flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.

جملة «ينساب من الجنوب إلى الشمال» معلومة إضافية فهي تعتبر non-defining ولذلك لم نضع that ووضعنا comma.

إذا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم that ونستخدم which فقط.

That is the hotel at which (that) I stayed.

• يمكن أن تعود which على جملة كاملة قبلها.

Ali quarreled with his brother, which made their father angry.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed, most of his colleagues respect, works very hard.
 a) which b) who c) whose d) where
- Interestingly, all the guests you have just invited will come to the party.
 a) whom b) whose c) to who d) for whom
- Unfortunately, the car I bought a week ago has something wrong with its engine.
 a) what b) where c) that d) whom
- The sweater my father bought me is very stylish.
 a) what b) whose c) whom d) which
- My friend I go to school is generous.
 a) with whom b) that c) whose d) who

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- Ali is a journalist. He met the President last week. (who)
- Omar lives in Assiut. It is a city in the south of Egypt. (which)
- This is our neighbor's dog. It always barks when you approach it. (that)
- Smoking is a bad habit. It causes many deaths every year. (which)
- The man is the pilot of the plane. I was talking with him. (whom)

4 اسم عاقل / غير عاقل + whose للملكية + sentence (S + V + O)

تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذي قبلها.

تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية his/ her/ its/ their

The writer was delighted. His novel won the Nobel Prize.

- The writer whose novel won the Nobel Prize was delighted.

Mr. Ahmed visits England a lot. His wife is English.

- Mr. Ahmed, whose wife is English, visits England a lot.

في الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل (زوجته إنجليزية) معلومة إضافية non-defining.

The man in whose house we live is very generous.

يمكن أن تسبق whose بحرف جر مثلها مثل which وwhom.

5 حرف جر ... where = which + sentence

تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى «حيث» وتعود على المكرر في الجملة الثانية (in/ on/ at + place/ here - there).

The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday there.

- The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.

The hotel was very clean. We stayed there for 3 days.

- The hotel where we stayed for 3 days was very clean.

تحل where محل ظروف المكان here - there أما which فتحل محل it/ they/ them لغير العاقل.

ويمكن أن تأتي which وقبلها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت محل الضمير المكرر it أو they أو them.

Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is very crowded.

- Cairo, which is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.

6 حرف جر ... when = that/which + sentence

تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى «عندما» وتعود على المكرر في الجملة الثانية (in/ on/ at + time/ then).

It's seven o'clock. I get up at that time. - It's seven o'clock when I get up.

Friday is a holiday. I visit my relatives on Friday. - Friday, when I visit my relatives, is a holiday.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Fahd, friend lives in Cairo, has gone on vacation to Egypt.
a) who b) when c) whose d) that
- Cairo, I live, is a crowded city.
a) where b) that c) which d) when
- October 1973 was the month our armed forces won a great war.
a) which b) when c) where d) whose
- Sharm El Sheikh is the resort we enjoy diving.
a) which b) whose c) when d) where
- Adel is my friend brother won the poetry competition.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) that

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- Alexandria, which I live, is a beautiful city. (.....)
- I remember the time which I fell and broke my arm. (.....)
- The people who lives were rescued thanked the policeman a lot. (.....)
- The book that title I couldn't remember was about ancient history. (.....)
- This is the city its famous bridge was built in the 19th century. (.....)

22. This is the hotel rooms have a view of the sea.
 a) which b) whose c) who's d) where
23. Aswan, my father likes, is a wonderful city in the south of Egypt.
 a) which b) whom c) that d) where
24. He's the man house the jewelry was stolen.
 a) in which b) from whose c) from whom d) from which
25. I'm hoping to study science at university, after I'd like to work as a research scientist.
 a) where b) when c) who d) which
26. Which one of the following questions is correctly structured?
 a) Do you remember the date when we have to submit the essay?
 b) Do you remember the date which we have to submit the essay?
 c) Do you remember the date when we have to submit the essay in?
 d) Do you remember the date what we have to submit the essay in?
27. His mother wants him to be an engineer.
 a) who helps him study math b) helps him study math
 c) ,who helps him study math, d) ,that helps him study math,
28. The sentence which shows that the machine has only one switch is ".....".
 a) The switch which is in the back of the machine is off
 b) The switch that is in the back of the machine, is off
 c) The switch, which is in the back of the machine, is off
 d) The switch, that is in the back of the machine, is off
29. The deadline, occurred just before midnight, forced everyone to work hard.
 a) when b) which c) that d) at which
30. I have helped that man over there. He is wearing a brown jacket. This means the same as ".....".
 a) I have helped that man with a brown jacket
 b) I have helped that man wearing a brown jacket
 c) I have helped that man whose jacket is brown
 d) all are possible

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The novel is very long. It won the first prize last year. (which)

2. The man works as a lifeguard. His brother is a mechanic. (whose)

3. She finally met the professor. She had admired him for years. (whom)

4. The store is closing down next week. We buy our groceries there. (where)

5. He remembered the exact moment. He first saw the ocean then. (when)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. The student whom scored the highest grade received an award. (.....)
 2. She spoke about the author, that I greatly admire, for an hour. (.....)
 3. The car, that had a flat tire, was blocking the driveway. (.....)
 4. To who did you give the keys of the apartment? (.....)
 5. The company fired the employee, who was a surprising decision. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The hotel staff showed great by welcoming every guest with a smile and offering free tea.
a) honesty b) hospitality c) curiosity d) activity
2. It was very of Omar to bring his teacher a small gift at the end of the school year.
a) powerful b) active c) thoughtful d) noisy
3. The student's kind of helping his friend with homework made everyone appreciate him.
a) distance b) memory c) reason d) gesture
4. Parents always show deep for their children by supporting them in every situation.
a) care b) pride c) surprise d) talent
5. The of the fireplace made the room feel cozy مريحة on the cold winter night.
a) smell b) silence c) warmth d) darkness
6. The man helped a who was lost in the city by giving him directions to the bus station.
a) stranger b) host c) hostess d) guide
7. After a long and tiring trip, the soft bed and quiet room gave the travelers great
a) laughter b) comfort c) gesture d) movement
8. Hala bought a small pottery vase as a from her trip to Greece, so she would always remember her wonderful vacation.
a) anniversary b) souvenir c) memory d) memorial
9. Every weekend, my friend spends her time at the local animal shelter, caring for dogs and cats in need.
a) managing b) studying c) volunteering d) profiting
10. Plastic waste is a/an problem that affects cities all around the world.
a) local b) personal c) unusual d) common
11. The young boy showed by waiting for his turn, listening carefully, and speaking respectfully to his elders.
a) generosity b) politeness c) courage d) creativity
12. The new of the restaurant decided to completely renew the kitchen and update the menu with modern dishes.
a) owner b) architect c) servant d) customer
13. Because the event was larger than expected, the organizers had to order chairs and tables to accommodate all the guests.
a) natural b) core c) ordinary d) extra
14. There was a gentle of the trees as the wind passed through the garden.
a) change b) charge c) movement d) delay
15. The actor gave a speech that made everyone in the audience emotional.
a) sudden b) heartfelt c) funny d) tiny
16. My grandmother always drinks tea with fresh leaves for a nice smell and taste.
a) mint b) medicine c) sugar d) spice
17. The old photograph deep meaning for the elderly couple, reminding them of their wedding day fifty years ago.
a) relay b) carries c) flows d) hides
18. The journalist's remark the match was shared by thousands of fans online.
a) at b) away c) about d) for
19. The teacher received a compliment from the principal for her creative lessons. The noun "compliment" is opposite of ".....".
a) praise b) criticism c) hospitality d) respect

20. Hanan wrote a thoughtful message to thank her friend for the birthday gift. The adjective "thoughtful" can be replaced by
- a) considerate b) careless c) universal d) tiny

Language

21. I like photographs are in black and white.
a) what b) whom c) which d) whose
22. That's the hospital Ola went when she was ill.
a) whose b) where c) when d) which
23. The meeting at I met a lot of my friends was fruitful.
a) that b) where c) what d) which
24. The scientist discovered a new planet has won the Nobel Prize.
a) who b) which c) when d) whom
25. I want to speak to the person is responsible for the garage.
a) whom b) that c) where d) whose
26. The boy we punished was guilty.
a) which b) where c) whose d) whom
27. The man in car we go to work is the boss.
a) whose b) which c) what d) whom
28. At the end of our street there's a baker's we buy our bread.
a) who b) whom c) where d) that
29. He bought a car, I can't remember the name.
a) where b) of what c) by whom d) of which
30. Alexandria, is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a vacation.
a) that b) which c) where d) in which
31. Mr. Gaber is the person I obtain much information.
a) whom b) who c) from whom d) whose
32. I live in a house entrance is guarded by three fierce dogs.
a) whose b) which c) who d) that
33. She has a lot of money, most of was inherited from her aunt.
a) where b) which c) that d) what
34. This is the man dream of meeting the President has come true.
a) who b) whom c) that d) whose
35. Eighteen is the age we can get a driving license.
a) at when b) on which c) at which d) in which
36. The students wishes have come true are very happy.
a) who b) whose c) that d) whom
37. These days, women have as good education as men, I think is a good thing.
a) where b) when c) who d) which
38. The car, which is in the park, needs to be repaired. This means that
a) I have got only one car b) I have got more than one car
c) I don't need to repair the others d) my other cars are in a good condition
39. Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured?
a) The computer, she bought last week, is not working.
b) The computer, which she bought it last week, is not working.
c) The computer, she bought it last week, is not working.
d) The computer, which she bought last week, is not working.
40. Hassan ordered an enormous steak,
a) which cost him a lot b) was very delicious
c) it wasn't well-done d) he ate it all by himself

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

		المفردات الرئيسية	
collectivist (adj)	جماعي / اشتراكي	patronize (v) (d)	يتعالى على / يتكبر على
individualistic (adj)	فردى / رأسمالي	spontaneous (adj)	عفوى / تلقائي

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

appreciate (v) (d)	يُقدَّر	formal (adj)	رسمي	repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
café (n)	مقهى	habit (n)	عادة	review (n) (v) (ed)	مراجعة / يستعرض
climate (n)	مناخ	informal (adj)	غير رسمي	rude (adj)	وقح
concept (n)	مفهوم	link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط / يربط	shelter (n)	مأوى
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	local (adj)	محلي	social (adj)	اجتماعي
cultural (adj)	ثقافي	lucky (adj)	محظوظ	spin (n) (v) (ned)	دوران / يدور
diary (n)	مذكرات / يوميات	meaningfully (adv)	بشكل هادف	surprise (n) (v) (d)	مفاجأة / يفاجئ
dietary (adj)	غذائي	nearby (adj)	قريب / مجاور	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
difference (n)	فرق / اختلاف	practice (n) (v) (d)	تدريب / يمارس / يتدرب	trip (n)	رحلة
elderly (adj)	كبير السن	promise (n) (v) (d)	وعد / يوعد	welcome (n) (v) (d)	ترحيب / يرحب
emoji (n)	صورة تعبيرية	record (n) (v) (ed)	تسجيل / يسجل	well-fed (adj)	مُشبع / مُعتنى به
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	regard (n) (v) (ed)	تقدير / يُقدَّر / يعتبر	wheel (n)	عجلة

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I don't like the way the new boss talks to people; he tends to them as if they were children.
a) admire b) promise c) apologize d) patronize
- Children are often more in their reactions than adults—don't think about what they say.
a) serious b) strange c) spontaneous d) silent
- The language used in text messages is quite different from the writing used in newspaper reports.
a) formal b) informal c) traditional d) polite
- It was of him to interrupt her constantly during the presentation.
a) rude b) thoughtful c) spontaneous d) meaningful
- One small change in your daily habits can make a huge in your health.
a) discovery b) difference c) signal d) habit
- The scientist kept a detailed of all the experiments in a special notebook.
a) recipe b) practice c) record d) reminder

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

a one-on-one act فعل فردي / بين شخصين	for free مجاناً	in contrast على النقيض
(be) extended to everyone يُقَدَّم للجميع / يُمدَّد للجميع	for instance على سبيل المثال	in order مرتب / بالترتيب
feel comfortable يشعر بالراحة	go to great lengths يذهب إلى حدود بعيدة	on a specific event في / بمناسبة محددة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

based on مبني / مرتكز على	difference between فرق / اختلاف بين	reason for سبب لـ
break down يتعطل / ينكسر	hear about يسمع عن	seen as يُنظر إليه على أنه
connect with يتواصل مع / يتصل بـ	linked to مرتبط بـ	touched by متأثر بـ
differ from يختلف عن	pay for يدفع ثمن ...	warm ... up يدفئ

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
appreciate يُقَدِّر / يقيم	appreciation تقدير / امتنان	appreciative مقدِّر
collectivize يُجمَع / يُشارك	collectivism الجماعية	collective جماعي collectivist اشتراكي
consider يُفَكِّر / يعتبر	consideration اعتبار / مراعاة	considerate مُراعٍ للآخرين considerable ملحوظ / كبير
differentiate يُمَيِّز / يُفَرِّق	difference اختلاف / فرق differentiation تمايز / تمييز	different مختلف differential متفاوت
individualize يُفَرِّد / يُخصِّص	individuality الفردية	individual فردى individualistic رأسمالي
link يُرْبِط / يُوصل	link رابط / صلة	linked مرتبط
patronize يرعى / يتكبر	patronage رعاية / كفالة patron راع / عميل دائم	patronizing متعالٍ
regard يُقَدِّر / يُعْتَبِر	regard اعتبار / تقدير regards تحيات	regarded مُعتبر
-----	spontaneity العفوية	spontaneous تلقائي
surprise يُفاجئ / يدهش	surprise مفاجأة	surprising مفاجئ surprised متفاجئ

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

I will **consider** your proposal and get back to you with a decision. (v)

The safety of the passengers was the top **consideration** for the airline during the crisis. (n)

She was a **considerate** host, making sure all her guests had enough to eat and drink. (adj)

The new policy has made a **considerable** difference in reducing traffic congestion in the city. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
appreciate	يقدر	value/admire		belittle/disregard	يستهين / يتجاهل
collectivist	جماعي / اشتراكي	cooperative/socialist		individualistic/selfish	رأسمالي / أناني
consider	ينظر / يعتبر	think about/reflect on		ignore/overlook	يتجاهل / يغفل عن
formal	رسمي	official/structured		informal/casual	غير رسمي / عادي
meaningfully	بشكل هادف	significantly/substantially		superficially/insignificantly	بشكل سطحي / بشكل غير مهم
regard	يعتبر / يحترم	consider/respect		disregard/ignore	يتجاهل / يهمل
spontaneous	تلقائي	instinctive/unplanned		planned/deliberate	مخطط / متعمد
surprise	يفاجئ	astonish/amaze		anticipate/predict	يتوقع / يتنبأ
welcome	يرحب	greet/receive		reject/dismiss	يرفض / يهمل
well-fed	مشبع	nourished/full		hungry/malnourished	جائع / يعاني من سوء التغذية

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Some students don't comfortable speaking English in front of the class because they are shy.
a) feel b) make c) think d) react
- You can download this English learning app; you don't need to pay anything.
a) for fun b) for free c) for sure d) for long
- The company will hold a special to market their new Gem books.
a) accident b) journey c) event d) minute
- I first heard that charity organization from my cousin who volunteered there.
a) for b) from c) at d) about
- The reason our visit to the museum was to learn about ancient Egyptian history.
a) on b) of c) for d) with
- The audience clapped loudly in of the singer's wonderful performance.
a) appreciated b) appreciation c) appreciative d) appreciatively
- The formal meeting included a strict agenda and procedures. The synonym of the adjective "formal" is ".....".
a) official b) unproven c) relaxed d) casual
- The teacher asked questions meaningfully to help students think deeply about the topic. The antonym of the adverb "meaningfully" is ".....".
a) substantially b) insignificantly c) really d) hopelessly

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Welcoming Strangers

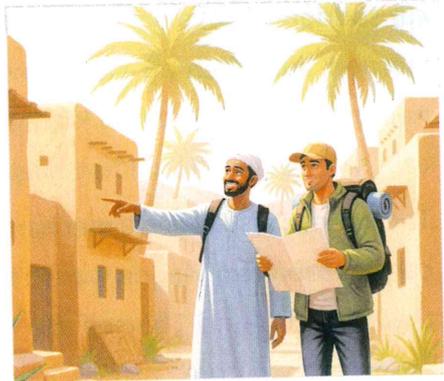
Hospitality and kindness are values that are appreciated around the world, but the way they are expressed can be quite different. These differences are often linked to a country's history, social customs, and even climate.

In many **individualistic**⁽¹⁾ countries, like the United States, hospitality is often planned on a specific event, such as a dinner party. Here, guests might be expected to pay for their own meals at a restaurant, as paying for someone can be seen as **patronizing**⁽²⁾. Kindness is often a one-on-one act shown to friends and family.

In contrast, in **collectivist**⁽³⁾ societies, such as those in parts of Africa, hospitality is a way of life. It's a **spontaneous**⁽⁴⁾, generous gesture that is extended to everyone, including strangers. Hosts often go to great lengths to make sure guests feel comfortable and are well-fed, and refusing food can be considered impolite.

Food and drink are key parts of this generosity. In Morocco, for instance, refusing a host's offer of mint tea is seen as rude. Similarly, in many cultures, finishing all the food on your plate shows that you enjoyed the meal.

Understanding these cultural differences is important for anyone traveling or meeting people from other countries. Being aware of these different customs helps us show respect and connect with others more meaningfully.



- (1) فردى / رأسمالي (2) تعالي / تكبير
(3) جماعي / اشتراكي (4) عفوى / تلقائي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In individualistic countries like the United States, hospitality is often
 - planned on a specific event, such as a dinner party
 - a spontaneous gesture to strangers
 - shown through generous gift-giving
 - extended to everyone in the community
- In collectivist societies, hosts often go to great lengths to
 - make sure guests pay for their meals
 - ensure guests feel uncomfortable
 - make sure guests feel comfortable and are well-fed
 - avoid interacting with strangers
- What might be considered impolite in some cultures?
 - Finishing all the food on your plate.
 - Refusing food offered by a host.
 - Paying for someone's meal.
 - Showing kindness to strangers.
- Why is understanding cultural differences in hospitality important?
 - So, we can criticize others' customs.
 - So, we can avoid interacting with people from other cultures.
 - So, we can impose our customs on others.
 - So, we can show respect and connect with others more meaningfully.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



One cold winter evening, Magda was driving home when her car suddenly broke down near a small village. She felt lost and worried. Just then an elderly woman walked by and noticed her problem. The woman kindly invited Magda into a **nearby**⁽¹⁾ cafe, where she offered hot soup and tea to warm her up.



The woman also called a mechanic, and within an hour, Magda's car was repaired. Magda was so touched by this act of kindness that she **promised**⁽²⁾ herself she would do something similar for others in the future.

Months later, she opened a small **shelter**⁽³⁾ where travelers could find food and rest **for free**⁽⁴⁾. Magda often tells her story, saying, kindness is a gift that should be shared, wherever you are.

(1) قريب

(2) وعد

(3) مأوى

(4) مجاناً

Definitions

التعريفات

collectivist	جماعي / اشتراكي	connected with the political system in which all farms, businesses, and industries are owned by the state or by all the people
individualistic	فردى / يميل إلى الاستقلالية	connected with the belief that individual people in society should have the right to make their own decisions, etc., rather than be controlled by the government
patronize	يتعالى على / يتكبر على	to treat somebody in a way that seems friendly, but which shows that you think that they are not very rich, intelligent, or experienced
spontaneous	عفوى / تلقائى	not planned but done because you suddenly want to do it

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	appreciate	يقدر (يعتبره شيئاً جيداً أو هاماً)	My abilities are not fully appreciated by my employer.
	estimate	يقدر (يقيم كمية أو عددًا)	The tree is estimated to be at least 700 years old.
2	diary	يوميات / مذكرات (لتسجيل أحداث أو آراء)	I've written the date of the party down in my diary .
	journal	١- دورية (يوميات يكتبها شخص هام) ٢- دورية (مجلة علمية متخصصة)	The university library buys a copy of all the major science journals .
	blog	مدونة (مذكرات أو تسجيل آراء على الإنترنت)	The chef has a food blog in which she shares recipes, tips, and restaurant reviews.

habit

عادة (سلوك شخصي متكرر)

Biting his nails is a bad **habit** he can't break.

tradition

تقليد / عُرْف (معتقد أو سلوك ينتقل عبر الأجيال يعبر عن هوية جماعية)

Celebrating Eid is a beloved **tradition** for Muslims.

custom

عادة (اجتماعية أو جماعية) طريقة تقليدية للتصرف أو القيام بشيء شائع في مجتمع أو مكان أو مجموعة معينة

It is a local **custom** to serve tea to all visitors immediately after they arrive.

review

١- مُرَاجَعَة / اِسْتِغْرَاض (فحص أو دراسة شيء ما مرة أخرى لفهمه أو تقييمه ، غالبًا دون إجراء تغييرات)
٢- مقال / رأي نقدي

The company conducted a security **review** of their computer systems.

The restaurant received excellent **reviews** from customers on the online platform.

revision

مُراجَعَة / تَضْجِيح (عملية إجراء تغييرات أو تحسينات على شيء ما بناءً على المراجعة)

The document needs **revision** to correct the errors.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- means to be connected with the political system in which all farms, businesses, and industries are owned by the state or by all the people.
 - Cultural
 - Dietary
 - Collectivist
 - Individualistic
- is to treat somebody in a way that seems friendly, but which shows that you think that they are not very rich, intelligent, or experienced.
 - Patronize
 - Review
 - Record
 - Cure
- We that the new mission will take at least two weeks.
 - appreciate
 - estimate
 - indicate
 - subtract
- Medical professionals read articles in medical to stay updated on new treatments.
 - textbooks
 - newspapers
 - magazines
 - journals
- The critic wrote a positive of the new movie in the newspaper.
 - review
 - signal
 - revision
 - note
- Reading before bed is a good that helps her fall asleep easily.
 - training
 - tradition
 - habit
 - custom

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. In a/an society, people care more about the needs of the group than about themselves.
a) modern b) collectivist c) creative d) individualistic
2. Most Western countries are more, focusing on personal goals and independence.
a) collectivist b) traditional c) individualistic d) generous
3. After the earthquake, the villagers offered to families who lost their homes.
a) medicine b) link c) connection d) shelter
4. Learning the of teamwork is essential for students working on group projects.
a) skill b) ability c) concept d) experience
5. There is a/an hospital just five minutes away from the school so the ambulance carried the ill student there.
a) distant b) nearby c) traditional d) alien
6. When the minister arrived at the hotel, the manager came out to personally him.
a) regard b) lecture c) promise d) welcome
7. Following guidelines helped her lose weight and feel healthier.
a) dietary b) educational c) formal d) tourist
8. A/An is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites in order to express a particular idea or feeling.
a) picture b) emoji c) number d) blog
9. You should always use language when speaking to your teachers or bosses.
a) normal b) expressive c) formal d) informal
10. The shopping website welcomes and any new ideas and suggestions to improve it.
a) denies b) neglects c) calculates d) appreciates
11. The unexpected gift was a wonderful for Kenzy's birthday celebration.
a) surprise b) incident c) skill d) event
12. Many people prefer buying products because they're fresher and support nearby farmers.
a) global b) national c) local d) international
13. The new coach is highly by his players for his fairness and honesty.
a) linked b) regarded c) looked d) estimated
14. The farmer made sure that all his animals were and healthy.
a) well-known b) well-paid c) well-done d) well-fed
15. My grandfather used to read the newspaper while drinking his coffee every morning.
a) elderly b) expected c) daily d) dietary
16. Before the effects of global warming, Egypt's used to be mild all the year round.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) space
17. It is standard medical in Egypt to get signed permission from the patient or his guardians before an operation.
a) practice b) ethic c) training d) value

18. The doctor said that the natural vitamins in the shampoo will help her damaged hair.
 a) appear b) display c) power d) repair
19. The young woman her cousin's offer of marriage very seriously, but in the end, she said no.
 a) neglected b) considered c) inspected d) regarded
20. The woman sat on the bench, enjoying the warm sunshine in the park.
 a) elderly b) teenage c) invisible d) active
21. The famous journalist writes movie for the entertainment magazine every month.
 a) animations b) revisions c) talents d) reviews
22. The new trade agreement aims to establish a stronger between the two countries.
 a) link b) space c) sign d) clash
23. You can spend your free time more by volunteering or learning new skills.
 a) deliberately b) happily c) meaningfully d) wrongly
24. Donating to charity is a great way to make a/an in the community you live in.
 a) reply b) effect c) concept d) difference
25. My best friend to call me as soon as she arrived home.
 a) promised b) respected c) regarded d) reminded

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

26. Some students enjoy studying alone., others prefer working in groups.
 a) In contrast b) In turn c) Furthermore d) Instead of
27. The police asked the suspect to describe the events of the day and with details.
 a) in progress b) in clear c) in advance d) in order
28. The bride to great lengths to ensure that every detail of the wedding was perfect.
 a) made b) went c) followed d) gave
29. The decision was based the company's financial situation and market research.
 a) at b) in c) on d) by
30. The new model of the smartphone differs the old one in several important ways.
 a) from b) at c) on d) with
31. Doctors try to differentiate between similar diseases to provide the correct treatment. The noun of the verb "differentiate" is ".....".
 a) differed b) differentiation c) different d) difference
32. The audience's spontaneous laughter made the actor smile proudly. The adjective "spontaneous" is similar in meaning to ".....".
 a) unplanned b) formal c) central d) deliberate
33. I really appreciate the time you took to explain that to me. The opposite of the verb "appreciate" is ".....".
 a) value b) respect c) promise d) disregard
34. The news of the school trip surprised all the students in the class. The synonym of the verb "surprise" is ".....".
 a) astonish b) condemn c) fear d) predict
35. The family welcomed their guests with warm smiles and fresh juice. The antonym of the verb "welcome" is ".....".
 a) greet b) record c) dismiss d) consider

B Language

Important notes

نقاط هامة

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

- 1 إذا حل ضمير الوصل محل مفعول به في الجمل التي تحتوي على **defining relative clauses**.
The flat was very expensive. They bought it.
 The flat (**which/that**) they bought was very expensive.
The man has just come into the room. You were talking about **him**.
 The man (**who/whom/that**) you were talking about has just come into the room.
- 2 إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول فنحذف **which/who/that + v. to be** ونضع P.P.:
 I still remember the encouragement **given** to me by my parents. (**which was given**)
- 3 إذا كان بعده مبنى للمعلوم في المضارع البسيط أو المستمر فنحذف **which/ who** ونضع **v+ing**:
 The boy **sitting** beside me is naughty. (**who sits/who is sitting**)
- 4 إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف **who/ which + v. to be** ولا نضع شيئاً:
 Mohamed Salah, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (**who is**)
- 5 يمكن حذف **when** كضمير وصل كالاتي:
 I remember the day **when** I met him. - I remember the day I met him.

لاحظ

- لا يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان محل الفاعل.
- لا يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان مفعولاً في الجمل التي تحتوي على **non-defining clauses**.
- I always remember Osama, **who** I go to school with.
 - I always remember Osama, I go to school with.
- لا يمكن حذف **where/ whose**
- That's the restaurant **where** I work. - That's the author **whose** books I read.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The man that bus is my brother.
 a) that driving b) whom drives c) who driving d) driving
2. People stealing are imprisoned.
 a) caught b) who caught c) who catch d) who are catching
3. The man on the train last week was an old classmate.
 a) whose meeting b) meeting c) I met d) who met
4. I really like the laptop a remarkably long battery life.
 a) has b) that has c) had d) which is having
5. The summer across Europe was the best of my life.
 a) I traveled then b) when traveled c) traveling d) I traveled

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The jacket was left on the chair. I bought it last week. (The jacket I ...)
2. The information recorded by the team was crucial. (which)
3. The student waiting outside the office needs help. (who)
4. London, the capital of the UK, is a global financial center. (which)
5. I'll never forget the year we first met. (when)

Extra points

نقاط إضافية

1 تستخدم **what** كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهي تساوي **the thing (s) that**:



I didn't understand **what** he had said. (what had been said).
I can't give him (Ahmed) **what** he needs.

يمكن أن تكون **what** أول الكلام:

What makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

2 تستخدم **whose** بدلاً من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:

The girl **with blue** eyes is my sister. → The girl **whose** eyes are blue is my sister.
The man is rich. **He has** a red car. → The man **whose** car is red is rich.
The car won the race. **Its** color is red. → The car **whose** color is red won the race.

3 لاحظ استخدام مصطلح **...it's he/ she/ they who**:

It's **he who** believes in magic.

4 لاحظ الفرق بين **whose/ who's**

who's + v + ing/ noun = who is

who's + P.P. = who has ...

The boy **who's running** there is my cousin.

The boy **whose phone** was stolen was furious.

5 هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق **whose** مثل:

Word	Verb	Noun	Word	Verb	Noun
change	يغير	تعديل / فكة	interest	يهم	اهتمام
comfort	يريح	راحة	mistake	يخطئ	خطأ
control	يتحكم	تحكم	need	يحتاج	احتياج
copy	ينسخ	نسخة	offer	يعرض	عرض
cure	يعالج	علاج	play	يلعب	مسرحية / لعبة
dream	يحلم	حلم	promise	يعد	وعد
dress	يلبس	لباس	smell	يشم	رائحة
drink	يشرب	مشروب	smoke	يدخن	دخان
drive	يقود	قيادة	stay	يبقى / يقيم	إقامة
email	يراسل إلكترونياً	بريد إلكتروني	struggle	يكافح	كفاح
end	ينتهي	نهاية	surprise	يفاجئ	مفاجأة
fight	يتعارك	قتال	visit	يزور	زيارة
function	يشتغل	وظيفة	walk	يمشى	مسيرة / تمشية
hand	يسلم	يد	watch	يشاهد	ساعة يد
hope	يأمل	أمل	work	يعمل	عمل / صناعة
influence	يؤثر	تأثير	worry	يقلق	قلق

I like the stories **whose ends** are happy.

6 نستخدم **that** بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

all – any (thing) – every (thing) – few – little – many – much – no (thing) – none – some (thing)

Is this all **that** you want me to do?

There isn't anything **that** we can eat in this house.

This is the best book **that** I have ever read.

7 يمكن استخدام (**why/ for which**) كضمير وصل بعد كلمة **the reason** كالآتي:

I'd like to know the reason **why (for which)** he decided not to come.

أو يمكن أن تُستخدم بعد فعل بمعناها (لماذا) كرابط وبعدها الفاعل مثل:

I don't know **why** he always comes late.

واليك ملخص لضمائر الوصل

Pronoun	Used for محل	Used as تستخدم بدلاً من			
		Subject	Object	Defining	Non-defining
who	people	✓	✓	✓	✓
whom	people	✗	✓	✓	✓
which	objects, animals	✓	✓	✓	✓
that	people, objects, animals	✓	✓	✓	✗
whose	relationships, possessions	✓	✓	✓	✓
where	places	✓	✓	✓	✓
when	times	✓	✓	✓	✓
why	reasons	✓	✓	✓	✓
what	objects, ideas (means the thing(s) that)	✓	✓	✓	✗
no pronoun	people, things, animals	✗	✓	✓	✗

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I didn't buy anything because I didn't find I wanted.
a) which b) what c) that d) when
- My cousin, thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.
a) that b) whose c) who d) who's
- he says is really logical; you should trust him.
a) What b) Which c) What's d) Whose
- Is that all you want to discuss?
a) what b) that c) why d) which
- I still don't understand the bus was so late this morning.
a) when b) that c) what d) why

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- The machine, that makes our coffee, is broken. (.....)
- Tell me which you found. (.....)
- I spoke to the architect who designs won the award. (.....)
- She had everything what she wanted to make her happy. (.....)
- I need to know the reason what he left early. (.....)

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My old, reliable car, last year, is admired by all my friends.
 a) I bought b) I bought it c) which I bought it d) which I bought
2. The thrilling book last night was truly fascinating.
 a) reading b) that I read it c) I read d) I read it
3. The priceless artifact from the museum was finally found by the police.
 a) stolen b) stealing c) was stolen d) which stolen
4. The kind, smiling woman at us from the balcony is my beloved sister.
 a) waved b) waving c) she waves d) whom she waves
5. you said yesterday really made me think about the situation.
 a) What b) The thing that c) Which d) Both a and b
6. The teacher usually punishes the boys noise inside the classroom.
 a) making b) made c) is making d) who are made
7. The runner leading the race is from Kenya.
 a) he is b) whose c) who's d) who has
8. It was the most exciting movie I've seen all year.
 a) what b) that c) when d) where
9. The manager explained the reason the meeting was canceled.
 a) why b) what c) for d) when
10. The road the two villages is very narrow.
 a) joined b) joining c) which is joined d) who is joining
11. Why do you blame me for everything goes wrong?
 a) which b) who c) that d) what
12. I didn't hear because there was so much noise where I was sitting.
 a) what was he saying b) what said c) what did he say d) what he said
13. The movie to see is on TV tonight.
 a) which I've always wanted b) which I've always wanted it
 c) has always wanted d) I've always wanted it
14. That house, was sold yesterday, is 200 years old.
 a) that b) whose c) where d) which
15. The total cost, all taxes and fees, is 5000 pounds.
 a) included b) includes
 c) which includes d) which was included
16. The furniture by this company is tasteful and lasts for a long time.
 a) which made b) made c) is made d) which making
17. Heba lost the book her last month.
 a) which I lent it b) which lent c) who lent d) I lent
18. The mobile phones in China are sold in a lot of countries all over the world.
 a) producing b) are produced c) produced d) which produced
19. A stamp is something on a letter if you want to send it.
 a) you put b) you put it c) which you put it d) putting
20. A calendar is something you the date.
 a) it tells b) tells c) which it tells d) that tells

21. Show me you've got in your hand.
 a) which b) what c) who's d) that
22. The letter by the manager was important.
 a) writing b) wrote c) written d) which writing
23. The flat is overlooking the Nile.
 a) he bought b) which he bought it c) he bought it d) he buying
24. No one knew exactly happened to cause that terrible accident.
 a) which b) who c) whom d) what
25. The man this luxurious house is very modest.
 a) owning b) owns c) who is owned d) owned
26. My teacher is a person
 a) who everybody likes him b) everybody likes him
 c) everybody likes d) that everybody likes him
27. I work for a company
 a) what exports clothes b) exporting clothes
 c) whose exports clothes d) exports clothes
28. The reason for I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.
 a) where b) whose c) why d) which
29. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
 a) Look! That's the boy the teacher punished.
 b) Look! That's the boy who the teacher punished.
 c) Look! That's the boy punishing by the teacher.
 d) Look! That's the boy punished by the teacher.
30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
 a) The jacket, which I bought yesterday, is fashionable.
 b) The jacket which I bought it yesterday is fashionable.
 c) The jacket, which is fashionable, bought yesterday.
 d) The jacket, that I bought yesterday, is fashionable.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Sham El-Nessim is a day. It marks the beginning of spring. (which)

2. The dog barked. It saw itself in the mirror. (when)

3. He said something. She couldn't understand it. (what)

4. The temple of Karnak has many tall pillars. It was built over 1,000 years ago. (whose)

5. Ola organized the entire event. (It)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. My best friend, that I trust completely, is moving away. (.....)
 2. The village which I grew up is very small. (.....)
 3. Tell me the thing what you found. (.....)
 4. The driver whose shouting is in a hurry. (.....)
 5. We saw a play its end was very dramatic. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Some rich people others by acting as if they know everything.
a) praise b) patronize c) review d) trust
2. It was a decision to go to the beach; we didn't plan it at all.
a) difficult b) usual c) risky d) spontaneous
3. Sitting in the outdoor, the old friends enjoyed music and watched people passing by.
a) directory b) airport c) café d) library
4. The city of New York holds many festivals to celebrate traditions from different countries.
a) cultural b) local c) daily d) linked
5. I told Mr. Reda not to me to finish the work today—I need at least two more days.
a) regard b) expect c) promise d) consider
6. Medical professionals must all patient information in the hospital database.
a) treat b) regard c) record d) welcome
7. The cows on that farm are always well-fed because they eat green grass every day. The synonym of the word "well-fed" is ".....".
a) hungry b) instinctive c) planned d) nourished
8. I feel really to have parents who always support me.
a) surprised b) derived c) lucky d) lonely
9. The invitation said the party would be, so jeans were fine.
a) informal b) formal c) traditional d) private
10. It became a/an for me to check my messages before sleeping.
a) issue b) habit c) cause d) custom
11. It's considered to use your phone while someone is talking to you.
a) nearby b) supportive c) brave d) rude
12. The teacher encourages students to join activities like clubs and school events.
a) academic b) personal c) social d) considerate
13. The gymnast performed an impressive on the balance beam عارضة التوازن.
a) spin b) salute c) joke d) orbit
14. My grandmother loves cooking dishes that she learned from her mother.
a) social b) traditional c) updated d) foreign
15. Our to Luxor was unforgettable; we saw many ancient temples and enjoyed our time as well.
a) research b) task c) mission d) trip
16. The car's got stuck in the mud after the heavy rain.
a) seat b) wheel c) accessory d) engine
17. A is a book in which you can write down the experiences you have each day, your private thoughts.
a) blog b) dairy c) diary d) result
18. The free health service will be to everyone in Egypt, not just the capital residents.
a) limited b) stopped c) delayed d) extended
19. There are many ways to help the environment;, we can recycle or plant trees.
a) for instance b) instead c) in addition d) nevertheless
20. The poor student had to work all summer to pay his school fees.
a) on b) for c) at d) about

Language

21. I can't repeat all the chat. I won't tell you they said.
 a) who b) which c) that d) what
22. The old castle, walls are very high, is a popular tourist spot.
 a) whose b) which c) who's d) what
23. My car is getting old, is why I'm saving up for a new one.
 a) who b) which c) that d) when
24. The student didn't study hard, his teacher gave him a low mark.
 a) which b) on which c) for which d) to which
25. The library, I spend most of my time, is very quiet.
 a) on which b) in where c) which d) where
26. She has a dog is always jumping on the furniture.
 a) whom b) that c) whose d) where
27. The team's victory, brought great joy to the fans, was well-deserved.
 a) which b) who c) that d) when
28. We stayed at the Grand Hotel, interior decoration was breathtaking.
 a) that b) whom c) whose d) who
29. He made a comment, I strongly disagreed.
 a) with which b) by which c) for which d) of which
30. I need to decide shirt to wear; the red one or the blue one.
 a) that b) what c) whose d) which
31. The hotel manager prepared rooms for the tourists from Italy to explore the Pyramids.
 a) come b) who coming c) coming d) came
32. The book on the table belongs to my sister.
 a) lies b) which lying c) lying d) it lies
33. The money in the safe must not be touched.
 a) was kept b) which kept c) was keeping d) kept
34. That is the only thing matters right now.
 a) who b) which c) that d) whose
35. Our kid, our hope for the future, is learning quickly.
 a) whose b) who c) who's d) that
36. The politician, by a large crowd, gave a passionate speech.
 a) surrounded b) surrounding c) who surrounded d) he is surrounded
37. The vase on the shelf is a rare antique.
 a) stood b) it stands c) stands d) standing
38. He committed a serious crime, he was sentenced to three years in prison.
 a) which b) on which c) for which d) to which
39. There's nothing she won't do for her children.
 a) that b) which c) whose d) who
40. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
 a) This is the dress my mother has made for me.
 b) This is the dress which my mother has made for me.
 c) This is the dress who my mother has made for me.
 d) This is the dress that my mother has made for me.



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

How to Write a Diary Entry

What is a Diary?

A diary is a personal record where you write about your day, feelings, thoughts, or something important that happened to you.

دفتر اليوميات هو سجل شخصي تكتب فيه عن يومك، مشاعرك، أفكارك، أو شيء مهم حدث لك.

Basic Structure of a Diary Entry

Part	What to Write
1. Date	Write the date at the top. i.e.: Thursday, October 10, 2025
2. Greeting	Start with Dear Diary,
3. Introduction	Write a sentence or two about how your day started or how you felt.
4. Main Events	Talk about what happened during the day. Use past tense.
5. Feelings and Reactions	Write how you felt and why.
6. Closing	End with a hope, thought, or summary. Example: I hope tomorrow will be better.
7. Signature	Sign with Goodnight, Diary or — Me

Helpful Tips:

- Use **past tense** because you're writing about things that already happened.
- Be **honest and natural** — it's your personal space.
- Add **details** like names, places, what people said, and your exact thoughts.
- Use emotional expressions like:
- I was so excited! – It was the worst part of my day. – I felt so proud.

Writing Task

- Write your own diary entry. Imagine you are a traveler who received unexpected kindness from a local person during a trip. Write a diary entry (5-6 sentences) about what happened. Use these questions to help you:

- Where were you?
- What problem did you have?
- Who helped you?
- What did they do?
- How did you feel?

Note the following:

Use sentence starters and collocations to express feelings such as gratitude, surprise, and appreciation.

Gratitude:

للتعبير عن الامتنان

- I felt truly grateful for ...
- I can't thank them enough for ...
- I really appreciated their help.
- I was so thankful they were there.
- It meant a lot to me.

Surprise:

للتعبير عن الدهشة

- To my surprise,...
- I didn't expect that at all.
- I was amazed by...
- It was completely unexpected.
- I couldn't believe how kind they were.

Appreciation:

للتعبير عن التقدير

- I truly appreciated their kindness.
- Their hospitality was unforgettable.
- I was touched by their generosity.
- I'll always remember what they did for me.
- It was a small act, but it meant the world to me.

A model diary entry

Dear Diary,

To my surprise, today I **met** a local family when I was lost at the bus station. I never expected such kindness from strangers. They **helped me find my way** and even invited me to their home. I **had the chance to stay** with them for the night, which was completely unexpected. They were **incredibly kind and welcoming**—they made me food and smiled the whole time. I **felt deeply grateful** for their generosity. These moments make me truly **appreciate the kindness of people** I meet during my travels.

تطبيق الأضواء

محتواك الرقمي مجاناً مع الكتاب:
امسح الكود الشخصي بالغلاف الداخلي في
نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة
الرقمي من تطبيق الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة
في قطع الفهم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being a good host or guest is all about politeness, kindness, and making people feel welcome. This is sometimes called hospitality. It doesn't need to be expensive or complicated; it just needs to be sincere and friendly.

When you invite someone to your home, a small effort goes a long way. Make sure your house is reasonably tidy, especially the areas where your guests will sit. Offer them something to drink—tea, coffee, or even just water. A simple snack, like biscuits or fruit, is a nice gesture too. The main idea is to show you've prepared for their visit and that you care about their comfort. Active listening is a very important part of hospitality. Put away your phone and look at the person when they talk to make them feel at home. Ask friendly questions about their life or interests. This shows respect and makes the conversation enjoyable.

If you are the guest, politeness is equally important. Always try to be on time. If you're going to be late, send a quick message to let your host know. A small gift is a lovely way to show your appreciation, like a box of chocolates or a small plant. During your visit, offer to help with small tasks, such as clearing the table or washing a dish. When it's time to leave, thank your host sincerely for their warmth and the good time you had.

Kindness and good manners create a relaxed and happy atmosphere. They help build strong friendships and make social gatherings much more pleasant for everyone. Remember, these simple acts of respect are the core of good hospitality, making both the host and the guest feel valued and appreciated.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What should a guest do if they are going to be late for a visit?
a) Just arrive late without saying anything. b) Call their host to complain about traffic.
c) Send a quick message to inform the host. d) Cancel the visit immediately.
2. According to the passage, what is a very important part of hospitality concerning conversation?
a) Telling long personal stories. b) Changing the subject often.
c) Active listening. d) Using complicated words.
3. Which sentence best summarizes the second paragraph?
a) Hosting requires a lot of money and a perfectly clean and well-prepared house.
b) Hosts should only offer drinks and snacks to their arriving guest.
c) Simple actions like tidiness, offering refreshments, and active listening make guests comfortable.
d) Guests should always check their phones during a visit to ensure good communication.
4. The underlined pronoun "They" in the last paragraph refers to
a) the strong friendships b) the host and the guest
c) kindness and good manners d) the social gatherings
5. What does the phrase "a small effort goes a long way" mean in the context of hosting?
a) It takes a very long time to prepare the house for your guests.
b) Even small, simple actions can have a big positive result.
c) Guests will not usually notice small efforts made by the hosts.
d) Hosts should try their best to avoid making any great effort.
6. Which is the most suitable title for this passage?
a) The historical background and context of social etiquette.
b) Practical advice on how to cook a meal for all of your guests.
c) The importance of politeness and excellent social hospitality.
d) Waiting for friends and family guests to finally arrive at your home.

7. How is the politeness required from a guest compared to that of a host in the passage?

- a) A guest's politeness is described as equally important to a host's.
- b) A host's politeness is less important than a guest's.
- c) A guest's politeness is only about being on time.
- d) The passage does not discuss the guest's politeness.

8. Which of these is NOT mentioned as a nice gesture for a guest to bring to a host?

- a) A box of chocolates.
- b) A small plant.
- c) An expensive piece of jewelry.
- d) A small gift.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People think children should play sports. Sports are fun, and children stay healthy while playing with others. However, playing sports can have negative effects on children. It may produce feelings of poor self-esteem or aggressive behavior in some children. According to research on kids and sports, 40 million kids play sports in the US. Of these, 18 million say they have been yelled at or called names while playing sports. This leaves many children with a bad impression of sports. They think sports are just too aggressive.

Many researchers believe adults, especially parents and coaches, are the main cause of too much aggression in children's sports. They believe children copy aggressive adult behavior. This behavior is then further reinforced through both positive and negative feedback. Parents and coaches are powerful teachers because children usually look up to them. Often these adults behave aggressively themselves, sending children the message that winning is everything. At children's sporting events, parents may yell insults at other players or cheer when their child behaves aggressively. As well, children may be taught that hurting other players is acceptable, or they may be pushed to continue playing even when they are injured. In addition, the media makes violence seem exciting. Children watch adult sports games and see violent behavior replayed over and over on television.

As a society, we really need to face up to this problem and do something about it. Parents and coaches should act as better examples for children. They also need to teach children better values. They should teach children to enjoy themselves whether they win or not. It is not necessary to knock yourself out to enjoy sports. Winning is not everything. In addition, children should not be allowed to continue to play when they are injured. Sending a child with an injury into a game gives the child the message that health is not as important as winning. If we make some basic changes, children might learn to enjoy sports again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is one benefit of sports for children?

- a) It helps them with homework.
- b) It makes them hate losing.
- c) It teaches them to avoid others.
- d) It keeps them healthy.

2. What does the media do that influences children negatively?

- a) Shows only peaceful games.
- b) Tells children to stop playing sports.
- c) Replays violent moments in sports.
- d) Talks badly about children.

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

- a) Sports can harm children if not handled properly.
- b) Children are too aggressive to do sports.
- c) Sports are good for everyone except children.
- d) Children should not play sports at all.

4. What might a child feel if they are forced to play while injured?

- a) Injuries are fun.
- b) Health is not important.
- c) Coaches care too much.
- d) They should cry to stop the game.

5. What can we understand about children's view of sports after negative experiences?

- a) They want to play more.
- b) They feel proud of sports.
- c) They see sports as too aggressive.
- d) They think all coaches are strong.

6. What message do parents give when they cheer aggressive behavior?
- a) Respect is important. b) Safety is first.
c) Fun is more important than winning. d) Winning is all that matters.
7. What does the pronoun "They" refer to in: "They also need to teach children better values.?"
- a) Teachers. b) Parents and coaches.
c) Sports. d) Schools.
8. What can we guess the writer believes about winning?
- a) Winning is important, but not everything. b) Winning is the only goal in individual sports.
c) Winning should always come first. d) Winning is not allowed.

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. In Egypt, hospitality is deeply rooted in the culture. A guest is considered a blessing, and it is common to offer him food and drink as a sign of welcome.

- (a) في مصر، العطف عميق الجذور في الثقافة. الضيف يعتبر نعمة، ومن الشائع أن نقدم له الطعام والشراب كعلامة ترحيب.
(b) في مصر، كرم الضيافة عميق الجذور في الثقافة. الضيف يعتبر بركة، ومن الشائع تقديم الطعام والشراب له كعلامة ترحيب.
(c) في مصر، كرم الضيافة جزء من التقاليد. الضيف يعتبر مسئولية، ومن المعتاد تقديم الهدايا والشراب له كعلامة ترحيب.
(d) في مصر، كرم الضيافة مفهوم في الثقافة. الضيف يعتبر متعة، ومن الشائع تقديم الطعام والشراب له كعلامة ترحيب.

2. The Grand Egyptian Museum is one of the most important cultural projects in the world. It has been designed to showcase the full spectrum of ancient Egyptian civilization and houses the complete collection of King Tutankhamun.

- (a) المتحف المصري الكبير هو واحد من أهم المشروعات الثقافية في العالم. لقد تم تصميمه لعرض مجموعة كاملة من الحضارة المصرية القديمة كما يضم مجموعة الملك توت عنخ آمون بالكامل.
(b) المتحف المصري الكبير هو واحد من أهم المشروعات العلمية في العالم. لقد تم تصميمه لعرض مجموعة كاملة من الحضارة المصرية القديمة كما يستثنى مجموعة الملك توت عنخ آمون بالكامل.
(c) المتحف المصري الكبير هو واحد من أهم المشروعات الاجتماعية في العالم. لقد تم تصميمه لعرض مجموعة مختصرة من الحضارة المصرية القديمة كما يضم مجموعة الملك توت عنخ آمون بالكامل.
(d) المتحف المصري الكبير هو واحد من أهم المشروعات الثقافية في العالم. لقد تم تصميمه لعرض مجموعة كاملة من الثقافة المصرية القديمة كما يستثنى مجموعة الملك توت عنخ آمون بالكامل.

3. Egypt plays a vital role in the Middle East due to its political influence and cultural heritage. It continues to develop in areas like education, tourism, and infrastructure.

- (a) تلعب مصر دورًا بسيطًا في الشرق الأوسط بالرغم من تأثيرها السياسي وتراثها العلمي. وتواصل التقدم في مجالات مثل التعليم، والسياحة، والبنية التحتية.
(b) تلعب مصر دورًا محوريًا في الشرق الأوسط بسبب تأثيرها الاقتصادي وتراثها الثقافي. وتواصل التقدم في مجالات مثل التعليم، والسياحة، والبنية التحتية.
(c) تلعب مصر دورًا محوريًا في الشرق الأقصى بسبب تأثيرها السياسي وميراثها الثقافي. وتواصل التقدم في مجالات مثل التعليم، والسياحة، والبنية التحتية.
(d) تلعب مصر دورًا محوريًا في الشرق الأوسط بسبب تأثيرها السياسي وتراثها الثقافي. وتواصل التقدم في مجالات مثل التعليم، والسياحة، والبنية التحتية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. التسامح والتفاهم بين الناس في المجتمع هما أساس بناء عالم يسوده السلام. فعندما نحترم اختلافاتنا، نخلق بيئة يعمها التعاون والاحترام.

- a) Tolerance and understanding between people in society are the organization for building a world dominated by peace. When we respect our differences, we create an environment full of competition and respect.
b) Tolerance and dialog between people in society are the main reason for building a peaceful world. When we ignore our differences, we create an environment of competition and respect.
c) Tolerance and understanding between people in society are the basis for building a world filled with peace. When we respect our differences, we create an environment filled with cooperation and respect.
d) Tolerance and understanding among community members are the cornerstone for a world of peace. If we accept our similarities, we create an atmosphere of corporation and respect.

5. على الرغم من فوائدها، فإن التكنولوجيا الحديثة تُضعف العلاقات الإنسانية. يقضي الكثير من الناس وقتاً أطول في التواصل الافتراضي مما يقضونه في التفاعل وجهاً لوجه، مما يؤدي إلى الشعور بالعزلة.

- Despite its benefits, modern technology strengthens human relationships. Many people spend equal time in virtual communication and face-to-face interaction, leading to a sense of community.
- Despite its problems, modern technology improves human relationships. Many people spend more time in virtual communication than they do in face-to-face interaction, leading to a sense of connection.
- Despite its benefits, modern technology complicates human relationships. Many people spend less time in virtual communication than they do in face-to-face interaction, leading to a sense of isolation.
- Despite its benefits, modern technology weakens human relationships. Many people spend more time in virtual communication than they do in face-to-face interaction, leading to a sense of isolation.

6. يُعد كرم الضيافة من الصفات الجميلة التي تعبر عن الاحترام والتقدير للضيف. في كثير من الثقافات، يُنظر إلى الضيافة على أنها واجب، وفرصة لإظهار الطيبة والكرم.

- Hospitality is a beautiful trait that reflects respect and appreciation for guests. In many cultures, it is seen as a duty and a chance to show kindness and generosity.
- Hospitality is a beautiful trait that requires respect and appreciation for guests. In many cultures, it is seen as a right and a chance to show kindness and generosity.
- Hospitality is a beautiful trait that reflects generosity and appreciation for guests. In many cultures, it is seen as a duty and a chance to show kindness and love.
- Hospitality is a beautiful trait that reflects respect and appreciation for hosts. In many countries, it is seen as a duty and a chance to show kindness and generosity.

(c) Writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- I bought apples, oranges, and bananas: but I forgot to buy milk.
- I bought apples, oranges, and bananas, but I forgot to buy milk.
- I bought apples, oranges and bananas but I forgot to buy milk.
- I bought apples, oranges, and bananas—but I forgot to buy milk.

2. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- She said "I'll be there in five minutes" and hung up the phone.
- She said, "I'll be there in five minutes" and hung up the phone.
- She said "I'll be there in five minutes," and hung up the phone.
- She said, "I'll be there in five minutes," and hung up the phone.

3. What is the correct tense usually used in diary writing?

- Past tense.
- Present simple.
- Future tense.
- Present perfect continuous.

4. Which sentence best shows gratitude in a diary?

- I was tired and bored.
- I didn't like the weather.
- I felt truly grateful for their help.
- I wish I stayed at home.

5. Which of the following is a good closing line for a diary entry?

- Thank you for listening.
- That's all for today. Good night!
- Yours faithfully,
- Sincerely yours,

5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

A diary about "A secret I've never told anyone."

Enrich your vocabulary

showcase	يعرض	heritage	إرث/تراث	virtual	افتراضي
spectrum	نطاق	weaken	يضعف	basis	أساس



Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct word from the box to complete each one:

felt – stayed – helped – kind – grateful – met

Dear Diary,

Today, I a local family when I was lost at the bus station. They me find my way and even invited me to their home. I with them for the night. They were so They made me food and smiled the whole time. I very lucky and for their help.

2 Match the words in column (A) to their meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. politeness	• the quality of giving more than expected
2. hospitality	• a movement or action that expresses a feeling
3. gesture	• friendly and welcoming treatment of guests
4. compliment	• respectful and well-mannered behavior
5. generosity	• a positive remark about someone

Language

3 Complete the sentences with the correct relative pronoun.

- The family invited me for dinner was incredibly kind.
- Istanbul, is Turkey's largest city, is famous for its hospitality.
- The moment I arrived, they offered me tea and food.
- The guest house we stayed had a very friendly owner.
- The woman daughter speaks English helped translate for us.
- Cultures value community often show more hospitality.

4 Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences:

- The man which helped me was very kind. (.....)
- The restaurant where we ate there was excellent. (.....)
- People, who are hospitable, make others feel welcome. (.....)
- The country that I visited there had amazing hospitality. (.....)
- The woman whose her house we stayed in was like a mother to us. (.....)

5 Join the following sentences using a defining OR non-defining relative clause:

- I have a friend. He lives in Alexandria.
- My teacher is very kind. She helped me yesterday.
- Cairo is a big city. It has the famous Nile River.



1 Finish the following dialog:

Omar is at the dentist's.

Dentist: What can I do for you today?

Omar : My tooth is killing me!

Dentist: How long (1).....?

Omar : (2).....

Dentist: Only last night! Did you eat anything hard?

Omar : Well (3)..... The meat was well done.

Dentist: So, it's the apple. It may have caused the trouble.

Omar : Maybe.

Dentist: (4)..... when you eat something really sweet?

Omar : Oh yes, when I do that, it hurts a lot more!

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I watched the movie. It was uninteresting. (which)

2. The cake that Mom bakes with chocolate chips isn't my favorite. (baked)

A Glimpse of Revelation

3 (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Islamic teachings Muslims to be modest.

- a) awake b) refrain c) urge d) merge

2. Modesty will happiness in society.

- a) neglect b) ensue c) assault d) lower

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the central characteristic of the Islamic creed?

2. Why does Islam promote moderateness and simplicity?

(C) Write [T] for true statements and [F] for false ones:

1. There is no potential for good in a person without modesty. [.....]

2. Muslims should be shy towards Allah (GBTH) in private, not in public. [.....]

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

1. It isn't impossible for a person to achieve their ambitions if they have patience and a strong will.

2. Psychologists think that the rising rate of unemployment leads in turn to the spread of violence and crime.

(B) Translate into English:

3. يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتوجيه عجلة الإنتاج وتحسين الحالة الاقتصادية الحالية لبلدنا.

4. بسبب ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة، لا يمكن للكثير من الناس تحقيق التوازن بين عملهم وعائلاتهم.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED TWENTY (120) words on the following:

"A place you visited and you never forgot"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 10

General Exercises

أولاً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجة واحدة»:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Showing doesn't always mean giving money; time and care are important too.
a) pride b) compliment c) friendship d) generosity
- A/An person always thinks about other people's feelings and doesn't hurt people.
a) rude b) active c) thoughtful d) courageous
- The brave firefighter..... ran into the burning building to save the child.
a) reluctantly b) unhesitatingly c) accidentally d) gradually
- The young couple lived on a when they first started their married life.
a) budget b) stand c) money d) luxury
- The universal currency exchange system allows people to trade money across all borders. The synonym of the adjective "universal" is ".....".
a) promising b) global c) famous d) limited
- The class gave a/an cheer when they heard school was over early.
a) planned b) formal c) spontaneous d) ordered
- We the efforts of teachers who work tirelessly for our children's education.
a) reconnect b) estimate c) think d) appreciate
- Hatim invited me to the party, was very kind of him.
a) which b) that c) when d) whose
- Violent storms are people fear nowadays.
a) when b) where c) what d) which
- The first thing I saw when I entered the art gallery was a notice, "Do not touch the exhibits!".
a) which saying b) who saying c) saying d) that saying
- The phone which is in the kitchen is broken. This means that
a) I have got more than one phone. b) I don't have a phone now.
c) I want to buy one instead. d) I have got only one phone.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

History is the past experience of mankind. More exactly, history is the memory of the past experience as it has been preserved, largely in written records. Traditionally, history has focused on the actions of governments, their leaders, and the conflicts among them - in other words political and diplomatic history. In the last hundred years, the scope of historical interest has broadened to include the history of ideas and the patterns and trends in economic and social life that characterize or influence society as a whole. The study of history has been regarded either as a branch of the humanities or as a social science. Actually, in method as well as in subject matter, it belongs to both of these branches of learning. As a social science, history deals with all the various fields of human experience that are treated separately in political science, sociology, anthropology, and economics.

History is a subject to the standard of social science as an attempt to establish objective truth about man and society; at the same time the historian's work of structure and interpretation requires some imagination which makes it nearer to the arts. The historical narrative is a form of literature. Furthermore, much of the content of historical study has to do with man's experience in intellectual and cultural fields.

History is sub-divided geographically by countries, and the subjects it deals with are also divided into the political, diplomatic, economic, and cultural aspects of human experience. Biography is a branch of history that focuses on the life of great historical figures. Histories of religion, science, and philosophy are all types of historical studies.

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

12. "The historical narrative is a form of literature" means that
- it is unreal
 - the historian is not objective
 - the historian analyses and interprets events with imagination
 - the historian merely copies events
13. According to the passage, what did history traditionally concentrate on?
- Political and diplomatic subjects.
 - The history of ideas and the patterns affecting human society.
 - The history of religion and philosophy.
 - The geography of countries.
14. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
- Social science.
 - Humanity science.
 - History.
 - Literature.
15. According to the passage, how has history developed over the last hundred years?
- It began to use modern technology.
 - It became sub-divided geographically by countries.
 - It became a social science.
 - It includes the history of ideas, the patterns and trends in economic and social life.
16. The best suitable title to the passage is ".....".
- History and the many fields of human experience
 - The cons of history in our life
 - History destroys man's experience
 - History makes man's life easy
17. Which one of the following isn't true about history?
- History is interested in man and society.
 - History deals with man's experience in intellectual and cultural fields.
 - History deals with politics and international relations.
 - History is interested in the number of cities in each country.
18. The synonym of the word "influence" is ".....".
- know
 - affect
 - destroy
 - benefit
19. The branch of history that focuses on the life of great historical figures is called
- sociology
 - anthropology
 - political science
 - biography

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As computer use becomes more common, the need for security is more important than ever. One of the greatest security threats in the online world is computer hacking. Computer hacking is the unauthorized access to a computer or network of computers. Hackers are people who illegally enter systems. They may alter or delete information, steal private information, or spread viruses that can damage or destroy files. But how exactly can a hacker get into a system to do these things?

Most hackers use information called protocols that are built into computer software. These protocols allow computers to interact with one another. Protocols are sort of like computer police officers. When a computer connects to another system, the protocols check to see if the access is valid. The protocols can also determine how much information can be shared between the two systems. Hackers can manipulate the protocols to get unlimited access to a computer system. In fact, just the act of entering a computer network is considered hacking. This is commonly called passive hacking. Passive hackers get a rush from just being able to access a challenging system like a bank or military network. Another kind of hacker tries to do damage to a system. After hacking into systems, these hackers release viruses or alter, delete, or take information. Known as active hackers, they are, by far, the more dangerous of the two.

The easiest way to protect a system is with a good password. Long and unusual passwords are harder for hackers to guess. For even greater security, some online services now use "password-plus" systems. In this case, users first put in a password and then put in a second code that changes after the user accesses the site. Users either have special cards or devices that show them the new code to use the next time. Even if a hacker steals the password, they won't have the code. Or if the hacker somehow gets the code, they still don't know the password.

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

36. Globalization is making various huge changes in the world where people are moving away from their self-contained countries to the more integrated world.

- (a) العولمة تُحدث تغييرات كبيرة في العالم، حيث ينتقل الناس بعيداً عن بلادهم المستقلة إلى مجتمع عالمي أكثر ترابطاً وتكاملاً.
 (b) الاحتباس الحراري تُحدث تغييرات كبيرة في العالم، حيث ينتقل الناس من الهويات الوطنية المنعزلة إلى مجتمع عالمي أكثر ترابطاً وتكاملاً.
 (c) العولمة تُحدث تغييرات كبيرة في العالم، حيث يهجر الناس بلادهم الخاصة إلى مجتمع عالمي أكثر ترابطاً وتكاملاً.
 (d) العولمة تُحدث تغييرات طفيفة في العالم، حيث ينتقل الناس من بلادهم الذاتية إلى مجتمع عالمي أكثر ترابطاً وتكاملاً.

37. Bullying is generally cruel or violent behavior towards an individual or even a group of various aged people. It can cause stress, anger, and suffering.

- (a) إن التنمر بشكل عام سلوك قاس أو عنيف تجاه فرد أو مجموعة من الناس ذوي اهتمامات مختلفة، ويمكن أن يسبب الإحباط والغضب والمعاناة.
 (b) إن التنمر بشكل عام سلوك قاس أو عنيف تجاه فرد أو مجموعة من الناس ذوي أعمار مختلفة، ويمكن أن يسبب التوتر والغضب والمعاناة.
 (c) إن التنمر بشكل خاص سلوك قاس أو عنيف تجاه فرد أو مجموعة من الناس في نفس العمر، ويمكن أن يسبب التوتر والغضب والمعاناة.
 (d) إن التنمر بشكل عام سلوك قاس أو عنيف تجاه المجتمع أو مجموعة من الناس ذوي أعمار مختلفة، يمكن أن يسبب التوتر والغضب والفضول.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

38. شهدت المنطقة خلال هذا العام تطوراً دبلوماسياً مهماً، حيث تم التوصل إلى اتفاق بين أطراف متنازعة لاستئناف العلاقات، بوساطة قوة دولية، مما يعكس تغييراً في التوازن الإقليمي.

- a) This year, the region witnessed a minor diplomatic change as conflicting continents reached an argument to resume relations, with the mediation of an international power, reflecting a shift in regional balance.
 b) This year, the region witnessed a major diplomat development as conflicting parties reached an agreement to resume peace, with the mediation of an international power, reflecting a shift in regional balanced.
 c) This year, the region witnessed a major diplomatic development as conflicting parties reached an agreement to resume relations, with the mediation of an international power, reflecting a shift in regional balance.
 d) This month, the region witnessed a major diplomatic development as fighting parties reached an agreement to resume relations, with the mediation of an international power, reflecting a shift in regional balance.

39. أعادت مصر افتتاح قبر الفرعون أمنحتب الثالث في الأقصر بعد أكثر من عشرين عامًا من الترميم، حيث يتضمن نقوشًا حائطية زاهية وتستعد لافتتاح المتحف المصري الكبير.

- a) Egypt reopened the tomb of Pharaoh Amenhotep III in Luxor before more than 20 years of restoration, featuring valid wall paintings and is preparing to the Grand Egyptian Museum opening.
 b) Egypt opened the tomb of Pharaoh Amenhotep II in Luxor after less than 20 years of restoration, featuring vivid wall paintings and is preparing for the Grand Egyptian Museum reopening.
 c) Egypt opened the tomb of Pharaoh Amenhotep III in Luxor after more than 20 years of restoration, featuring vivid wall paintings and is repairing for the Grand Egyptian Museum opening.
 d) Egypt reopened the tomb of Pharaoh Amenhotep III in Luxor after more than 20 years of restoration, featuring vivid wall paintings and is preparing for the Grand Egyptian Museum opening.

ثالثًا: الأسئلة المقالية (كل سؤال درجتان):

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

40. The painting is very valuable. It was stolen from the museum. (which)
 41. The old library has a huge dome. It was established in 1900. (whose)

Answer the following questions: (The Count of Monte Cristo)

42. Do you agree that using deception can sometimes be justified if the goal is justice? Why or why not?
 43. If you suddenly gained great wealth and influence, what would be the first change you would make in your society?

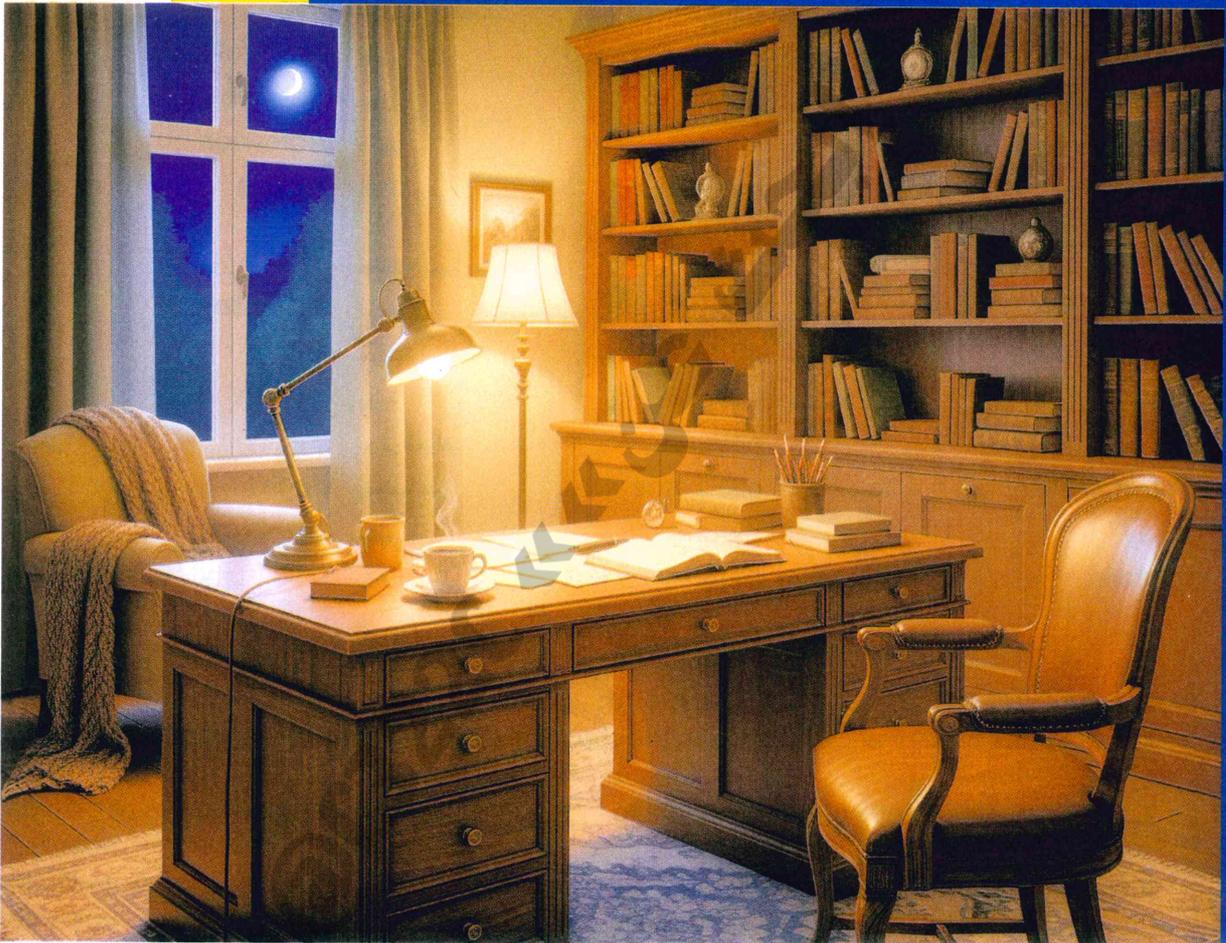
رابعًا: الأسئلة المقالية (سؤال واحد خمس درجات):

Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

44. "How artificial intelligence is changing the world"

Unit 11

Literature



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Identify main ideas, text types (novel/poetry/drama/folktale/essay), tone, and purpose; infer meaning from context; recognize imagery and theme.
- Language** - Use comparison of adjectives/adverbs; employ relative clauses in explanations about texts; use literature collocations accurately.
- Listening** - Extract gist and detail from interviews/talks with writers; note arguments; advice, and examples.
- Writing** - Compose a diary/reflection, and a short cheerful poem.
- Speaking** - Present opinions on genres, summarize stories, and discuss cultural value of folktales with appropriate vocabulary.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

dialog (n)	جوار/محادثة	imagery (n)	صورخيالية/مجاز	prose (n)	نثر
discipline (n)	انضباط	isolate (v) (d)	يعزل	rejection (n)	رفض/نبذ
escape (n) (v) (d)	هروب/يهرب	literature (n)	أدب	root (n)	أصل/جذر
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة/ملاحظات	morals (n)	أخلاق/دروس أخلاقية	struggle (n) (v) (d)	صراع/كفاح/يكافح
fiction (n)	خيال/أدب خيالي	non-fiction (n)	أدب واقعي/غير خيالي	wisdom (n)	حكمة

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ancestor (n)	سلف/جد	form (n)	شكل	play (n)	مسرحية
audience (n)	جمهور	gain (n) (v) (ed)	مكسب/يكتسب	poem (n)	قصيدة
author (n)	مؤلف	generation (n)	جيل	powerful (adj)	قوى
biography (n)	سيرة ذاتية	hero (n)	بطل	preserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على
bravery (n)	شجاعة	inner (adj)	داخلي	profession (n)	مهنة
character (n)	شخصية	inspiration (n)	إلهام/وحي	publish (v) (ed)	ينشر
confidence (n)	ثقة	interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة/يجري مقابلة	reflect (v) (ed)	يعكس/يتأمل
description (n)	وصف	legend (n)	أسطورة	response (n)	رد
detailed (adj)	مفصل	musical (adj)	موسيقى	rhyme (n)	قافية
draft (n)	مسودة	novel (n)	رواية	rhythm (n)	إيقاع
drama (n)	دراما	novelist (n)	روائي (مؤلف الروايات)	seek (v)	يبحث عن/يسعى
entertainment (n)	ترفيه/تسلية	overcome (v)	يتغلب على	stage (n)	خشبة المسرح
essay (n)	مقال	pattern (n)	نمط	talent (n)	موهبة
folktale (n)	قصة شعبية	perform (v) (ed)	يؤدي/يمثل	view (n) (v) (ed)	رأى/منظر/يستعرض

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The author used nice between the characters to make the play entertaining and engaging.
a) narration b) discipline c) dialog d) conflict
- Reading a good book can help people to from the pressures and worries of their daily life.
a) run b) escape c) struggle d) abandon
- Many people feel that their cultural are important to their sense of identity and belonging.
a) roots b) professions c) descriptions d) characters
- Although the movie was entertaining, much of what happened was pure with no basis in reality.
a) truth b) draft c) poetry d) fiction
- I believe that a good not only tells the facts about a person's life, but also shows their feelings and challenges.
a) documentary b) biography c) essay d) prose
- The children enjoyed the performance at the theater, singing along with their favorite singers from the show.
a) silent b) fictional c) imaginable d) musical
- The actor trained for months to the role of a detective in the new crime drama series.
a) publish b) represent c) perform d) view
- In my, reading every day is the best way to learn new vocabulary.
a) view b) scene c) response d) fiction

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

bring stories to life يجعل القصص تنبض بالحياة	make sense of يُجِدُّ مَعْنَى لـ / يدرك / يفهم	see a subject in a new light يرى موضوعًا من منظور جديد
bring you into another world يأخذك إلى عالم آخر	on the other hand من ناحية أخرى	share one purpose يتشارك هدفًا واحدًا
complete his quest يُتِمُّ / يكمل مهمته	over the past years على مدى السنوات الماضية	take readers on a journey يأخذ القراء في رحلة
create pictures in the reader's mind يخلق صورًا في ذهن القارئ	over time مع مرور الوقت	a window into human experience نافذة على التجربة الإنسانية

Prepositions

حروف الجر

afraid of خائف من	cope with يتأقلم مع	pass from ... to ينتقل من ... إلى
believe in يؤمن بـ	form of شكل من	share ... with يشارك ... مع
connect ... with يربط ... بـ	grow up يكبر / ينشأ	type of نوع من

Special Collocations

التراكيب الخاصة

argue a point يجادل في نقطة ما	deep feeling شعور عميق	think deeply يفكر بعمق
capture emotions يجسد المشاعر	express ideas يعبر عن الأفكار	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
fictionalize	يحول إلى قصة خيالية	fiction	خيال / أدب خيالي	fictional fictitious	خيالي خيالي / وهمي
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring inspirational	مُلهم إلهامي
isolate	يعزل	isolation	عزل	isolated	معزول / منعزل
perform	يؤدي	performance performer	أداء مؤد	performable performed	قابل للتنفيذ مُؤدِّي / مُنَفَّذ
publish	ينشر	publication publisher	نشر ناشر	publishable	قابل للنشر
respond	يستجيب / يرد	response respondent	رد مُجيب	responsive	مستجيب
struggle	يناضل / يكافح	struggle struggler	كفاح مُكافح	struggling	مكافح

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

You should **respond** politely when someone greets you. (v)

The doctor was happy with the patient's **response** to the treatment. (n)

Good websites should be **responsive** and work well on phones and computers. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
bravery	الشجاعة	courage/fearlessness		cowardice/fear	جبن / خوف
confidence	الثقة	self-assurance/faith		doubt/uncertainty	شك / عدم يقين
detailed	مفصل	comprehensive/precise		general/brief	عام / مختصر
entertainment	الترفيه	amusement/enjoyment		boredom/seriousness	ملل / جدية
inspiration	الإلهام	motivation/stimulation		discouragement/demotivation	إحباط / إضعاف الحماس
isolate	يعزل	separate/detach		unite/combine	يوحد / يجمع
overcome	يتغلب على	conquer/defeat		yield/surrender	يستسلم / ينسحب
preserve	يحافظ على	protect/conserve		damage/harm	ضرر / أذى
reflect	يعكس / يتأمل	think/consider		ignore/overlook	يتجاهل / يتغاضى
rejection	الرفض	refusal/denial		acceptance/approval	قبول / موافقة
seek	يبحث عن	search/pursue		avoid/ignore	يتجنب / يتجاهل
talent	الموهبة	skill/ability		inability/incompetence	عدم قدرة / عدم كفاءة
wisdom	حكمة	insight/intelligence		foolishness/ignorance	حمالة / جهل

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Climate change has shown more noticeable effects on our environment the past years.
a) over b) on c) out d) at
- The team members come from different countries, but they one purpose-winning the competition.
a) change b) share c) create d) prepare
- My parents believed honesty and taught me to always tell the truth.
a) up b) of c) in d) down
- The author shares her personal stories her readers through her autobiography.
a) for b) about c) at d) with
- The newspaper report was very; I could almost see the beach she was writing about.
a) describes b) description c) descriptive d) descriptively
- During the experiment, scientists tried to isolate the bacteria from the sample. The noun of the verb "isolate" is ".....".
a) isolated b) isolation c) isolative d) isolates
- The writer's success story was an inspiration to everyone on the team. The synonym of the noun "inspiration" is ".....".
a) discouragement b) struggle c) fiction d) motivation
- My application was met with rejection because it didn't meet the requirements. The antonym of the noun "rejection" is ".....".
a) approval b) refusal c) imagery d) rhyme

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

The Many Kinds of Literature

Literature⁽¹⁾ comes in many forms, each offering readers a different window into human experience. While all literature seeks to express ideas, emotions, or stories, every type has its own way of doing so.

Novels are long, detailed works of fiction⁽²⁾ that take readers on a journey. They often explore characters' inner thoughts and personal struggles⁽³⁾. A novel can bring you into another world, whether it is a historical past, a modern city, or even an imagined future.

Poetry, on the other hand, uses rhythm, imagery⁽⁴⁾, and carefully chosen words to capture emotions in a powerful and often musical way. A short poem can express a deep feeling that might take many pages of prose⁽⁵⁾ to explain.

Drama is written to be performed. Through dialog⁽⁶⁾ and action, plays bring stories to life on stage. Drama can make audiences laugh, cry, or think deeply about society.

Folktales are traditional stories passed from one generation to another. They often carry lessons or morals⁽⁷⁾, teaching values like honesty, kindness, or bravery. Folktales connect us with our cultural roots⁽⁸⁾, and show us how people understood the world before modern science and technology.

Essays are shorter works of non-fiction⁽⁹⁾, usually written to explain an idea or argue a point. A good essay helps readers see a subject in a new light.

Though each type of literature is different, they all share one purpose: to connect people through words. Whether it is the beauty of poetry, the drama of a play, or the wisdom⁽¹⁰⁾ of a folktale, literature allows us to understand both ourselves and others more deeply.



- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| (1) أدب | (2) خيال / أدب خيالي |
| (3) صراع / كفاح | (4) صور خيالية |
| (5) نثر | (6) حوار |
| (7) قيم أخلاقية / أخلاق | (8) جذور |
| (9) أدب واقعي / غير خيالي | (10) حكمة |

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Novels are likely to appeal to  readers who
 - enjoy brief, factual information
 - appreciate detailed storytelling
 - prefer stage performances
 - like poetic language
- Poetry uses
 - dialog and action
 - historical facts
 - long narratives
 - rhythm and imagery
- The author of this passage likely believes that literature
 - is only for entertainment
 - should be limited to factual information
 - has the power to connect people
 - is too complex for most readers
- Folktales often carry
 - lessons or morals
 - scientific facts
 - historical dates
 - complex theories

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Voices in Literature

Presenter: Welcome to Voices in Literature. Today we are speaking with Daniel Morris, a novelist who has published several books over the past 10 years. Daniel, can you tell us what first inspired you to write?

Daniel: Well, I grew up in a small town and books were my **escape**⁽¹⁾. I remember spending hours in the library imagining worlds far beyond my own. Writing became my way to make sense of my feelings and to share them with others.

Presenter: Many people think writing is only about talent. What is your view?

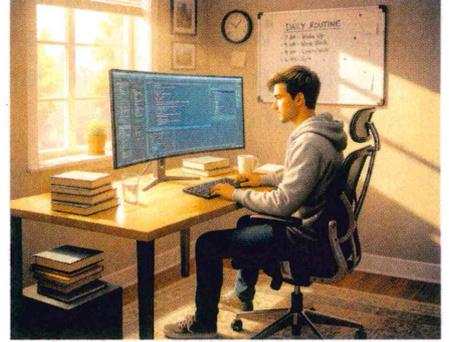
Daniel: Talent helps, but **discipline**⁽²⁾ matters even more. I write every morning even when I don't feel inspired. Over time, daily practice builds both skill and confidence.

Presenter: Writing can also be a lonely profession. How do you cope with that?

Daniel: True, it can be **isolating**⁽³⁾. That's why I stay connected with other writers. We share drafts, give **feedback**⁽⁴⁾, and encourage each other. Writing groups make the journey less lonely.

Presenter: Finally, what advice would you give to young writers?

Daniel: Don't be afraid of failure. Every **rejection**⁽⁵⁾ teaches you something. Keep writing, keep reading, and believe in your voice.



(1) هروب

(2) الانضباط

(3) عزل

(4) تغذية راجعة / ملاحظات

(5) رفض / نيبذ

Definitions

dialog	حوار	a conversation between characters in a play
discipline	انضباط	control and regular practice
escape	هروب	a way to get free from daily life or problems
feedback	تغذية راجعة / ملاحظات	response or opinion given about your work
imagery	صور خيالية	language that creates pictures in the reader's mind
isolating	عزل	the act of being alone or cut off
morals	أخلاق / دروس أخلاقية	lessons about right and wrong
non-fiction	الأدب الواقعي	writing based on facts, not imagination
rejection	رفض / نيبذ	the refusal or failure to accept something
root	أصل / جذر	the beginning or origin of something

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	publish ينشر (عملا فنيا/جريدة/تقريراً)	The young writer's novel was published last year.
	spread ١- ينتشر/يمتد/يفرد ٢- ينشر (خبرا/إشاعة/مرضا)	Fire quickly spread through the building. The disease spread rapidly amongst the village. Mom spreads cheese on sandwiches like a chef. How dare you spread such evil lies!
	come out يصدر (يظهر ويبيع بعد الطبع)	TeenStuff is a magazine which comes out every month in Cairo.
2	hero بطل في المجتمع أو في قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	The young actor was chosen as the hero of the new series about space.
	champion بطل رياضي	Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian champion who won an Olympic medal in Taekwondo.
3	interview مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة) مقابلة (إذاعية/تلفزيونية/صحفية)	I've got an interview for a job as an interpreter.
	appointment موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص في وقت معين)	I have an appointment to see my lawyer next Saturday.
	meeting مقابلة/اجتماع	They organized meetings on a number of important political issues.
	conference مؤتمر	The President arrived for a conference with local officials.
4	talent/gift موهبة (طبيعية يمكن تحسينها بالتعليم والتدريب)	She was a young artist with a lot of talent . He showed a natural gift for comedy.
	skill مهارة (يمكن تعلمها وممارستها)	He plays the piano with great skill . The course will help you improve your communication skills .

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is language that creates pictures in the reader's mind.
a) Prose b) Non-fiction c) Imagery d) Biography
- can be defined as a response or opinion given about your work.
a) Essay b) Feedback c) Fiction d) Poetry
- Mike Tyson, the famous boxer, was the heavyweight of the world for many years.
a) hero b) champion c) trainer d) apprentice
- In a job, you should be prepared to answer questions about your strengths and weaknesses.
a) appointment b) conference c) seminar d) interview
- Nahdet Misr is a famous organization which different kinds of books.
a) spreads b) publishes c) believes d) hides
- Recognizing a child's early can help parents guide them toward suitable activities.
a) effort b) confidence c) talent d) energy

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Teens like playing video games because they offer a/an to fantastic, unreal worlds with characters who have special powers.
a) rejection b) objection c) belief d) escape
2. The internet can be a useful source of customer, so it is widely used by companies.
a) feedback b) denial c) punishment d) perfection
3. The of the movie we watched is that honesty is always the best policy.
a) festival b) moral c) accident d) lecture
4. The small boat against the waves, and finally sank.
a) bundled b) refused c) struggled d) suggested
5. I feel that I have benefited greatly from my parents' as they gave me the best advice.
a) health b) wealth c) inspection d) wisdom
6. The cheered loudly when their favorite singer came on stage.
a) producer b) audience c) director d) detective
7. Many children like to have Mickey Mouse or some other cartoon on their clothes.
a) persons b) directors c) characters d) fictions
8. It is a fact that traditional customs of any society are passed from one to the next.
a) generation b) conference c) profession d) regulation
9. Naguib Mahfouz is still a/an to young novelists in the Arab world.
a) respiration b) inspiration c) animation d) regulation
10. Most and folk stories were passed on through generations verbally, not by being written down.
a) facts b) fictions c) adventures d) legends
11. At last, the young man could his fear of heights and went up the tower.
a) define b) come c) overcome d) refine
12. The doctor asked the patient about his sleeping to find the cause of his tiredness.
a) types b) patterns c) losses d) profits
13. Some critics believe that famous footballers better for their clubs than for their countries.
a) perform b) assess c) carry d) make
14. I had to buy a more computer because my old one doesn't work efficiently for the software I use.
a) offensive b) powerful c) useless d) permanent
15. It is not easy for young writers to their new books.
a) write b) spray c) come out d) publish
16. Experts say that the way you speak your personality and confidence.
a) reacts b) reforms c) reflects d) performs

17. After sending the email, I received an automatic confirming that my message had been received.
 a) activity b) response c) agreement d) refusal
18. The hero is on the for most of the play. He feels really tired at the end.
 a) stage b) screen c) platform d) pitch
19. Ronaldo and Messi will forever be considered players of great natural
 a) prize b) price c) reward d) talent
20. She's researching her family tree to learn more about her
 a) grandchildren b) descendants c) ancestors d) neighbors
21. The young players gradually confidence in their abilities when they get good scores.
 a) gain b) earn c) beat d) overcome
22. Memoirs, essays, and journalistic articles are excellent examples of writing.
 a) fiction b) non-fiction c) poetry d) drama
23. The university offers courses in world to help students understand different cultures.
 a) creativity b) politeness c) prose d) literature
24. Athletes must maintain strict in their training routines to achieve better performance.
 a) motivation b) practice c) discipline d) imagery
25. The patient was placed in a special room, away from other hospital visitors.
 a) healed b) isolated c) relied d) insulated
26. The artist faced hardships, like constant from galleries, before becoming famous.
 a) fiction b) acceptance c) reality d) rejection

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

27. The filmmaker used innovative cinematography to stories to life in his latest documentary.
 a) bring b) make c) tell d) create
28. It took the detective hours to make of the evidence collected from the crime scene.
 a) signs b) sense c) detection d) signals
29. The family had to cope the loss of their home after the devastating fire.
 a) for b) at c) with d) on
30. Cultural traditions from generation to generation through storytelling and practice.
 a) continue b) travel c) manage d) pass
31. The poet used touching words to his ideas in the poem.
 a) relax b) oppress c) express d) aspire
32. The old man was praised for his wisdom. The synonym of the noun "wisdom" is ".....".
 a) wealth b) policy c) insight d) stupidity
33. The witness wasn't able to describe the robber. The noun of the verb "describe" is ".....".
 a) described b) description c) descriptive d) descriptively
34. The lady was able to give a detailed description of her attacker. The synonym of the adjective "detailed" is ".....".
 a) general b) private c) public d) precise
35. Influenza is primarily from person to person through coughing and sneezing.
 a) published b) appeared c) spread d) sprayed

B Language

Adjectives

الصفات

الصفة: هي كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تُجمع.
الصفة تأتي قبل الاسم

Ahmed is a **tall** boy.

I watched an **interesting** match.

وإذا جاءت بعد الاسم تسبق بـ **v. to be**

The boy **is tall**.

The match **was interesting**.

Comparative and superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

Degrees of adjectives
درجات الصفات

Positive
الصفة

Comparative
المقارنة بين شيئين

Superlative
التفضيل

One-syllable adjectives

صفات المقطع الواحد:

Positive	Comparison	Superlative
tall	taller	tallest
young	younger	youngest
soft	softer	softest
large	larger	largest
wide	wider	widest
big	bigger	biggest
hot	hotter	hottest
low	lower	lowest
few	fewer	fewest

في المقارنة نضع **adj. + er + than**
في التفضيل نضع **the + adj. + est**
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف **e** نضع **r/st**
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضع **er**
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف **w** قبله **o** أو **e** نضع **er/est** دون تضعيف

Two or more syllable adjectives ending in y

ugly	uglier	ugliest
easy	easier	easiest
heavy	heavier	heaviest
happy	happier	happiest

إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهي بحرف **y** قبلها حرف ساكن تقلب إلى **ier/iest**

Examples

Shady is a **young** boy.

(Positive)

Shady is **younger than** Ehab.

(Comparative)

Shady is **the youngest** boy in class/of all students.

(Superlative)

More than two-syllable adjectives

صفات أكثر من مقطعين

Positive	Comparison	Superlative
	more + الصفة + than	the most + الصفة
modern	عصري more modern than	the most modern
expensive	غالي الثمن more expensive than	the most expensive
wonderful	رائع more wonderful than	the most wonderful
difficult	صعب more difficult than	the most difficult
interesting	شيق more interesting than	the most interesting

Examples

- English is **an interesting** subject. (Positive)
 English is **more interesting than** Spanish. (Comparative)
 English is **the most interesting** subject of all languages. (Superlative)

Irregular comparatives and superlatives

الصفات الشاذة

هناك بعض الصفات التي لا ينطبق عليها القاعدة السابقة ومن أمثلتها:

Positive	Comparison	Superlative
good/well	جيد / حسن better than	the best
bad	سيئ / رديء worse than	the worst
little	قليل less than	the least
much/many/a lot of	كثير more than	the most
far	بعيد farther/further than	the farthest/furthest

Examples

- Lying is a **bad** habit. (Positive)
 Nothing is **worse than** lying. (Comparative)
 Lying is **the worst** habit in the world. (Superlative)

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My sister bought from the store last week.
 - a dress beautiful
 - a beautiful dress
 - a beautiful
 - dress
- This task is than the previous one.
 - more hard
 - hardest
 - harder
 - hard
- The final exam was than the mid-term exam.
 - most difficult
 - difficult
 - much difficult
 - more difficult
- That was the storm we have experienced this year.
 - more severe
 - much severest
 - most severe
 - severe
- This puzzle is to complete than it looks.
 - challenging
 - most challenging
 - more challenging
 - challenge

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. No girl in class is better than Noha. (Noha is ...)
2. My car is not expensive. His car is very expensive. (than)
3. Yesterday was very cold. Today is warm. (Today is ...)
4. The test was very easy. Everyone finished quickly. (It was ...)
5. His first attempt was good, but his second attempt was excellent. (than)

Positive and negative equality

تساوى وعدم تساوى الصفات

as + adj. + as
not as (so) + adj. + as

1 لتساوى الصفات نستخدم as + adj + as

as + adj. + as = عند تساوى الصفات be the same + noun

Ahmed is **as tall as** Osama.

Ahmed **is the same height as** Osama. = Ahmed and Osama **are the same height.**

2 عدم تساوى الصفات not as/so + adj. + as

Ahmed isn't **as tall as** Osama.

Ahmed **isn't the same height as** Osama. = Ahmed and Osama **aren't the same height.**

3 لاحظ: بعد the same استخدمنا الاسم بدل الصفة ولمعرفة أشهر الصفات والأسماء منها يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
beautiful	beauty	exciting	excitement
big/small	size	far/near	distance
brave	bravery	long	length
clean	cleanliness	old/young	age
courageous	courage	powerful	power
dark	darkness	strong	strength
deep	depth	tall/high	height
difficult	difficulty	wide	width

Important Notes

1 نستخدم المقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين مع ذكر طرفى المقارنة وأحياناً لا نذكر الطرف الثانى لوضوح المعنى مثل:

We need a **bigger** garden.

معنى الجملة يفيد أن لدينا حديقة ولكن نريد حديقة أكبر ولم نذكر طرف المقارنة الثانى.

Ali's car is certainly **better**, but it's much **more expensive**.

«سيارة على أفضل ولكن أعلى» أى إنها أعلى وأفضل من سيارتى ولم نذكر طرف المقارنة الثانى مادام المعنى واضحاً.

2 نستخدم المقارنة لوصف كيف يتغير الشيء وبيان الفرق بين شيء قديم وآخر حديث.

Hala is getting **taller**.

Ali is getting **older** and **more intelligent**.

3 لاحظ استخدام هذه الصيغة **comparative + comparative** لبيان الزيادة المطردة في التغيير.

Cars are getting **faster** and **faster**.

Computers are getting **cheaper** and **cheaper**.

Everything is getting **more and more expensive**.

4 إذا جاء ضمير بعد **than** فهناك شكلان صحيحان.

My brother is older than **me**.

My brother is older than **I am**.

وضعنا ضمير الفاعل هنا لأنه جاء بعده فعل.

5 هناك صفات تسمى **absolute** يعني مطلقة وهي لا تأخذ درجات المقارنة أو التفضيل ومنها:

Adjective	الصفة	Meaning	المعنى	Adjective	الصفة	Meaning	المعنى
complete		كامل / منته / تام	final		نهائي / حصري		
dead		ميت	full		ممتلئ / كامل		
impossible		مستحيل	married		متزوج		
eternal		أبدى / خالد	perfect		متكامل / تام / كامل		
false		خاطئ	unique		فريد / فذ / لا نظير له		
fatal		مميت	universal		عالمي / شامل / كلّي		

This painting is **perfect** in every single detail.

The plant is **dead**, and it cannot be revived.

The box is **empty**, with nothing inside.

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية

1

farther/further

تعبّر **farther** و **further** عن المسافة بمعنى أبعد.

I drove ten miles **farther/further** than necessary.

بينما تستخدم **further** بمعنى إضافي / آخر **more** أو **in addition** وتستخدم للمعنى المجرد المعنوي مثل الأفكار والوقت.

Do you have any **further** questions?

I want **further** information about this subject.

2

elder/older

elder

نستخدم **elder** كصفة بمعنى أكبر بين أفراد العائلة. ولا يأتي بعدها **than**.

My **elder** sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus.

My **elder** cousin is very clever.

لاحظ أن كلمه **elderly** صفة بمعنى كبار السن.

Nowadays, **elderly** people are healthier and more active than youngsters.

older

نستخدم **older** عندما نشير إلى أي شيء يخص الماضي ويكون قديماً (أقدم أو أكبر من) للأشخاص وندكر طرفي المقارنة، أو تأتي المقارنة ضمناً ويأتي بعدها **than**.

We start understanding many things as we grow/get **older**.

My parents are **older than** your parents.

The **older** version of the software had many useful features **than** this one.

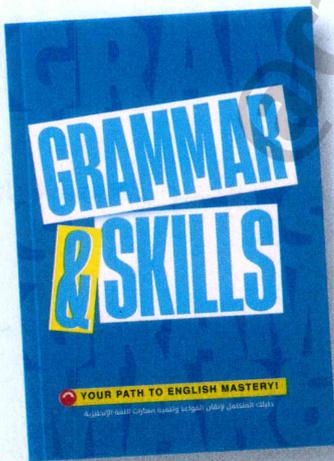
Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We're having problems with our computer. We should buy one.
a) a less powerful
b) a more powerful
c) powerful
d) most powerful
2. She is a faster runner than
a) him
b) he is
c) his
d) both a and b
3. The second performance was not as the first.
a) as impressive
b) more impressive
c) impressive
d) the most impressive
4. Of all my friends, my home is from school.
a) farther
b) far
c) the farthest
d) the further
5. This task is for anyone to complete successfully.
a) impossible
b) more impossible
c) the most impossible
d) an impossible

2 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and then write it correctly:

1. Ahmed and Sara are the same old. She is as old as him. (.....)
2. No one in this school is the young as Esraa. (.....)
3. You look best than you were yesterday. (.....)
4. If you need farther information, please contact our office. (.....)
5. Few tourists are visiting the museum than yesterday. (.....)



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة!

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Of all the candidates, she gave the presentation.
a) most impressive b) impressed c) more impressive d) impressive
2. The instructions were to me than I had hoped.
a) clearer b) clear c) the clearest d) lesser clear
3. This is the way of all suggestions for learning new vocabulary.
a) simple b) much simple c) simplest d) more simple
4. Her results this semester are than last semester's.
a) good b) best c) better d) more good
5. We need to do research on this topic before we decide.
a) the farthest b) further c) far d) furthest
6. My brother is as me when it comes to cooking.
a) more skilled b) most skilled c) skilled d) as skilled
7. Trains are slower than planes, but the new trains are of all.
a) the faster b) faster c) fast d) the fastest
8. His performance was than the previous one.
a) good b) better c) best d) more good
9. For a quick energy boost, fruit is than candy.
a) more healthier b) healthier c) healthiest d) more healthy
10. She is as her sister in academics.
a) more brilliant b) as brilliant c) most brilliant d) brilliant
11. Horses are faster than dogs, but cheetahs are land animals.
a) the fastest b) faster c) the faster d) fast
12. Vegetables are than meat if you want to go on a diet.
a) much healthy b) healthier c) healthy d) more healthy
13. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed at a/an time than usual.
a) earliest b) much early c) earlier d) more early
14. Ahmed is student in the entire school.
a) intelligent b) the more intelligent
c) the most intelligent d) more intelligent
15. Many tourists find that Greece is than Germany in the summer.
a) sunnier b) more sunny c) the sunniest d) sunny
16. I should never have said that. It was the thing to say.
a) as bad b) worse c) worst d) badly
17. Online learning is for busy adults than attending physical lectures.
a) more convenient b) most convenient c) less convenient d) convenient
18. After the marathon, he was of all the runners.
a) more exhausted b) the most exhausted
c) exhausting d) exhausted
19. The hotel near the beach is than the one in the city.
a) the most comfortable b) the less comfortable
c) more comfortable d) comfortable
20. I regret selling my car. It was decision I've ever made.
a) the best b) the worst c) as bad d) worse

21. Mona was not as talented as the others, but she was
 a) more prettier b) pretty c) most pretty d) the prettiest
22. Her essay wasn't the longest, but it was
 a) the well-written b) well-written
 c) more better written d) the most well-written
23. Even though it's a small library, it has collection in the region.
 a) the better b) as good c) the best d) good
24. The trip wasn't our previous one because of the heavy rain and poor planning.
 a) as enjoyable as b) as enjoyable so c) more enjoyable as d) as enjoyable
25. What's decision you've ever had to make?
 a) the more important b) the most important c) most important d) important
26. This year's sales figures are last year's.
 a) as high as b) as high so c) more high as d) as high
27. That was the movie I've ever seen in a long time.
 a) funny b) funnier c) funniest d) more funny
28. One of the given words is an adjective. What is it?
 "The sun is the star at the center of our solar system."
 a) system b) solar c) star d) sun
29. When I learned a lot of grammar and vocabulary, English became
 a) the easiest b) much more easier
 c) more and more easier d) easier and easier
30. What's language you've ever tried to learn?
 a) the more challenging b) the most challenging
 c) most challenging d) challenging
31. We adopted a dog, but our neighbors have a one.
 a) small / small b) small / smallest
 c) small / smaller d) smaller / smallest
32. I'm afraid the situation is going from bad to
 a) bad b) worst c) worse d) badly

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Sara is the smartest student in the class. (smarter than)

2. No other city in Egypt is as crowded as Cairo. (the most)

3. In my opinion, science is the most interesting subject. (more interesting than)

4. Ahmed is a faster runner than Mahmoud. (not as fast as)

5. Nabil is as tall as Salah. (the same)

3 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and then write it correctly:

1. I have a little time today, but I had little yesterday. (.....)
2. The journey was bad, but the return trip was bad. (.....)
3. For farther information, please visit our website. (.....)
4. His second painting was most colorful than his first. (.....)
5. I find math so difficult as history. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The of this famous novel won several international awards throughout his career.
a) painter b) audience c) author d) poet
2. The teacher asked the students to share their on the story's ending.
a) goal b) result c) imagery d) view
3. The of the famous actress was published by a major publishing company and became a bestseller.
a) fiction b) biography c) literature d) essay
4. Movies, music, and games are all forms of that people enjoy in their free time.
a) entertainment b) discipline c) exercise d) knowledge
5. Charles Dickens was a famous English who wrote many classic stories.
a) scholar b) novelist c) librarian d) tutor
6. Acts of during emergencies inspire others to help without hesitation.
a) selfishness b) literature c) bravery d) sadness
7. Having helps students express their ideas clearly in class discussions.
a) form b) worry c) pressure d) confidence
8. The museum works hard to rare artifacts and historical treasures for research purposes.
a) create b) preserve c) form d) reflect
9. The travel guide provided a clear of the ancient monuments and their historical significance.
a) description b) research c) thought d) signal
10. The medical requires years of education and training before really practicing it.
a) experience b) skill c) profession d) interest
11. The teacher gave a very explanation of the lesson so everyone could understand it.
a) vague b) strange c) concise d) detailed
12. All people should success by working hard and learning from their mistakes.
a) lose b) publish c) seek d) share
13. Parents try to teach their children so they can behave responsibly.
a) freedom b) discipline c) excitement d) curiosity
14. The poet carefully chose words that to create a musical and pleasing effect in the poem.
a) rhyme b) connect c) form d) blend
15. The writer completed three before finalizing the final book for publication.
a) sketches b) outlines c) poems d) drafts
16. Many cultures have a about a clever fox that tricks other animals in the forest.
a) biography b) folktale c) play d) novel
17. Some English words have a Latin that gives them their basic meaning.
a) root b) sound c) branch d) color
18. The poet used language with rhythmic patterns that made the verses flow beautifully.
a) complex b) musical c) confusing d) reviewing
19. Students were invited to participate in a science at the university last month.
a) conference b) appointment c) legacy d) interview
20. Many villagers still believe in such as Abu Zeid El Helali and the unbelievable actions in them.
a) programs b) prefaces c) riddles d) legends

Language

21. My new phone is than my old one; the battery lasts much longer.
 a) worse b) better c) bad d) good
22. This is the play I have ever seen; I was bored from beginning to end.
 a) more interesting b) most interesting c) least interesting d) less interesting
23. How far is railway station from here?
 a) nearer b) the nearer c) the near d) the nearest
24. Riding a bicycle is than driving a car in heavy traffic.
 a) faster b) the fastest c) more fast d) fast
25. For many people, health is than wealth.
 a) the most important b) more important c) importanter d) important
26. That was storm of the year; many trees were knocked down.
 a) a violent b) more violent c) the most violent d) violent
27. Sara's handwriting is as her sister's; they are both very clear.
 a) as neat b) neater c) the neatest d) more neat
28. The version of the software had many useful features.
 a) elders b) elder c) eldest d) older
29. Shady is younger than Ehab. This means Shady is Ehab.
 a) not as old as b) older than c) the same age as d) as old as
30. "I want further information." The word "further" here means ".....".
 a) more distant b) additional c) remote d) closer
31. His second book was not successful as his first one.
 a) more b) the most c) as d) than
32. It's getting and more difficult to find a job nowadays.
 a) much b) most c) more difficult d) more
33. Riding a horse is not riding a bike.
 a) easier b) as easy as c) the easiest d) so easy
34. The fire was getting as the wind blew harder.
 a) as hot b) hotter c) the hottest d) more hot
35. The weather is better today. It's yesterday.
 a) as cold as b) much colder than c) colder than d) not as cold as
36. Ahmed and Ashraf are the same age. This means that
 a) Ahmed is as old as Ashraf b) Ahmed is older than Ashraf
 c) Ashraf isn't as old as Ahmed d) Ashraf is older than Ahmed
37. I thought she was younger than me, but in fact she's slightly
 a) old b) older c) oldest d) eldest
38. Since Asmaa went to Canada, her English has got
 a) well b) good c) best d) better
39. The Amazon isn't the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
 a) longer b) long c) as long as d) so long
40. One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:
 a) My brother is as tall as my father. b) My father is tallest than my brother.
 c) My father and my brother are the same high. d) My brother is more shorter than my father.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

breeze (n)	نسمة / نسيم	memories (n)	ذكريات
cheerful (adj)	مبتهج / فرح	rhythm (n)	إيقاع
daffodils (n)	أزهار النرجس	tone (n)	نغمة / طابع / أسلوب
flow (n) (v) (ed)	تدفق / انسياب / ينساب / يجري		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ability (n)	قدرة	friendship (n)	صداقة	reference (n)	مرجع / إشارة
analysis (n)	تحليل	hopeful (adj)	متفائل	rhyme scheme (n)	نظام القافية
beauty (n)	جمال	image (n)	صورة	scene (n)	مشهد
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل / يحتفي بـ	inspiring (adj)	مُلهم / موحى	serious (adj)	جاد
classical (adj)	كلاسيكي	joy (n)	بهجة	silence (n)	صمت / سكون
comparison (n)	مقارنة	joyful (adj)	مبتهج	sound (n)	صوت
complex (adj)	معقد	lively (adj)	حيوي	spirit (n)	روح
confused (adj)	مرتبك	logic (n)	منطق	strength (n)	قوة
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفي	magical (adj)	سحري	sway (v) (ed)	يتأرجح
enhance (v) (d)	يعزز	normal (adj)	عادي / طبيعي	theme (n)	موضوع
equally (adv)	بالتساوي	peaceful (adj)	هادئ / مسالم / سلمي	vale (n)	الوادي
fade (v) (d)	يبهت / يذبل / يتلاشى	philosophical (adj)	فلسفي	visual (adj)	بصري
feature (n)	ميزة / سمة	playwright (n)	كاتب مسرحي	vividly (adv)	بوضوح
flutter (v) (ed)	يرفرف	power (n)	قوة	wander (v) (ed)	يتجول

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mother is used to opening all the windows to let the morning come through the house.
a) freeze b) breath c) breeze d) atmosphere
- The poet's words had a musical that made the poem pleasant to read aloud.
a) rhythm b) logic c) picture d) line
- Some people keep a diary to record their favorite from school and family trips.
a) goals b) topics c) searches d) memories
- The sun began to behind the mountains, leaving the sky painted with orange light.
a) arise b) disappear c) rise d) shine
- The music video included impressive imagery that perfectly matched the song's mood.
a) fading b) poetic c) tactile d) visual
- The scientist explained that electricity is a form of that moves through wires.
a) matter b) ability c) power d) light

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

add calm and peace	يضيف الهدوء والسلام	create a musical effect	يخلق تأثيرًا موسيقيًا
all at once	دفعة واحدة/فجأة	give us strength	يمنحنا القوة
caught my eye	لفت نظري	touch the reader's heart	يلمس قلب القارئ

Prepositions

حروف الجر

celebration of	احتفال بـ	danger of	خطر لـ	think of	يفكر في
come from	يأتي من	focus on	يركز على	turn ... into	يحول ... إلى

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
analyze	يحلل	analysis analyst	تحليل محلل	analytical	تحليلي
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالي
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
empower	يمكن	empowerment	تعزيز/تمكين	empowered	متمكن/مُتَّذَّب
enhance	يعزز	enhancement	تعزيز	enhanced	مُحَسَّن
flow	يتدفق	flow	تدفق/انسياب	flowable	قابل للتدفق
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring inspirational	مُلهم إلهامي
refer	يشير	reference referral	مرجع إحالة	referential	إحالي/توجيهي
silence	يُسكِّت	silence	صمت/سكون	silent silenced	صامت مُسكَّت
strengthen	يقوى	strength	قوة	strong	قوي

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

To **strengthen** her application, she decided to gain more work experience in the field. (v)

Engineers tested the **strength** of the bridge before reopening it to traffic. (n)

She has a **strong** personality and is not easily influenced by the opinions of others. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
celebrate	يحتفل	rejoice/honor		blame/criticize	يلوم ينتقد
cheerful	مبتهج	joyful/happy		gloomy/sad/depressed	كئيب/حزين/مكتئب
classical	كلاسيكي	traditional/conventional		modern/contemporary	حديث/معاصر
complex	معقد	complicated/sophisticated		simple/clear	بسيط/واضح

enhance	يعزز	improve/boost/intensify	reduce/degrade	يقلل / يُخفض
flow	تدفق	stream/movement	blockage/stoppage	انسداد / توقف
lively	حيوي	energetic/dynamic/active	dull/inactive	ممل / خامل
strength	قوة	power/resilience/energy	weakness/fragility	ضعف / هشاشة
vividly	بوضوح	brightly/intensely	faintly/vaguely	بشكل خافت / بشكل غامض
wander	يتجول	roam/drift	settle/stop	يستقر / يتوقف

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The coach's words before the game really us strength to keep going.
 - a) gave
 - b) made
 - c) caught
 - d) came
- The bright red dress in the shop window as I walked past, so I bought it.
 - a) gave me strength
 - b) caught my eye
 - c) flowed away
 - d) took me away
- What is the danger smoking to the lungs?
 - a) with
 - b) of
 - c) by
 - d) in
- The professor's method involved breaking complex problems into smaller, manageable parts.
 - a) analyzes
 - b) analysis
 - c) analyst
 - d) analytical
- Music has always had the power to inspire emotions and creativity in people. The noun of the verb "inspire" is ".....".
 - a) inspired
 - b) inspiration
 - c) inspirational
 - d) inspirationally
- The nurse's cheerful manner helped patients feel less anxious. The adjective "cheerful" has the same meaning as ".....".
 - a) gloomy
 - b) simple
 - c) joyful
 - d) faint
- Engineers studied the flow of water through the irrigation system. The opposite of the noun "flow" is ".....".
 - a) blockage
 - b) stream
 - c) rhyme
 - d) tone
- The novel's opening chapter vividly portrayed the poverty and struggle of urban life. The synonym of the adverb "vividly" is ".....".
 - a) vaguely
 - b) actually
 - c) helplessly
 - d) brightly

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Poetry has always been a special way for people to express feelings and ideas. Unlike normal writing, poetry often uses **rhythm**⁽¹⁾, sound, and imagery to create beauty and emotion.

Around the world, poems have been written to celebrate love, nature, friendship, and even everyday life.

Not all poems are sad or serious. Some are **cheerful**⁽²⁾ and full of hope. One example is the famous poem "I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud" by William Wordsworth. In this poem, the poet describes walking alone and suddenly seeing a field of golden **daffodils**⁽³⁾ moving in the **breeze**⁽⁴⁾. The simple scene fills him with joy. Later, whenever he feels lonely, he remembers the daffodils and feels peaceful again.

This poem shows how poetry can turn ordinary experiences into something magical. The cheerful **tone**⁽⁵⁾ comes from the bright images of flowers, light, and movement. Wordsworth uses strong visual language—"a crowd, a host, of golden daffodils"—to help the reader imagine the scene clearly. He also repeats sounds and rhythms that make the poem **flow**⁽⁶⁾ like a song.

The poem's main feature is its celebration of nature and the human spirit. It shows that beauty can be found in simple places and that **memories**⁽⁷⁾ of joy can give us strength in difficult times. Poetry like this reminds us that happiness may be just around the corner, waiting in a flower, a smile, or a kind word.



- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| (1) إيقاع | (2) مبهج / مرح |
| (3) أزهارالترجس | (4) نسمة / نسيم |
| (5) نغمة / لحن | (6) ينساب |
| (7) ذكريات | |

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is special about poetry that distinguishes it from normal writing?
 - a) It only expresses sad emotions.
 - b) It uses rhythm, sound, and imagery.
 - c) It is only written in formal tone.
 - d) It is only about love and nature.
2. The poet in "I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud" feels peaceful again when he
 - a) remembers his daily routine
 - b) sees a crowded city
 - c) remembers the golden daffodils
 - d) takes a long walk
3. What can be inferred about the poet's view of nature in "I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud"?
 - a) He finds it overwhelming.
 - b) He believes it's unpredictable.
 - c) He thinks it's only for children.
 - d) He sees it as a source of joy and peace.
4. The poem "I Wandered Lonely as a Cloud" shows that memories of can give us strength in difficult times.
 - a) joyful moments
 - b) sad experiences
 - c) lonely walks
 - d) city life

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Literature often gives us a chance to compare writers, styles, and themes. For example, William Shakespeare is perhaps more famous than many other **playwrights**⁽¹⁾ of his time. His plays are often considered the greatest because of their universal **themes**⁽²⁾.



Emily Dickinson

In contrast, Emily Dickinson's poems are usually shorter but sometimes deeper than longer works of poetry, some readers believe that modern novels are easier to understand than **classical**⁽³⁾ ones, while others think classics are more valuable. A novel can be as **inspiring**⁽⁴⁾ as a poem if it touches the reader's heart. When we read different texts, we notice that one story may be better than another, yet each piece of literature has its own beauty.



William Shakespeare

Comparisons in literature help us see how writers express similar ideas in different ways; they also make us appreciate which works are more powerful and which are less **complex**⁽⁵⁾ but equally enjoyable.

(1) كُتَّاب المسرحيَّات

(2) موضوعات

(3) كلاسيكي

(4) مُلهِم

(5) مُعَقَّد

Definitions

breeze	نسمة / نسيم	a gentle wind
cheerful	مبتهج / فرح	happy, or behaving in a way that shows you are happy
daffodils	أزهار النرجس	tall yellow spring flowers with a tube-shaped part in the middle
flow	تدفق / انسياب	the continuous stream of words or ideas when someone is speaking, writing, or thinking about something
memories	ذكريات	things that you remember from the past about a person, place, or experience
rhythm	إيقاع	a regular repeated pattern of sounds or movements
tone	نغمة / لحن	the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech, an activity

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

scene

مشهد (مكان حدوث شيء سيئ)

Ambulance crews were at the accident **scene** within minutes.

site

موقع (مستخدم لغرض محدد أو حدوث شيء مهم)

There are plans to develop the **site** for housing.

The area has become a dumping **site** for nuclear waste.

venue

موقع حدث (مكان حدث كاجتماع أو حفل أو لعبة)

The **venue** for the next Olympic Games is America.

The hotel is a popular wedding **venue**.

1

<p>power قوة / سلطة (القدرة على التحكم أو التأثير على الآخرين أو الأحداث، أو الطاقة المنتجة)</p> <p>strength قوة / متانة (القدرة الجسدية على التحمل أو رفع الأثقال، أو الصلابة المعنوية)</p> <p>energy طاقة / نشاط (القدرة على بذل الجهد أو القيام بالعمل، أو القوة الطبيعية)</p>	<p>The new wind turbines will generate enough power to supply the entire town.</p> <p>The king had the power to rule the entire country.</p> <p>Nader's incredible strength allowed him to lift heavy weights with ease.</p> <p>Yoga helps to boost your energy levels and reduce stress.</p>
<p>classic كلاسيكي / نموذجي (يصف شيئاً عالي الجودة ويمكن أن يكون قديماً أو حديثاً)</p> <p>classical كلاسيكي / تقليدي (يشير إلى الفنون والعلوم والأدب والعمارة من العصور القديمة)</p> <p>classics الفنون / الآداب الكلاسيكية (خاص بالأدب والتاريخ واللغات والفنون من العالم القديم)</p>	<p>The classic movie "Casablanca" remains a timeless favorite among movie enthusiasts.</p> <p>She has a deep appreciation for classical music, especially the works of Mozart.</p> <p>The library's section on classics included works by authors like Shakespeare and Dickens.</p>
<p>normal طبيعي / عادي (يشير إلى ما يتوافق مع المعيار أو المتوسط الشائع، أو ما هو متوقع)</p> <p>natural طبيعي / فطري (يوجد في الطبيعة أو يحدث دون تدخل بشري، يتوافق مع الصفات الفطرية)</p>	<p>After a few days of illness, her temperature returned to normal.</p> <p>The park's natural beauty made it a popular spot for hiking and picnics.</p>

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- can be defined as a regular repeated pattern of sounds or movements.
a) Pause b) Signal c) Rhythm d) Verse
- are tall yellow spring flowers with a tube-shaped part in the middle.
a) Daffodils b) Herbs c) Oaks d) Petals
- Tourists were amazed by the beauty of the archaeological near the Valley of the Kings.
a) destination b) scene c) venue d) site
- After studying for hours, I felt tired and had no left to continue.
a) strength b) energy c) muscle d) influence
- The museum displayed sculptures from ancient Greece and Rome.
a) classical b) classic c) classics d) classified
- Fruits and vegetables are sources of vitamins.
a) chemical b) artificial c) natural d) normal

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The children's laughter filled the playground as they played together in the sunshine.
a) mournful b) cheerful c) careful d) serious
2. The writer used a friendly in the story to make it more enjoyable for young readers.
a) tone b) rhythm c) reason d) view
3. The new road system could really improve traffic between many cities in Egypt.
a) float b) shock c) hole d) flow
4. Wheat fields like golden waves as the wind swept across the farmland.
a) froze b) heated c) swayed d) jumped
5. I sometimes don't understand the of my teenage son's actions.
a) science b) search c) art d) logic
6. The tourists through the old streets, admiring the beautiful buildings.
a) wandered b) rushed c) stopped d) called
7. The teacher treats all the students and never shows any favoritism / محاباة / تفضيل.
a) differently b) equally c) reflectively d) hopefully
8. In with last year's results, this year's grades are much higher.
a) relation b) discussion c) comparison d) progress
9. Despite the conflict between the two nations, diplomats worked hard to maintain relations.
a) hostile b) peaceful c) aggressive d) joyful
10. The of women's rights runs through most of the female writer's novels.
a) plot b) simile c) metaphor d) theme
11. The scientists collected soil samples from the forest for to determine its content.
a) analysis b) treatment c) result d) error
12. Shakespeare, whose plays are famous everywhere, was the greatest poet and in English literature.
a) filmmaker b) biographer c) playwright d) novelist
13. The team showed great when they continued playing even after losing a player.
a) sadness b) strength c) silence d) fear
14. The problem of air pollution is especially in cities because of the heavy traffic jams.
a) cheerful b) simple c) fading d) serious
15. Everyone at the party was in a mood, laughing and dancing together.
a) serious b) tired c) joyful d) peaceful
16. Nearly all cultures a good harvest because it means they'll have food for the next year.
a) celebrate b) remind c) separate d) create
17. My old photographs had over the years, making it difficult to see the faces clearly.
a) sharpened b) faded c) enhanced d) darkened
18. The opening of the play immediately captured the audience's attention with its dramatic intensity.
a) chapter b) verse c) scene d) poem

19. The restaurant had a atmosphere with music playing and people chatting enthusiastically.
 a) dull b) peaceful c) natural d) lively
20. The documentary showed stories of people who overcame incredible challenges.
 a) disappointing b) inspiring c) helpless d) forgettable
21. The math problem was too for the students to solve without the teacher's help.
 a) complex b) simple c) cheerful d) easy
22. Using colorful pictures can your presentation and make it more interesting.
 a) hide b) reduce c) delay d) enhance
23. The fireworks created a atmosphere that amazed everyone.
 a) boring b) magical c) serious d) normal
24. The poem creates a strong in the reader's mind of peace and beauty.
 a) picture b) rhyme c) image d) object
25. Despite the uncertainty of the situation, they remained and believed that things would eventually improve.
 a) hopeful b) ideal c) sensible d) essential

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

26. The slow music calm and peace that made me feel relaxed after a long day.
 a) released b) added c) endangered d) included
27. The artist managed to turn a simple piece of wood a beautiful sculpture.
 a) of b) in c) into d) from
28. The poet repeated the same sound at the end of each line to create a
 a) long sentence b) funny story c) strange idea d) musical effect
29. Regular exercise helps you build your physical strength and stay healthy. The antonym of the word "strength" is ".....".
 a) resilience b) peace c) toughness d) weakness
30. The human brain is a very complex system that controls everything we do. The synonym of the word "complex" is ".....".
 a) simple b) complicated c) magical d) serious
31. We celebrated our 25th wedding anniversary in Alexandria. The antonym of the verb "celebrate" is ".....".
 a) mourn b) discourage c) rejoice d) attend
32. The teacher asked the students to silence their phones during the examination. The adjective of the verb "silence" is ".....".
 a) silences b) silencing c) silent d) silently
33. The story about the poor child's kindness really the reader's heart.
 a) touches b) surprises c) confuses d) extends
34. The national day is a celebration the country's history and achievements.
 a) up b) of c) to d) at
35. The classroom was full of lively students who were excited to start the project. The adjective "lively" is similar in meaning to ".....".
 a) effective b) dull c) serious d) energetic

B Language

Adjectives (Important Notes)

ملاحظات هامة على الصفات

1 تأتي الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية:

be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.

She seems **tired**.

The food tastes **good**.

2 الصفات الآتية لا تأتي بعدها أسماء:

afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, sorry, unable, upset, unaware, etc.

They are still **alive**.

He seems **upset** about the news.

3 الصفات الآتية لا تأتي منفردة بل يجب أن يأتي بعدها اسم:

chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

I like **outdoor activities** such as skiing, climbing, and hiking.

4 بعض الصفات تستخدم مع **the** كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.

The **rich** (**rich people**) should help and support **the poor** (**poor people**).

5 الصفات المنتهية ب **ing** تصف الأشياء والأشخاص (ماله تأثير على الآخر) والصفات المنتهية ب **ed** تصف المشاعر:

The movie was **interesting**.

We were **interested** in the movie.

The strong man was **frightening**.

The little boys were **frightened** of him.

6 هناك كلمات تأتي الصفة بعدها ومنها:

everyone

everybody

everything

everywhere

anyone

anybody

anything

anywhere

someone

somebody

something

somewhere

no one

nobody

nothing

nowhere

Have you ever met **anyone important**?

(not important anyone)

Is there **somewhere safe** where I can leave my bike?

(not safe somewhere)

I haven't done **anything useful** for 3 days.

(not useful anything)

7 هناك صفات تنتهي ب **ly** ويجب حفظها لتجنب التشابه بينها وبين الحال ومنها:

elderly

مسن

lonely

وحيدًا / يشعر بالوحدة

ugly

قبيح

fatherly

أبوي

lovely

محبوب

deadly

مमित

friendly

ودود

motherly

كالأم

heavenly

سماوي

lively

مفعم بالحياة

silly

سخيف

cowardly

جبان

brotherly

أخوي

likely

متوقع / محتمل

neighborly

حسن الجوار

a bus driver	سائق الأتوبيس	bus drivers	سائقو الأتوبيسات
two million pounds			كلمة «مليون» هي اسم ولكنها هنا صفة لأن بعدها اسم لذلك لم تجمع:
the book fair	معرض الكتاب	book fairs	معارض الكتب
a five-day holiday	إجازة خمسة أيام	five-day holidays	إجازات كل منها خمسة أيام

The order of adjectives ترتيب الصفات

Opinion	Fact adjectives						Noun
	size	age	shape	color	origin	material	used for
It's a nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner table.

وفي الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

I have a **beautiful white wedding** dress.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The food from that new restaurant smells
 a) nicely b) nice c) nicest d) nicer
- He was so after hearing the news.
 a) pleasure b) pleasing c) a pleased d) pleased
- The are often overlooked in society, so the rich should help them.
 a) poor b) poor people c) people d) poorest
- Everyone enjoys working with Amina because she is such an colleague.
 a) inspired b) inspiration c) inspiring d) inspire
- Mona is looking for to help her with the project.
 a) reliable someone b) someone reliable
 c) reliable d) a reliable someone

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- Rich people have a big responsibility. (The rich ...)

- His behavior was confusing. (confused)

- Let's find a quiet place for our meeting. (somewhere)

- We had a holiday for five days. (day)

- It takes ten minutes to walk to the station. (It is ...)

EXTRA POINTS

1 يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل **much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/rather/even/slightly** قبل صفات المقارنة سواء **er... أو more**

Gold is **much/a lot more** expensive than wood.

Traveling by train is **a little/a bit cheaper** than traveling by car.

2 نستخدم **no/never** دائما في صيغة المقارنة.

No river in the world is longer **than** the Nile.

I've **never** bought a faster car **than** Mercedes.

3 نستخدم **ever** في صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

Mercedes is **the fastest** car I've **ever** bought.

4 نستخدم **less + adjective + than** للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع كل الصفات.

Silver is **less** expensive **than** gold.

This book is **less** interesting **than** that one.

Fiat is **less** cheap **than** Toyota.

5 مع التركيب الآتية نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما ... كلما)

اسم + صفة مقارنة + **the** + اسم + صفة مقارنة + **the**

The **more** books you read, the **more** information you get.

The **fewer** mistakes you make, the **higher** marks you get

6 لا نستخدم **the** قبل صفات التفضيل إذا سبقها صفة ملكية أو **'s** التي تأتي للملكية.

Ali is **my best** friend.

Mohamed Salah is **Egypt's most famous** footballer.

7 هناك صفات مشتركة في النوعين فتأخذ **er/est or more/the most** وهي:

clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc. **simple - simpler - simplest (more simple - the most simple)**

8 هناك مقارنة نستخدم فيها **the** بين شيئين من نوع واحد:

Of the two cars, this is **the faster**.

Noha is **the younger** of two girls.

9 نستخدم **most** بدون **the** بمعنى «إلى أقصى حد» أو **very** ولا يوجد أي شكل من أشكال المقارنة أو التفضيل في الجملة.

I am **most** grateful for your help.

The scenery at the mountaintop was **most** beautiful during sunrise.

10 نستخدم (**of**) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

He is the **cleverest** of his friends in electronics.

11 نستخدم (**in**) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان .

Cairo is the **biggest** city **in** Egypt.

12 لاحظ استخدام (**from**) مع (**farthest**) واستخدام (**nearest**) مع (**to**).

Luxor is the **farthest** city **from** Cairo.

Banha is the **nearest** city **to** Cairo.

13 إذا وجدنا فعل حركي فإن ما يصف الفعل هو حال فإذا كان الحال ينتهي بـ **ly** فإن المقارنة ستكون **more ... than**

Ali speaks English **more fluently than** his friends.

He runs ... (quicker - more quickly) **than** me.

عند الإجابة على هذا السؤال لاحظ ان الفعل **run** يأخذ **quickly** بعده وليس **quick** فالإجابة في المقارنة تكون **more quickly**

later/latter/last/latest

later

(بعد ذلك / لاحقاً)

تشير كلمة «later» إلى وقت في المستقبل وهي المقارنة من late .

Right now I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you later.

ودائماً عندما نقول مع السلامة لشخص مع المقابلة مرة أخرى في وقت لاحق نقول "See you later!"

latter

(الثاني / الأخير)

نستخدم كلمة «latter» عندما نشير إلى الثاني من شخصين أو شيئين يتم ذكرهما.

I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on the latter.

الأخير يعني الثاني من الشيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب.

last

(الأخير)

آخر شيء أو شخص ولا شيء أو شخص بعده / أقرب شيء للوقت الحاضر.

The next meeting will be held in the last week in June.

The guard was the last person to see his boss alive.

latest

(الأحدث)

تشير إلى الأحدث وتستخدم للإشارة إلى التحديثات أو الاتجاهات أو أحدث المعلومات.

Have you heard the latest news?

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I feel today than I did yesterday — I think I'm fine.

- a) good b) better c) more well d) more good

2. The analysis results were the doctor expected — he had predicted a much worse outcome.

- a) worse than b) as bad as c) less bad than d) much bad as

3. This is difficult task I've ever done.

- a) more b) my the most c) my most d) much

4. Between apples and oranges, I prefer the

- a) last b) latest c) later d) latter

5. Adel's food is pizza, so he always orders it for lunch.

- a) more favorite b) much favorite
c) most favorite d) the most favorite

2 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and then write it correctly:

1. We were disappointing by the service. (.....)
2. Did you meet interesting anyone at the party? (.....)
3. Have you seen his late movie? It just came out. (.....)
4. Ola speaks politely, but her sister speaks politely. (.....)
5. Of my two sons, Ahmed is the tall. (.....)

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A: How old is your brother? B: He's 16. He is two years than me.
 a) old b) older c) elder d) elderly
2. Hany felt when he passed the exams with high marks.
 a) much happier b) more happily c) much happiest d) much happy
3. Ahmed's way in solving problems is than anyone else.
 a) good b) well c) best d) better
4. Noha is much calmer than Hana, so before their exams Hana was much Noha.
 a) less nervous than b) more nervous than c) more nervous as d) more nervous
5. The more you practice, the your muscles will be.
 a) more strong b) strongest c) stronger d) most strong
6. Eman is student than Huda.
 a) a good b) a better c) the best d) the better
7. This hotel is better than that one, but the big one is the Its price is very high.
 a) worst b) bad c) good d) best
8. Perhaps my performance looked bad this morning, but his looked
 a) badly b) the worst c) more badly d) worse
9. We aren't the same height. You're than me.
 a) taller b) higher c) longer d) bigger
10. Mona and Jana are as as each other.
 a) old b) older c) eldest d) the oldest
11. Eating organic food is than eating fast foods.
 a) much more healthy b) far healthier c) more healthier d) much healthy
12. This design is than the previous one.
 a) simpler b) more simpler c) the simplest d) Both A and B
13. A: How much do we have to wait for the next bus? B: About an hour.
 a) long b) longer c) longest d) more long
14. I think *Oliver Twist* is Dickens' famous novel.
 a) the more b) the most c) most d) a most
15. The more you study, the exams become.
 a) easiest b) easier c) easy d) more easier
16. Ahmed's brother works at the hospital.
 a) the elder b) the oldest c) elder d) old
17. I bought carpet.
 a) an Egyptian colorful beautiful b) a beautiful Egyptian colorful
 c) a beautiful colorful Egyptian d) a colorful beautiful Egyptian
18. Between hiking and swimming, I prefer the because it's more relaxing.
 a) later b) latter c) last d) latest
19. The quicker you are, the you feel after an hour.
 a) tired b) most tired c) less tired d) more tired
20. Sara is of the two sisters.
 a) smartest b) much smarter c) a lot smart d) the smarter

21. The lecture we attended last night was engaging than the one last month.
 a) almost as b) a little more c) the least d) less more
22. Cristiano Ronaldo is one of the world's footballers.
 a) good b) the best c) best d) better
23. This soup tastes delicious when it's freshly made.
 a) most b) much c) the most d) a lot of
24. Among all the cousins, Omar is and the most responsible.
 a) elder b) more elder c) the eldest d) oldest
25. Everyone says my cousin is dressed than I am.
 a) well b) good c) the best d) better
26. For me, running is tiring than walking.
 a) a lot more b) a lot c) much d) as
27. Ahmed's speech is his friend's.
 a) as serious than b) more serious than
 c) more seriously than d) much serious than
28. Mohamed Salah is! All people respect him.
 a) How intelligent footballer b) What an intelligent footballer
 c) What intelligent a footballer d) What an intelligent a footballer
29. I live 2 km from my mother. My sister lives 1 km from her.
 a) My house is nearer to my mother's house than my sister's is.
 b) My house is farther from my mother's house than my sister's is.
 c) My sister's house is farther from my mother's house than mine is.
 d) My sister and I are the same distance from my mother.
30. Omar is the student in the group. He never speaks up.
 a) shy b) shyer c) shyest d) more shy

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. She is the kindest person I know. (No one ...)

2. It is the most difficult exam I have ever taken. (never)

3. Gold is more expensive than silver. (Silver is ...)

4. If the weather is colder, we will need warmer clothes. (The ...)

5. It is an interesting story. (What ...!)

3 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and then write it correctly:

1. I like both math and science, but I prefer the later. (.....)
2. Today's weather is best than yesterday's for a picnic. (.....)
3. This is the Ali's most valuable watch. (.....)
4. He is the strongest from all the players. (.....)
5. This is the most brilliant surgeon I have never met. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- The painter tried to capture the of the daffodil flowers in his artwork.
a) beauty b) rhyme c) color d) smell
- She studied literature at university, focusing on works by the Greek poets Homer and Virgil.
a) recent b) classical c) classified d) modern
- He had a expression on his face when he realized he was at the wrong address.
a) musical b) joyful c) confused d) pleased
- The movie's most exciting is its ending, which surprises everyone.
a) quantity b) style c) reason d) feature
- The professor asked the students to include a at the end of their research to show where they found the information.
a) cause b) result c) reference d) science
- It's to feel a little nervous before speaking in front of a big audience.
a) rude b) normal c) strange d) serious
- The children shouted with when they saw the fireworks in the sky.
a) joy b) anger c) expectancy d) hope
- The team played with great and never gave up, even when they were losing.
a) fear b) silence c) magic d) spirit
- Her to speak three languages fluently helped her get the job.
a) habit b) ability c) energy d) intention
- There was sudden in the classroom when the headmaster entered as the children felt afraid.
a) relevance b) noise c) silence d) excitement
- The writer described the scene so that the readers could imagine it easily.
a) vividly b) quickly c) faintly d) lovely
- Understanding is essential for any musician learning to read and perform music properly.
a) reference b) texture c) rhythm d) temperature
- My grandmother loves to share her with us and often tells us great stories.
a) theories b) memories c) wishes d) dangers
- A poem with an AABB rhyme means that the first two lines rhyme and the next two lines rhyme.
a) scheme b) topic c) figure d) subject
- We spent the afternoon wandering along the beach, talking and collecting shells. The antonym of the word "wander" is ".....".
a) create b) replace c) settle d) roam

Language

- Leila is than her sister, despite being born two years later.
a) much taller b) so tall c) more tall d) less taller
- Could you speak, please? I can't hear you over the noise.
a) more loudly b) the most loudly c) loudlier d) a loudly
- This tree is than the building over there.
a) more taller b) the tallest c) very tall d) a bit taller

19. It is more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
 a) very b) little c) far d) few
20. The second exercise is more difficult than the first.
 a) rather b) so c) as d) many
21. Some mushrooms are edible **يمكن تناوله** while others, which look almost identical, contain poisons.
 a) died b) dead c) dying d) deadly
22. The chapter is very interesting.
 a) late b) last c) latest d) latter
23. Of the two sisters, Magda is the
 a) old b) most old c) elder d) elderly
24. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere?
 a) more quiet b) much quiet c) most quiet d) quieter
25. Is there where I can leave my bag?
 a) somewhere safe b) safe somewhere
 c) anywhere safe d) safe anywhere
26. Ali sleeps than he did before the operation.
 a) deeper b) deeply c) very deep d) more deeply
27. The Pharaohs' Golden Parade is majestic than any other. People enjoyed watching it all over the world.
 a) far more b) lot c) exactly as d) less
28. One of the following is grammatically correct:
 a) Our new car is much more bigger than our old one.
 b) Our old car was much more smaller than our new one.
 c) Our old car was much smaller than our new one.
 d) Our old car was as almost smaller as our new one.
29. Nobody else in my family has as interesting stories as my grandmother.
 a) much b) more c) many d) little
30. people live in the South than in the North of America.
 a) More b) Most c) The most d) Many
31. Omar can run than all the other boys in his class.
 a) much quickly b) most quickly c) quickly d) more quickly
32. My grandmother is kinder than anyone in the family. This means that
 a) anyone in the family is kinder than my grandmother
 b) my grandmother is as kind as anyone in the family
 c) no one in my family is kinder than my grandmother
 d) my grandmother shows no kindness towards anyone
33. The careful you are, the mistakes you will make.
 a) most / few b) more / fewer c) much / fewest d) very / little
34. You won't find restaurant than this. They'll all be expensive as this one.
 a) the cheapest / as b) a cheaper / as c) a cheaper / more d) a cheaper / so
35. She gave the answer in the exam — everyone agreed.
 a) clever b) cleverer c) cleverest d) more clever



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

How to Write a Poem

What is a poem?

A poem is a **special kind of writing** that often sounds musical and helps readers **feel or imagine** something deeply.

القصيدية هي نوع خاص من الكتابة التي غالبًا ما تبدو موسيقية وتساعد القراء على الشعور بشيء ما أو تخيله بعمق.

Key features of a poem السمات الرئيسية للقصيدية

Use **rhythm** and **sometimes rhyme**.

استخدم الإيقاع وأحيانًا القافية.

Express **emotions** or **ideas**.

عبر عن المشاعر أو الأفكار.

Often use **imagery** (words that create pictures in the mind).

غالبًا ما يستخدم الصور (الكلمات التي تخلق صورًا في العقل).

It can be **short** or **long**, **serious** or **funny**.

يمكن أن تكون قصيرة أو طويلة، جادة أو مضحكة.

How to Write a Simple Poem (Step by Step)

1 Choose a topic:

Pick something **you know or feel strongly about**, like:

A feeling (joy, fear, sadness, hope).

Something in nature (sun, rain, trees, animals).

A person (a friend, a parent, yourself).

An idea (dreams, kindness, courage).

2 Think of feelings and images:

Ask yourself:

Do you want the poem to be **happy**, **sad**, **hopeful**, **funny**, or **serious**?

Use simple, clear **images**, not big or complicated words.

3 Use adjectives and comparisons:

(bright, quiet, as tall as a tree)

4 Choose a simple structure (poems don't need full sentences):

• Start with something very simple like:

Four lines per stanza.

Lines that rhyme (cat/hat, sing/wing) — but rhyme is not always necessary.

5 Keep lines short.

6 Rhyme (optional):

Read it out loud — does it sound smooth?

Check your rhymes and rhythm.

Make sure it matches the feeling you wanted.

Helpful Tips

Use everyday language.

Keep lines short (5–8 words).

Don't worry about big vocabulary.

Use rhyme **only if you want to**.

Write from your heart!

WRITING TASK 1

Step	What to Do	Example
1. Choose a topic.	Pick something you know or feel (a feeling, nature, a person, or an idea).	Topic: Hope
2. Think of feelings and images.	Choose the feeling of the poem: happy, sad, hopeful, funny, serious, etc.	Tone: Hopeful and positive
3. Pick a simple structure.	Choose a rhyme pattern (AABB or ABAB), or free verse (no rhyme).	Structure: 4 lines per stanza, AABB rhyme
4. Use simple images.	Use clear, easy words and visual images. Avoid complicated or fancy language.	Say "the sun shines" instead of "celestial light emerges"
5. Start writing.	Begin writing your first 4-line stanza based on your topic and tone.	The morning sun begins to rise / It paints the gold across the skies ...
6. Read and revise.	Read your poem aloud. Fix anything that feels awkward or unclear.	Change words or lines to improve rhyme or meaning.

Sample Poem: "A New Day"

The morning sun begins to rise,
It paints the gold across the skies.
I take a breath, I feel brand new,
Today brings hope in all I do.

WRITING TASK 2

Write a 4-line poem about your favorite place.

العنوان	المحتوى
Place	Home (المنزل)
Adjective	Cozy (مريح)
Simile	As warm as the sun (دافئ كالشمس)
Feeling Word	Love (حب)
Poem	My cozy home feels like a hug, As warm as the sun when skies are snug. I'm filled with love when I'm inside, Safe and calm with nothing to hide.

6. Mourad thought he was certainly in danger, so
- a) he was suffering from heart problems b) he asked Basel for help
c) the detective warned him not to take the train d) the doctor had examined him the day before
7. Basel was in Aswan
- a) because he worked as a policeman there b) because he was on a secret mission
c) to investigate Mourad's murder d) to arrest the people who killed
8. According to the passage, one must the others when they ask.
- a) help b) ignore c) encourage d) defeat

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. The government has taken serious steps to take care of people with disabilities, integrate them into society, and facilitate all means to make them a tool of progress.
- a) لقد اتخذت الحكومة خطوات خطيرة للعناية بذوى الهمم ودمجهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل السبل لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.
b) لقد اتخذت الحكومة خطوات جادة للعناية بذوى الهمم ودمجهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل السبل لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.
c) لقد اتخذت الحكومة مراحل جادة للعناية بذوى الإعاقات ودمجهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل المعاني لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.
d) لقد اتخذت الحكومة خطوات حرجة للعناية بذوى الإعاقات واتحادهم في المجتمع وتيسير كل السبل لجعلهم أداة من أدوات التقدم.
2. Arab literature is full of great writers who could express their society well. The most famous of them is Naguib Mahfouz, who is the only Arab writer to win the Nobel Prize.
- a) الأدب العربي ممتلئ بالكتاب العظماء الذين عجزوا عن التعبير عن مجتمعهم بشكل جيد وأشهرهم نجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربي الأول الذي فاز بجائزة نوبل.
b) الأدب العربي ممتلئ بالكتاب العظماء الذين تمكنوا من التعبير عن مجتمعهم بشكل جيد وأشهرهم نجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربي الأول الذي فاز بجائزة نوبل.
c) الأدب العربي ممتلئ بالكتاب العظماء الذين تمكنوا من التعبير عن مجتمعهم بشكل جيد وأشهرهم نجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربي الوحيد الذي فاز بجائزة نوبل.
d) الأدب العربي ممتلئ بالمتقنين العظماء الذين تمكنوا من التعبير عن مجتمعهم بشكل جيد وأشهرهم نجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربي الوحيد الذي فاز بجائزة نوبل.
3. Education is the most important factor for the development of human civilization. Besides, it is the only way by which a change and development in the society can be taken into effect.
- a) التعليم هو أهم عامل لتطور الحضارة الإنسانية وإلى جانب ذلك، فإنه الطريقة الوحيدة التي يمكن من خلالها وضع التغيير والتطور في المجتمع موضع التنفيذ.
b) التعليم هو أهم عامل لتطور الحضارة الإنسانية وإلى جانب ذلك، فإنه الطريقة الوحيدة التي يمكن من خلالها وضع التغيير والتطور في المجتمع موضع التأثير.
c) التعليم هو أهم عامل لتطور الثقافة الإنسانية ورغم ذلك، فإنه الطريقة الوحيدة التي يمكن من خلالها وضع التغيير والتطور في المجتمع موضع التنفيذ.
d) التعليم هو أهم عامل لتطور الثقافة الإنسانية ورغم ذلك، فإنه الطريقة الوحيدة التي يمكن من خلالها وضع التغيير والتطور في المجتمع موضع التأثير.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. تسهم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي في نقل الأفكار والآراء المتعلقة بقضية معينة لعدد كبير من الأشخاص في مناطق مختلفة من العالم، وتتيح بذلك المجال لبلورة رأى عام دولي مساند لبعض القضايا.
- a) Social media contribute to the transmission of ideas and opinions communicated to a particular issue to a large number of people in different regions of the world, and thus allow the forming of an international public opinion in support of some issues.
b) Social media contribute to the transmission of ideas and opinions related to a particular issue to a large number of people in different regions of the world, and thus allow the development of an international general opinion in support of some issues.
c) Social media contribute to the transmission of ideas and opinions related to a particular issue to a large number of people in different regions of the world, and thus allow the forming of an international public opinion in support of some issues.
d) Social media contribute to the transmission of ideas and opinions contacted to a particular issue to a large number of people in different regions of the world, and thus allow the development of an international special opinion in support of some issues.

5. يعتبر الأدب بمثابة مرآة للروح الإنسانية، ويكشف عن أعمق مخاوفنا وآمالنا وتناقضاتنا من خلال قوة القصة واللغة.

- Literature serves as a mirror to the humane soul, revealing our deepest fears, hopes, and contradictions through the power of story and language.
- Literature serves as a mirror to the human soul, revealing our deepest fears, hopes, and contradictions through the power of story and language.
- Literature serves as a mirror to the human soul, prevailing our deepest fears, hopes, and contradictions thoroughly the power of story and language.
- Literature serves as a mirror to the humane soul, prevailing our deeper fears, hopes, and contradictions thoroughly the power of story and language.

6. يمكن أن يساهم تعلم لغة جديدة في زيادة التسامح بسبب التعرض لمجموعة متنوعة من الثقافات. وتظهر بعض الدراسات أن هناك علاقة بين أن تكون ثنائي اللغة وأن يكون لديك نظرة أكثر إيجابية.

- Learning a new language could contribute to greater tolerance because of the exposure to a variety of cultures. Some studies show there is a relation between being bilingual and having a more positive outlook.
- Learning a new language could contribute to greater tolerance because of the exposure to a variety of agricultures. Some studies show there is a relation between being bilingual and have a more positive outlook.
- Learning a new language could contribute to greater tolerant because of the exposure to a variety of cultures. Some studies show there is a relation among being bilingual and having a more positive outlook.
- Learning a new language could contribute to greater tolerance because the exposure to a variety of cultures. Some studies show this is a relation between being bilingual and having more positive outlook.

(C) Writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which sentence has the correct punctuation?

- Look at that duck! Its hard to see it's neck.
- Look at that duck! It's hard to see its neck.
- Look at that duck! Its hard to see its neck.
- Look at that duck? It's hard to see its neck.

2. Which sentence has the correct punctuation?

- He accidentally drove down a one way street.
- He accidentally drove down a- one-way street.
- He accidentally drove down a one-way street.
- He accidentally drove down a one-way-street.

3. Which of the following is a common feature of poems?

- Bullet points.
- Rhyme and rhythm.
- Index and glossary.
- Table of contents.

4. Which of the following is an example of a poetic device?

- Simile.
- Subtraction.
- Quotation.
- Caption.

5. What does "rhyme" mean in a poem?

- The meaning of the poem.
- The pattern of words.
- The repetition of similar sounds at the end of lines.
- The length of the poem.

5 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

"The role of women in society"

Enrich your vocabulary

integrate	يدمج / يمزج	tolerance	تسامح	reveal	يكشف - ينشر سراً
factor	عامل	contribute to	يسهم في	bilingual	ثنائي اللغة
soul	روح	facilitate	يسهل	exposure	يتعرض لـ
contradictions	تناقضات	transmission	انتقال / نقل		



Vocabulary

1 Match the words to their meanings:

Words	Meanings
1. imagery	• a conversation between characters in a play
2. dialog	• the beginning or origin of something
3. morals	• language that creates pictures in the reader's mind
4. non-fiction	• writing based on facts, not imagination
5. root	• lessons about right and wrong

2 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

literature – fiction – struggles – prose – wisdom

- The hero in this novel to overcome the challenges.
- Poetry, drama, and legends are forms of that reflect human culture.
- Unlike poetry, is written in ordinary language and follows natural speech patterns.
- Through the old man's stories, the young hero gained the needed to complete his quest.
- Although it's a work of, the characters feel incredibly real.

Language

3 Choose the correct answer:

- This movie is (more exciting/most exciting) than the one we saw yesterday.
- Ahmed is the (tall/tallest) student in the class.
- My car is (faster/fastest) than yours.
- This exam was (better/best) than the last one.
- Of all the shops, this one is the (cheap/cheapest).

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of adjectives in brackets:

- My house is (big) than yours.
- This street is the (busy) in the city.
- Sara is (good) at English than Hala.
- Summer is (hot) than winter.
- Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- Sara is the most intelligent student in the class. (smarter than)
.....
- No river in the world is longer than the Nile. (the longest)
.....
- Nada isn't so tall as Noha. (taller)
.....
- Egypt has the most beautiful tourist sites. (than)
.....
- This is the most interesting story I've ever read. (never)
.....

أولاً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجة واحدة»:

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Students who love reading and analyzing novels often choose to study English at university.
a) history b) literature c) biography d) discipline
- The folktale ended with a clear about the importance of honesty and kindness in life.
a) fiction b) moral c) quest d) research
- Unlike poetry, is written in ordinary language without rhyme or rhythm.
a) prose b) drama c) metaphor d) note
- It took the students a long time to make of the meaning of the long and complex poem.
a) word b) map c) way d) sense
- My favorite writer's articles usually have a smooth from one idea to the next, making them easy to read.
a) flow b) breeze c) border d) pause
- The author's writing had a sad throughout the short story, reflecting the tragedy of the events described.
a) prose b) form c) notice d) tone
- The museum displayed several classical paintings from ancient Greece and Rome. The antonym of the adjective "classical" is ".....".
a) traditional b) planned c) contemporary d) spontaneous
- This suitcase is than I expected.
a) more heavier b) much heavier c) heaviest d) as heavy
- The weather this winter is than last year.
a) more milder b) more mild c) milder d) the mildest
- As it was raining heavily, the driver saw nothing and the car became down the hill.
a) fast and faster b) fast and fast c) faster and faster d) faster and fast
- Box A is bigger than box B, and box C is bigger than box A. This means that
a) box B is the smallest box. b) box A is the biggest box.
c) box C is the smallest box d) box B is the biggest box.

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Egyptian literature is one of the oldest and richest in the world. It began around 3000 BCE and continued for thousands of years. Most early writings were found on the walls of temples, tombs, and pyramids. These writings were not only used for decoration but also told stories, shared religious beliefs, and gave advice on how to live a good life.

The Egyptians used a writing system called hieroglyphics, which was made up of symbols and pictures. Each symbol could represent a sound, a word, or an idea. Learning to read and write hieroglyphics was very difficult, so only a small group of people called scribes could do it. Scribes were respected because they helped keep records, write letters, and copy religious texts.

Many Egyptian stories were about gods, magic, and the afterlife. One famous story is The Tale of the Shipwrecked Sailor, where a man survives a storm and meets a talking **serpent**. Another important book is The Book of the Dead, which was placed in tombs to guide the dead through the afterlife. It included prayers, rules for living truthfully, and spells for protection.

Besides religious and magical stories, Egyptian literature also included poems, songs, and wisdom texts. These texts gave advice about honesty, hard work, and respecting family and others. Writers often used simple words so people could understand the lessons.

Today, Egyptian literature still teaches us about ancient life, beliefs, and culture. It shows that even thousands of years ago, people loved to tell stories, give advice, and share ideas. Egyptian writing and storytelling helped shape the way we think about the past.

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

12. Where were many of the early writings found?
 a) On paper scrolls. b) In the desert sand.
 c) On temple and tomb walls. d) Inside schools and libraries.
13. Why were scribes important in Egyptian society?
 a) They recorded and copied important texts. b) They helped with building temples.
 c) They painted tombs and walls. d) They ruled the people.
14. Which sentence best summarizes the last paragraph?
 a) Writing helped Egyptians to be good farmers.
 b) Egyptian literature has no modern value among people.
 c) Egyptian stories are only about magic.
 d) Egyptian literature still teaches us important lessons today.
15. The word serpent in the passage refers to a
 a) god b) snake c) large storm d) talking bird
16. In the sentence "These texts gave advice about honesty, hard work...", what does the word "these" refer to?
 a) Spells, prayers, and worship. b) Tombs and temples.
 c) Poems, songs, and wisdom texts. d) Writings of scribes and kings.
17. What can be deduced about the role of religion in Egyptian literature?
 a) Religion was never mentioned. b) It played a major role in writing and stories.
 c) Only kings wrote about religion. d) Religion was not important in daily life.
18. Which idea is NOT supported by the passage?
 a) Egyptian literature helped preserve beliefs. b) Literature included stories, songs, and advice.
 c) Every Egyptian could read hieroglyphics. d) Writing was used for both religious and daily life.
19. Why is Egyptian literature still important today?
 a) It teaches us how to build pyramids.
 b) It shows how modern books are better.
 c) It helps us understand ancient culture and beliefs.
 d) It shows that Egyptians had no interest in writing.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Reading stimulates your mind. It is like a workout for your brain. When people get old, their muscles begin to deteriorate. They get weaker and their strength decreases. Exercise can prevent this loss. The same thing happens to people's brains when they get older. Brainpower and speed decline with age. Reading strengthens your brain and prevents these declines.

Reading can make you a more powerful person. You can learn to do new things by reading. Do you want to make video games? Do you want to design clothing? Reading can teach you all this and more. Read everything that you can at school, whether it is interesting or not. Reading expands your vocabulary. Even a "boring" text can teach you new words. Having a larger vocabulary will help you better express yourself. You will be able to speak, write, and think more intelligently. What's boring about that?

Do not just discount a text because it is unfamiliar to you. Each time you read, you are exposed to new ideas and perspectives. Reading can change the way that you understand the world. It can give you a broader perspective on things. It can make you worldlier. You can learn how people live in faraway places. You can learn about cultures different from your own.

Reading is good for your state of mind. It has a calming effect. It can lower your stress levels and help you relax. You can escape from your troubles for a moment when you read, and it's a positive escape. The benefits of reading can't be counted. So do yourself a favor: the next time you get a reading assignment, take as much as you can from it. Squeeze it for every drop of knowledge that it contains. Then move on to the next one.

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

20. What prevents the deterioration of the muscles?
 a) Exercise. b) Reading. c) Knowledge. d) Sleep.
21. What do you think the underlined word "perspectives" means?
 a) Products. b) Viewpoints. c) Troubles. d) Loss.
22. Why does the author believe that reading is good for your mind state?
 a) It has a calming effect. b) It can lower your stress levels.
 c) It can help you relax. d) All of these.
23. Which best expresses the author's main purpose in writing this text?
 a) He is trying to persuade students to do their reading work.
 b) He is teaching people how to become better readers.
 c) He is explaining why people don't do their reading work.
 d) He is entertaining readers with facts about the mind and body.
24. Which of the following is not one of the author's main points?
 a) Reading broadens your perspective and makes you a better person.
 b) Reading is a relaxing activity with positive mental side effects.
 c) Reading helps you perform on tests and get into better schools.
 d) Reading keeps your mind in shape and prevents losses due to age.
25. The best title for the passage is ".....".
 a) Reading and the mind b) Some advantages of reading
 c) Some disadvantages of reading d) Reading helps you find a job
26. When you learn how people live and about cultures different from your own, you will be
 a) beloved b) unfamiliar c) ignorant d) experienced
27. Reading can do you a favor through positive
 a) escapism b) exercise c) treatment d) behavior
- ثانياً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجتان»:
28. That was movie I've ever seen.
 a) the most terrifying b) more terrifying c) the terrifying d) most terrifying
29. My grandmother's stories are mine.
 a) far interesting than b) much more interesting than
 c) a lot interesting than d) so interesting as
30. Most other metals aren't as gold.
 a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious
31. This new machine is the old one because it saves both time and energy.
 a) more efficient than b) efficiently than
 c) most efficient than d) more efficiency than
32. Ahmed is student in the class when answering questions in English.
 a) the confident b) the most confident
 c) the more confident d) more confidently
33. For details, you should check the official website.
 a) far b) the farther c) further d) the farthest
34. Which of the following punctuation marks is used in compound numbers?
 a) Dash. b) Hyphen. c) Colon. d) Comma.
35. Choose the suitable topic sentence for the following supporting sentences: We went there on holiday. It was sunny and breezy. The sand felt warm under our feet. We made sand castles and had lunch on our blanket. It was a fun time.
 a) Our family had a nice time at the beach.
 b) It was sunny and breezy.
 c) We made sand castles and had lunch on our blanket.
 d) The beach is my best place.

► Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

36. Through novels, poems, and plays, literature transcends time and culture, allowing us to walk in the shoes of others and understand worlds beyond our own.
- (a) من خلال الروايات والقصائد والمسرحيات، يتجاوز العلم الزمن والثقافة، مما يسمح لنا بالسير في أحذية الآخرين وتجاهل العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.
 (b) من خلال الروايات والقصائد والمسرحيات، يتجاوز الأدب الزمن والثقافة، مما يسمح لنا بخوض تجارب الآخرين وفهم العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.
 (c) من خلال الروايات والقصائد والألعاب، يتجاوز الأدب الزمن والمكان، مما يسمح لنا بالسير عكس اتجاه الآخرين وفهم العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.
 (d) من خلال القصص والروايات والمسرحيات، يتجاوز الأدب الزمن والثقافة، مما يسمح لنا بخوض تجارب الآخرين وفهم العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.
37. Good upbringing plays a crucial role in shaping man's character, as it instills values like honesty, respect, and responsibility that guide behavior throughout life.
- (a) تلعب التربية الجيدة دورًا حاسمًا في تشكيل شخصية الرجل، إذ تُغرس من خلالها قيم مثل الصدق، والاحترام، والمسئولية التي توجه السلوك طوال الحياة.
 (b) تلعب التربية الجيدة دورًا حاسمًا في تشكيل شخصية الإنسان، إذ تُغرس من خلالها قيم مثل الصدق، والاحترام، والحيادية التي توجه السلوك طوال الحياة.
 (c) تلعب التربية الجيدة دورًا حاسمًا في تشكيل شخصية الإنسان، إذ تثبت من خلالها قيم مثل الصدق، والاحترام، والمسئولية التي تواجه السلوك طوال الحياة.
 (d) تلعب التربية الجيدة دورًا حاسمًا في تشكيل شخصية الإنسان، إذ تُغرس من خلالها قيم مثل الصدق، والاحترام، والمسئولية التي توجه السلوك طوال الحياة.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

38. يجب على الوالدين والمعلمين التعاون لتوفير أساس أخلاقي للأطفال، مما يساعدهم على أن يصبحوا أفرادًا متعاطفين، وأخلاقيين، ومسؤولين في المجتمع.
- a) Parents and teachers must work together to provide children for a moral foundation, helping them come compassionate, ethical, and responsible members of society.
 b) Parents and teachers must work together to save children with a moral foundation, helping them become compassionate, ethical, and responsible organs of community.
 c) Parents and teachers must work together to provide children with a moral foundation, helping them become compassionate, ethical, and responsible members of society.
 d) Parents and teachers must work together to provide children with a moral formation, helping them become compassionate, ethical, and responsible members of society.
39. تولى الدولة المصرية اهتماما كبيرا للاستثمار في المشروعات القومية والتنمية في شتى القطاعات من أجل البناء والتنمية، إلى جانب فرص عمل للشباب وخفض معدلات البطالة.
- a) The Egyptian state pays great attention to investing in national and developmental projects in various sectors for construction and development, in addition to providing job opportunities for youth and reducing unemployment rates.
 b) The Egyptian state attaches great joy to investing in national and development projects in various sectors for construction and development, in addition to providing job opportunities for youth and reducing unemployment rates.
 c) The Egyptian state gives great interest to investing in national and development projects in various sectors for construction and development, in addition to providing job opportunities for youth and reducing employment rates.
 d) The Egyptian state pays great attention to investing in national and development projects in various departments for construction and development, in addition to providing job opportunities for youth and reducing unemployment rates.

ثالثًا: الأسئلة المقالية (كل سؤال درجتان):

► Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

40. No animal in the world is larger than the blue whale. (largest)
 41. She is the most talented singer I have ever heard. (never)

Answer the following questions: (The Count of Monte Cristo)

42. Do you think the Count is right to manipulate others, even if they are guilty? Why or why not?
 43. Is it possible for revenge to ever truly bring peace to someone's heart? Explain your view.

رابعًا: الأسئلة المقالية (سؤال واحد خمس درجات):

► Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

44. "The importance of charity work in Egypt"

Unit 12

University Life



Learning Outcomes

Reading - Identify main ideas & details in informational texts about choosing universities, campus life, and study programs.

Language - Form and use tag questions to check information and seek agreement across.

Listening - Get gist and key details from short talk/interviews about apprenticeships, study habits, and campus opportunities.

Writing - Write an opinion essay on the most important factor in choosing a university (claim, reasons, example, conclusion).
- Write a concise biography of a notable figure (sequenced stages, dates, achievements, legacy).

Speaking - Discuss and justify university/career choices using reasons and examples.

Study...

Part 1

Lesson 1: How Should Secondary Students Choose Their Universities?
Lesson 2: Apprenticeships

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

apprenticeship (n)	تدريب مهني	cultural awareness (n)	الوعي الثقافي	rehearsal (n)	تمرين/بروفة
career (n)	مهنة/مسار مهني	independence (n)	استقلال	reputation (n)	سمعة
counselor (n)	مستشار/مرشد	inspiring (adj)	مُلهِم/مَوْحِي	terrified (adj)	مرعوب/مفزع

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abroad (adv)	في الخارج	factor (n)	عامل	motivating (adj)	محفز/مشجع
advertise (v) (d)	يعلن عن	field (n)	حقل/مجال	particular (adj)	محدد/معين
applicant (n)	متقدم لوظيفة	financial (adj)	مالي	part-time (adj)	بدوام جزئي
ballet (n)	عرض باليه	first-class (adj)	درجة أولى/ممتاز	path (n)	مسار/طريق
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	freedom (n)	حرية	poster (n)	ملصق دعائي
clothing (n)	ملابس/ملبس	graduate (n) (v) (d)	خريج/يتخرج	production (n)	إنتاج
college (n)	كلية	guarantee (n) (v) (d)	ضمان/يضمن	professional (adj)	مهني/محترف
cost (n) (v)	تكلفة/يكلف	guidance (n)	إرشاد/توجيه	ranking (n)	ترتيب/تصنيف
costume (n)	زى	influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر	require (v) (d)	يتطلب
courage (n)	شجاعة	interest (n)	اهتمام	rest (n)	بقية/راحة
course (n)	دورة/مقرر	internship (n)	فترة تدريب	search (v) (ed)	يبحث/يفتحش
decision (n)	قرار	iron (n) (v) (ed)	حديد/يكوي (ملابس)	skilled (adj)	ماهر/ذو مهارة
degree (n)	درجة علمية	job opportunity (n)	فرصة عمل	step (n)	خطوة
drift (v) (ed)	ينجرف/يتأرجح بين	knowledge (n)	معرفة	tailoring (n)	خياطة
employer (n)	صاحب عمل	land (v) (ed)	يهبط/يحصل على وظيفة	temporary (adj)	مؤقت
engineering (n)	هندسة	lifestyle (n)	نمط حياة	trusted (adj)	موثوق
environment (n)	بيئة	location (n)	موقع	waistcoat (n)	صدرية/سُترة صدر
facilities (n)	مرافق/تسهيلات	match (v) (ed)	يناسب/يلتئم		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My uncle has had a successful as a lawyer for more than twenty years.
a) combination b) lifestyle c) career d) work
- Father always says that true means being able to make your own decisions responsibly.
a) reputation b) independence c) choice d) experience
- The company has a good for producing high-quality products.
a) excuse b) knowledge c) opinion d) reputation
- The little boy was when he saw the big dog running toward him and cried at once.
a) terrified b) cautious c) joyful d) aware

5. My brother studies medicine at a famous in the United States.
 a) enterprise b) company c) degree d) college
6. The poor boy is now serving a/an as a carpenter after leaving school.
 a) scholarship b) friendship c) apprenticeship d) degree
7. Candidates of the job must have a/an in computer science.
 a) degree b) permission c) mark d) ability
8. There was a large movie outside the cinema showing the main actors.
 a) board b) poster c) headline d) title

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة	for the rest of their lives	لبقية حياتهم	graduate with a first-class degree	يتخرج بدرجة امتياز
at the top of their game	في قمة أدائهم	for this reason	لهذا السبب	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
change your career path	تغير مسارك المهني	give advice about	يقدم نصيحة حول	make a choice	يقوم بالاختيار

Prepositions

حروف الجر

apprenticeship	for	تدريب مهني لـ	famous	for	مشهور بـ	kind of	نوع من
fall apart		ينهار/يتفكك	inspiring	to	مُلهم لـ	related to	مرتبط بـ

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
guarantee	يضمن	guarantee	ضمان	guaranteed	مضمون / مغطى بالتأمين
guide	يرشد	guidance	إرشاد	guiding	إرشادي
interest	يهم	interest	اهتمام	interesting interested	مثير للاهتمام مهتم
motivate	يحفز	motivation motivator	تحفيز دافع / محفز	motivating motivated	تحفيزي مُحفَّز
produce	ينتج	production producer	إنتاج منتج	productive	مثمر
rank	يصنف	ranking	تصنيف	ranked	مصنف / مرتب
rehearse	يتدرب	rehearsal	تدريب	rehearsed	مُدَرَّب
terrify	يرعب	terror	رعب	terrified terrifying	مرعوب مرعب
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trusted trusting	موثوق واثق

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The ghost stories were meant to **terrify** the children around the campfire. (v)
 The horror movie filled them with a sense of **terror** that lasted for hours. (n)
 He was **terrified** of disappointing his parents with his grades. (adj)
 Driving through the blizzard was a **terrifying** experience for new drivers. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
awareness	وعى	consciousness/understanding		ignorance/unawareness	جهل / عدم وعى
courage	شجاعة	bravery/fearlessness		cowardice/fear	جبن / خوف
drift	ينجرف / يتأرجح	wander/stray		settle/converge	يستقر / يلتقي
guidance	إرشاد	direction/advice		misdirection/confusion	تضليل / ارتباك
independence	استقلال	freedom/self-reliance		dependence/reliance	اعتماد / اعتمادية
land	يحصل على	secure/obtain		miss/lose	يفوت / يخسر
match	يناسب	equal/suit		mismatch/unequal	لا يناسب / لا يساوي
particular	معين	specific/certain		general/universal	عام
require	يتطلب	need/demand		dismiss/neglect	يصرف / يهمل
temporary	مؤقت	transient/short-term		permanent/long-term	دائم / طويل الأمد
terrified	مرعوب	frightened/scared		fearless/brave	غير خائف / شجاع
trusted	موثوق	reliable/dependable		untrusted/deceitful	غير موثوق / مخادع

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Before choosing a university, she decided to for advice from her teachers and counselors.
a) ask b) give c) put d) take
- The weather forecast predicted heavy rain; for this, the outdoor concert was postponed.
a) goal b) reason c) result d) search
- You should think carefully before you about your future career.
a) take a test b) have a rest c) make a decision d) do a job
- When their team lost the final match, some players began to fall emotionally.
a) away b) around c) about d) apart
- The teacher's dedication to her students was inspiring everyone who knew her.
a) of b) at c) to d) about
- Good teachers know how to motivate their students to achieve their full potential. The noun of the verb "motivate" is
a) motivates b) motivation c) motivated d) motivationally
- Environmental awareness has increased significantly over the past decade. The opposite of the noun "awareness" is
a) ignorance b) consciousness c) poverty d) guidance
- The manager paid particular attention to every detail in his project. The synonym of the adjective "particular" is
a) public b) specific c) accidental d) general

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Choosing a university is one of the most important decisions that secondary students will ever make. It can influence their **careers**⁽¹⁾, friendships, and even the kind of lifestyle they will have in the future. For this reason, students should take their time before making such a choice.

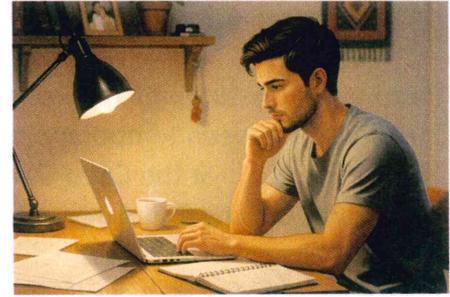
The first step is to think carefully about the subject they want to study. A student who loves science may be interested in medicine, engineering, or computer science, while someone who enjoys literature might choose languages, history, or education. Choosing a subject that matches personal interests and strengths is essential, because studying something you dislike will make university life difficult.

The second step is to consider the university itself. Some universities are well-known for particular subjects. For example, one university might be famous for business, while another has a strong **reputation**⁽²⁾ in engineering. Students should search rankings, but they should also look at what kind of support the university offers, such as libraries, sports facilities, and international opportunities.

Another important factor is location. Some students prefer to stay close to their families, while others want to experience living in a new city or even a new country. Studying abroad can give students valuable skills, such as **independence**⁽³⁾ and **cultural awareness**⁽⁴⁾, but it also requires courage and financial planning.

Finally, students should ask for advice. Teachers, parents, and career **counselors**⁽⁵⁾ can all provide helpful suggestions. Talking to older students who have already experienced university life can also be useful.

In conclusion, there is no single "best" university for everyone. The right choice depends on personal interests, the university's strengths, location, and the advice of trusted people. With good planning, students can make a decision that will benefit them for the rest of their lives.



- (1) مهين (2) سمعة
(3) استقلال (4) الوعي الثقافي
(5) مستشارين

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Studying abroad can be beneficial for students as it helps them develop
a) expertise in a specific academic field b) strong family bonds
c) athletic skills d) independence and cultural awareness
- A student who chooses a university that is far from their family should be prepared to
a) face financial struggles b) develop independence and self-reliance
c) sacrifice their academic performance d) give up extracurricular activities
- When making a decision about university, it's helpful for students to from people who have experienced university life.
a) seek advice and guidance b) follow directions
c) take orders d) ignore opinions
- Why is it essential to choose a subject that matches personal interests and strengths?
a) To impress friends. b) To get a high-paying job.
c) To make university study less stressful. d) To please parents.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Apprenticeships

Despite graduating with a first-class degree, Mona El-Sayed, 30, drifted between temporary jobs before landing a costume **apprenticeship** ⁽¹⁾ at the Cairo Opera House. Mona had studied publishing, but she found it hard to get work in her chosen field. She had always loved dressmaking, so she saved money and took a part-time one-year course in tailoring while continuing to work in a shop.



One day at college, she noticed a poster advertising a two-year apprenticeship, she applied and beat 70 other applicants to win the place. On her first day, she thought she would only be ironing clothes, but instead she was asked to make a waistcoat for a production of Aida by Verdi. It took her a week, and when she saw it being worn in the final **rehearsal** ⁽²⁾, she was **terrified** ⁽³⁾ it might fall apart.

- (1) تدريب مهني (2) تدريب / بروفة
(3) مرعوب (4) ملهم / موحى

Now, a year later, her confidence has grown. The best part is bringing friends to watch the ballets and operas, she says. Everyone here is at the top of their game, and it's so **inspiring** ⁽⁴⁾.

Although Mona hasn't guaranteed a job at the end of her apprenticeship, she believes it will show future employers that she has experienced real situations in a professional environment.

Definitions

التعريفات

apprenticeship	تدريب مهني	a period of training in a job
career	مهنة / مسار مهني	a job or professional path in life
counselor	مستشار / مرشد	a person who gives advice and guidance
cultural awareness	الوعي الثقافي	knowledge about different traditions and lifestyles
independence	استقلال	freedom to make your own decisions
inspiring	ملهم / موحى	motivating and encouraging
rehearsal	تدريب / بروفة	practice before the final performance
reputation	سمعة	the opinion people have about something or someone
terrified	مرعوب	very scared

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

advertise

يعلن عن / يروج (منتج أو افتتاح)

Most companies **advertise** their products on the Internet.

announce

يعلن عن (خبر / بيان)

The jury **announced** the winner of the competition to an excited audience.

rehearsal

تَمْرِين / بِرُوفَة (تمرين تحضيرى لأداء محدد مثل مسرحية أو حفل موسيقى)

The actors had a final **rehearsal** before the play.

training

تَدْرِيْب (عملية تعلم المهارات والمعرفة للقيام بعمل أو نشاط ما، غالباً ما يكون منظماً ولفترة محددة)

She received **training** in computer programming.

practice

مُمَارَسَة (تكرار نشاط أو مهارة بانتظام لتحسين الأداء فيها)

Daily **practice** is essential to master the piano.

degree

١- درجة (زاوية / حرارة / مستوى)
٢- شهادة جامعية

It was very cold yesterday. It was about 10 **degrees**.

All the students have different **degrees** of ability.

Applicants must have a **degree** in engineering.

certificate

١- وثيقة / شهادة (ميلاد / خبرة / ضمان)
٢- وثيقة / شهادة (دراسية كالثانوية)

In order to get a passport, you'll need your birth **certificate**.

Students who complete the program receive a skill **certificate**.

I got the General Secondary Education **Certificate** in 2005.

ranking

تَرْتِيْب / تَصْنِيْف (المركز أو الموقع النسبي بين مجموعة من المنافسين)

Gomana is the top-**ranking** student in her class this year.

applicant

مُتَقَدِّم بِطَلْب (للحصول على شيء مثل وظيفة / جنسية / تأشيرة)

Ten architects were selected from over 30 **applicants** for interview.

candidate

مُرْشَح (فى الانتخابات / وظيفة / وتنطبق عليه المواصفات المطلوبة)

One **candidate** must receive a majority of the vote.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Cultural can be defined as knowledge about different traditions and lifestyles.
a) misinformation b) activity c) research d) awareness
- A/An is a person who gives advice and guidance.
a) applicant b) counselor c) trainee d) innovator
- The director said the last went very well, and everyone was ready.
a) test b) lesson c) quiz d) training
- Companies often their products with bright colors and catchy words.
a) claim b) announce c) advertise d) respond
- The job advertisement asserted that applicants must have a in commerce from a good university.
a) degree b) ranking c) certificate d) permit
- Statistics show that around 20% of the in the last elections were women.
a) applicants b) candidates c) writers d) viewers

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Many teenagers ask a career for advice before choosing their future job.
a) manager. b) counselor c) pilot d) professor
2. Children slowly learn as they grow and start doing things on their own.
a) kindness b) ability c) independence d) generosity
3. Before the final tests, the teacher showed us a/an video about people who never give up.
a) noisy b) financial c) meaningless d) inspiring
4. The band needs more time before the concert next week.
a) rehearsal b) professional c) renewal d) trusted
5. The famous actress worked hard to maintain her as a reliable and honest businesswoman.
a) situation b) reputation c) attention d) solution
6. The young players confirm that they have greatly from the new gym sessions.
a) moved b) cured c) benefited d) beaten
7. Many language are run by the British Council in Egypt for many levels and prices.
a) researches b) colleges c) paths d) courses
8. Nowadays, many young people between different jobs before finding the right career.
a) run b) match c) drift d) travel
9. The new sporting club has enough for families with young children.
a) abilities b) facilities c) flexibilities d) productions
10. Students enjoy more when they go to university compared to school.
a) freedom b) boredom c) stardom d) security
11. My cousin with a BA in English in 2022 and is working as a teacher of English.
a) graded b) taught c) succeeded d) graduated
12. My grandfather has a lot of wisdom; we frequently seek his which helps us a lot.
a) control b) guidance c) warning d) ranking
13. I worked for the local newspaper as a kind of an during the summer vacation.
a) internship b) entrance c) interest d) influence
14. Many of my colleagues enjoy sharing their working with the new employees.
a) intention b) application c) knowledge d) perfection
15. Experts say that it is really important to keep your children healthy through their
a) attitude b) lifestyle c) custom d) dream
16. After trying many posts, Zain could find a career to his skills and qualifications.
a) design b) revise c) share d) match
17. Setting small goals each day can be very and help you stay focused and hopeful.
a) motivating b) affected c) defective d) negative
18. She's looking for a job only to be able to complete her university studies.
a) full-time b) private c) part-time d) total
19. All employees need to take a course to develop their abilities and remain employable.
a) temporary b) professional c) cultural d) emotional
20. According to the latest, Egypt is among the top tourist destinations in Africa.
a) linking b) degree c) ranking d) detection

21. Becoming a/an worker requires a lot of practice and patience that will take time.
 a) attentive b) contemporary c) careless d) skilled
22. My stay in Cairo is only; I plan to return to my hometown in Minia soon.
 a) temporary b) permanent c) endless d) important
23. The tailor adjusted the to fit perfectly around his chest.
 a) overcoat b) waistcoat c) board d) raincoat
24. Habiba's first music teacher was a major on her career as a musician.
 a) depiction b) image c) influence d) defect
25. The Textile Museum in Cairo displays traditional Egyptian from different ages.
 a) tactics b) weapons c) states d) costumes
26. The company received more than 500 for the position of a project engineer.
 a) workers b) applicants c) employers d) volunteers
27. I'm lucky to work with a very kind who treats workers politely and raises their wages from time to time.
 a) employer b) general c) ruler d) employee
28. Price is often the deciding when people buy a new car.
 a) rule b) event c) factor d) detail
29. My elder brother received support from our family to start his own business.
 a) financial b) emotional c) general d) cultural
30. You must know that hard work doesn't always success, but it increases your chances.
 a) give b) show c) protect d) guarantee

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

31. After years of practice, the surgeon is and rarely makes any mistakes.
 a) on thin ice b) behind the times c) at the top of his game d) in hot water
32. My uncle wanted to his career path because he was no longer satisfied with office work.
 a) work b) focus c) move d) change
33. When buying a new car, you need to between different models and features.
 a) take a test b) make a choice c) do repairs d) have a sale
34. All the documents that are related the project must be kept safely.
 a) to b) for c) about d) in
35. Horror movies terrify some people, so they prefer not to watch them. The noun of the verb "terrify" is
 a) terrifies b) terrifying c) terror d) terrifyingly
36. The training program helped the workers become more at their jobs.
 a) produce b) production c) producer d) productive
37. I found a temporary job during the summer vacation. The synonym of the adjective "temporary" is
 a) short-term b) permanent c) particular d) terrified
38. You should choose a trusted person to look after your children. The antonym of the adjective "trusted" is
 a) reliable b) deceitful c) specific d) brave
39. The boat began to drift away from the shore. The verb "drift" is opposite to
 a) wander b) reach c) settle d) inspect
40. With proper guidance, young people can make better life choices. The noun "guidance" can be replaced by
 a) direction b) demand c) misdirection d) confusion

B Language

Question Tags

السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخيرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير العائد على الفاعل.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لا بد أن يكون السؤال المنفي مختصرًا.

Positive statement +	Negative question tags	Negative statement +	Positive question tags
⊕ You are a student	, aren't you?	⊖ Hala is not a nurse	, is she?
⊕ sentence	, ⊖ tag	⊖ sentence	, ⊕ tag
Ali is Egyptian	, isn't he?	John isn't Egyptian	, is he?
You study hard	, don't you?	You don't study hard	, do you?
He lives in Cairo	, doesn't he?	He doesn't live in Cairo	, does he?
You were at home	, weren't you?	You weren't at home	, were you?
Ola visited her uncle	, didn't she?	Ola didn't visit her uncle	, did she?
Omar was watching TV	, wasn't he?	Omar wasn't watching TV	, was he?
You have seen my bag	, haven't you?	You haven't seen my bag	, have you?
You have dinner at 8 p.m.	, don't you?	You don't have a new car	, do you?
She's finished the report	, hasn't she?	She hasn't finished yet	, has she?
She has a lot in mind	, doesn't she?	She doesn't have a car	, does she?
He'd finished by 6 p.m.	, hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 pm	, had he?
He'd rather leave now	, wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	, would he?
He'd better find a job	, hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	, had he?
They'll help us	, won't they?	They won't help us	, will they?
He can ride a horse	, can't he?	He can't ride a horse	, can he?
We need more money	, don't we?	We needn't have money	, need we?
He used to get up early	, didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	, did he?
I think he is a thief	, isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	, is he?
I'm right	, aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	, am I?

حالات خاصة

Let's go out اقتراح	, shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	, will/won't you?
Interesting	, isn't it?	Beautiful	, isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	, isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	, aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	, isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	, aren't there?
Stop talking	, will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	, will you?

لاحظ

1 الجمل التي تحتوي على never – rarely – hardly – seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no تعتبر جملاً منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً.

He can **hardly** run, can he? He **rarely** visits you, does he?

2 إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it.

Nothing can live without energy, **can it**?

3 إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they.

Everyone is coming to the party, **aren't they**?

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She has started a new job,?
a) don't she b) didn't she c) hasn't she d) has she
2. We went to the cinema last night,?
a) didn't we b) don't we c) had we d) do we
3. That movie wasn't very exciting,?
a) it was b) was that c) wasn't it d) was it
4. You couldn't hear the music, you?
a) does b) will c) could d) is
5. They seldom eat meat,?
a) are they b) do they c) don't they d) haven't they

2 Complete the following sentences with the correct tag question:

1. I'm your best friend,?
2. She is the new manager,?
3. They don't speak French,?
4. You can play the piano,?
5. He won't be angry,?
6. We should respect the environment,?
7. It was a fantastic movie,?
8. You have visited London before,?
9. Let's go for a walk,?
10. Nothing is wrong,?

Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They should start now, they?
a) will b) shouldn't c) should d) don't
2. You don't like spicy food, you?
a) don't b) will c) aren't d) do
3. He sometimes reads the newspaper,?
a) isn't he b) does he c) hasn't he d) doesn't he
4. You are Egyptian,?
a) aren't you b) are you c) don't you d) do you
5. They had left early, they?
a) had b) didn't c) hadn't d) weren't
6. Hoda didn't use the computer,?
a) was she b) did she c) did Hoda d) didn't she
7. Mona has answered the teacher's question,?
a) hasn't Mona b) has she c) isn't she d) hasn't she
8. Dalia wasn't listening,?
a) was she b) did she c) wasn't she d) didn't she
9. Hany isn't sleeping,?
a) does he b) isn't she c) is he d) doesn't he
10. Tamer and Fatma will arrive at the station soon,?
a) will they b) won't they c) won't she d) will he
11. She always has lunch at 2 p.m.?
a) doesn't she b) hasn't she c) does she d) has she
12. They had a nice weekend,?
a) hadn't they b) did they c) weren't they d) didn't they
13. He always read a story before going to bed,?
a) doesn't he b) didn't he c) wasn't he d) did he
14. Dogs like meat,?
a) do they b) doesn't it c) don't they d) don't it
15. He does sing in the bathroom,?
a) doesn't he b) does he c) sing he d) isn't he
16. A student who is lazy cannot accomplish anything,?
a) can't he b) isn't she c) is she d) can they
17. Anybody who speaks Arabic is welcome,?
a) doesn't he b) are they c) aren't they d) isn't she
18. I don't suppose there is much damage,?
a) do I b) is there c) isn't there d) is it

19. There has been a big change in the weather,?
- a) has it b) hasn't it c) hasn't there d) has there
20. Let's have a morning walk,?
- a) haven't we b) have we c) don't you d) shall we
21. I'm late,?
- a) am not I b) are I c) aren't I d) am I not
22. Lovely day today,?
- a) isn't it b) doesn't it c) won't it d) aren't they
23. Somebody has taken my dictionary,?
- a) hasn't he b) has she c) have they d) haven't they
24. Don't eat the whole chicken,?
- a) won't you b) don't you c) will you d) do you
25. There is very little milk left in the fridge,?
- a) is it b) is there c) isn't there d) isn't it
26. You'd better leave now, you?
- a) hadn't b) don't c) had d) wouldn't
27., isn't it?
- a) It's not your dog b) It's very hot in the Sahara
c) This isn't Ahmed d) It's never cold in Aswan
28., aren't I?
- a) She is a great cook b) I'm in charge of this project
c) I'm not late again d) We're almost finished
29. She doesn't believe he'll come today,?
- a) won't he b) will you c) does she d) doesn't she
30. Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?
- a) Ali is never lucky, is he? b) Ali is always lucky, isn't he?
c) Ali is never unlucky, is he? d) Ali is always unlucky, is he?

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I think you like football, isn't it? (.....)
2. Ali thinks that I live near the school, don't I? (.....)
3. They must have finished their work early, didn't they? (.....)
4. I'm not wrong, are I? (.....)
5. Let's start our project soon, don't we? (.....)
6. Yasser used to live in Alexandria, wasn't he? (.....)
7. Everything is going to be fine, aren't they? (.....)
8. I'm supposed to be here, amn't I? (.....)
9. Let us have dinner together, don't we? (.....)
10. She has to leave early, hasn't she? (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The famous musician said that his in music began when he was just five years old.
a) interest b) courage c) opposition d) interview
2. The guide gave us clear directions to every we planned to visit in our tour.
a) situation b) scene c) interest d) location
3. The businessman bought this painting for a reason; it reminded him of his hometown.
a) trusted b) particular c) general d) financial
4. The expensive luxury restaurant is known for its meals and excellent service.
a) first-place b) ordinary c) first-class d) terrifying
5. There are few job in small towns, so many people move to the big cities.
a) opportunities b) interests c) fears d) parts
6. This computing course you to complete a short test of computer basics before joining.
a) gives b) offers c) equals d) requires
7. The teacher advised students to for more examples of their projects online.
a) require b) search c) behave d) inquire
8. My sister took a course in to learn how to adjust the fit of her own clothes.
a) tailoring b) carpentry c) diving d) climbing
9. Famous people only buys products from brands that have good reputations.
a) busted b) detected c) trusted d) decided
10. I believe that choosing the right is one of the most important decisions in life.
a) research b) career c) location d) message
11. The little girl was of the dark and always slept with a nightlight.
a) terrified b) mystified c) identified d) ratified
12. Many Egyptian students apply to get a scholarship to study abroad at top in many fields.
a) districts b) offices c) colleges d) divisions
13. She learned the craft of jewelry-making during her with a master jeweler.
a) fellowship b) hardship c) championship d) apprenticeship
14. You should listen carefully when someone you advice about your problems.
a) instructs b) gives c) takes d) follows
15. The soldiers were praised for their courage during the dangerous mission. The synonym of the noun "courage" is
a) bravery b) fear c) decision d) converge
16. These curtains match the sofa; they have the same pattern. The synonym of the verb "match" is
a) suit b) delay c) innovate d) unequal
17. My son chose a different career after graduating from the Faculty of Commerce.
a) transport b) belief c) path d) passage
18. I regret my to leave college early; it wasn't the best choice.
a) decided b) decision c) decisive d) decisively
19. The teacher the names of the students who won the competition.
a) matched b) searched c) advertised d) announced
20. The language center will give you a after you complete the English course.
a) degree b) certificate c) ranking d) search

Language

21. She always remembers her appointment,?
 a) never she b) isn't she c) did she d) doesn't she
22. You hate scary movies, you?
 a) aren't b) don't c) weren't d) haven't
23. He owns a business in the city center, he?
 a) isn't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) has
24. We've started planning the party already, we?
 a) haven't b) didn't c) weren't d) have
25. This latest book is quite boring, it?
 a) hasn't b) wasn't c) doesn't d) isn't
26. You have never seen that movie before,?
 a) haven't you b) don't you c) do you d) have you
27. He hasn't finished the report yet, he?
 a) hasn't b) has c) doesn't d) wasn't
28. They rarely travel overseas, they?
 a) are b) haven't c) do d) don't
29. She rarely cooks meat,?
 a) doesn't she b) rarely she c) does she d) is she
30. You went swimming last weekend, you?
 a) didn't b) weren't c) did d) were
31. He had lunch at home today,?
 a) did he b) didn't he c) hadn't he d) had he
32. There's no point arguing about it now,?
 a) isn't it b) is there c) isn't there d) is it
33. No-one was inside the house when it collapsed,?
 a) weren't they b) were they c) did it d) didn't it
34. Don't talk to Nabil during the lesson, you?
 a) don't b) do c) won't d) will
35. You'd better not tell him the secret, you?
 a) wouldn't b) would c) had d) hadn't
36. They should have been informed long before his arrival, they?
 a) mustn't b) didn't c) shouldn't d) needn't
37. Don't forget to call me,?
 a) will you b) won't you c) do you d) shall you
38. There used to be a market here,?
 a) used there b) didn't there c) usedn't it d) wasn't it
39. Everyone has submitted their report,?
 a) hasn't he b) haven't they c) don't they d) hasn't it
40. It's been raining all morning, it?
 a) has b) hasn't c) is d) isn't

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
ethical (adj)	أخلاقي	practical (adj)	عملي
hieroglyphics (n)	الهيروغليفية	psychology (n)	علم النفس
passion (n)	شغف / عشق	scroll (v) (ed)	يتصفح
philosophical (adj)	فلسفي		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts		مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع	
agency (n)	وكالة	fixed (adj)	ثابت
architecture (n)	عمارة / هندسة معمارية	geology (n)	علم الجيولوجيا
business studies (n)	دراسات تجارية	graduation (n)	تخرج
campus (n)	الحرم الجامعي	guy (n)	شاب / شخص
challenging (adj)	صعب / ممتليء بالتحديات	honestly (adv)	بصراحة / بأمانة
classmate (n)	زميل دراسة	law (n)	قانون
click (v) (ed)	ينقر/ يتوافق	lecture (n)	محاضرة
dentistry (n)	طب الأسنان	legacy (n)	إرث
design (n) (v) (ed)	تصميم / يصمم	manage (v) (d)	يدير/ يتحكم في / ينجح
diverse (adj)	متنوع	marine (adj)	بحري
engineering (n)	هندسة	misunderstand (v)	يسيء فهمًا
equipment (n)	معدات	mummy (n)	مومياء
		nursing (n)	تمريض
		percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية
		pharaoh (n)	فرعون
		pretty (adj) (adv)	جميل / إلى حد ما
		professor (n)	أستاذ جامعي
		retirement (n)	تقاعد
		rewarding (adj)	مجزٍ / مريح
		solid (adj)	صلب / متين / موثوق
		specialize (v) (d)	يتخصص
		style (n)	أسلوب
		trilogy (n)	ثلاثية
		wrapped (adj)	ملفوف

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The student faced a/an problem when he saw his friend cheating in the exam.
 - embarrassed
 - ethical
 - rewarding
 - diverse
- Sara decided to study because she's interested in how people think and feel.
 - botany
 - geology
 - psychology
 - physiology
- I like to through social media for nearly half an hour before I go to sleep.
 - scroll
 - search
 - manage
 - deal
- Pollution is threatening life in oceans around the world, so we all must move now.
 - margin
 - botanical
 - desert
 - marine
- My cousin Osama wants to in digital marketing after completing his business degree.
 - specialize
 - drift
 - advertise
 - improvise
- The museum has a collection of paintings by artists from many countries.
 - common
 - respectful
 - diverse
 - fearful

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

التعبيرات والمصطلحات

ask for agreement	يطلب الموافقة	land a job	يحصل على وظيفة	manage his own time	ينظم وقته
do a degree	يدرس للحصول على شهادة	make a list	يعد قائمة	share the same passion for	يشارك نفس الشغف تجاه
get/feel jealous	يشعر بالغيرة	make friends	يكون صداقات / يصاحب	sound a bit unusual	يبدو غير معتاد بعض الشيء

Prepositions

حروف الجر

fascinated by	مفتون بـ	prepare for	يعد لـ	specialize in	يتخصص في
get along	يتوافق / يتعايش	responsible for	مسئول عن	walk around	يتجول
jealous of	غير من	sort of	نوع ما	wrapped up	ملفوف

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
diversify	ينوع	diversity	تنوع	diverse	مُتَنَوِّع
manage	يدير	management manager	إدارة مدير	managerial manageable	إداري ممكن إدارته
retire	يتقاعد	retirement retiree	تقاعد متقاعد	retired	مُتَقَاعِد
reward	يكافئ	reward	مكافأة	rewarding	مُجْزٍ
specialize	يتخصص	specialist specialty/specialization	أخصائي تخصص	specialized	مُتَخَصِّص
wrap	يغلف	wrapper wrapping	غلاف تغليف	wrapped	مُغَلَّف

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The company will **reward** employees who exceed their sales targets with a bonus. (v)

She received a financial **reward** for finding the lost wallet. (n)

Volunteering at the charity was a **rewarding** experience for everyone involved. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
challenging	صعب / متحدّ	difficult/tough		easy/simple	سهل / بسيط
ethical	أخلاقي	moral/righteous		unethical/immoral	غير أخلاقي
fixed	ثابت	stable/rigid		movable/flexible	متحرك / مرن
honestly	بصراحة	truthfully/sincerely		dishonestly/deceitfully	بغير صدق / بخداع

manage	يدير	handle/control	mismanage/neglect	يسئء الإدارة/ يهمل
retirement	تقاعد	resignation/withdrawal	employment/engagement	توظيف/ تعيين
rewarding	مجزي	fulfilling/satisfying	unrewarding/unfulfilling	غير مجزي/ غير مرضي
scroll	يتصفح	browse/scan	focus/stare	يركز/ يحدق
specialize	يتخصص	focus/expertise	generalize/diversify	يعمم/ ينوع
wrapped	مغلف	covered/enveloped	unwrapped/uncovered	غير مغلف/ مكشوف

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It typically takes four years to a degree in most subjects.
 - seek
 - do
 - make
 - give
- With her excellent qualifications, Nada should easily a job in her field.
 - lose
 - offer
 - land
 - search
- Parents are responsible their children's safety and well-being.
 - at
 - with
 - on
 - for
- New York City is known for its of languages, religions, and traditions and its multicultural community.
 - diverse
 - diversify
 - diversity
 - diversely
- She can manage her time well between school and sports. The verb "manage" is similar in meaning to
 - handle
 - neglect
 - focus
 - generalize
- The chocolate was wrapped in gold foil. The antonym of the adjective "wrapped" is
 - covered
 - satisfying
 - moral
 - uncovered

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة لتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

(A)

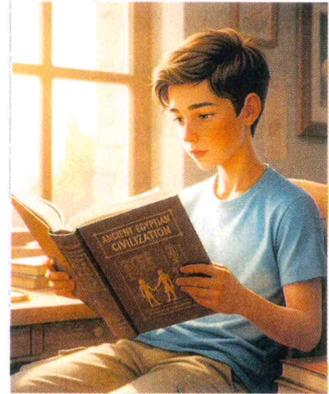
Hi. My name is Rana. I'm doing a degree that's still pretty new: Digital and Social Media. Most people think I just spend all day **scrolling**⁽¹⁾ on Facebook and Instagram. Of course, I enjoy social media, but the degree goes much deeper than that. We even look at things like the **philosophical**⁽²⁾ and **ethical**⁽³⁾ sides of social media.



What I love most about the course is how practical it is. For example, we get 12 weeks of real work experience in a digital agency. Maybe that's why 91% of students on this course **land a job**⁽⁴⁾ straight after graduation.

(B)

I'm Adel. You guys have it so easy! Every time I tell someone I'm studying Ancient Egyptian history, the first thing they ask is: "So, where's your Pharaoh's hat?". I know it sounds a bit unusual, but I've always been fascinated by Ancient Egypt, and that's why I chose to specialize in it.



People usually think it's too narrow, like there's not much to do with it—but actually, it's the total opposite! We study **hieroglyphics**⁽⁵⁾, learn about modern Egyptian culture as well, and in our third year, we even spend time at a university here in Egypt. Honestly, I can't wait for that.

And nooo ... we don't have to walk around wrapped up like mummies while we're there!

(C)

Hi. I'm Hind. People usually get really jealous when I tell them I'm studying Red Sea Diving Science and Technology. It's only a two-year course, but we cover all sorts of things—like the history of diving, marine **psychology**⁽⁶⁾, and even practical work such as designing new diving equipment.



But honestly, what I love most is the other students. We all share the same **passion**⁽⁷⁾ for diving, so we click right away, get along really well, and work together as a solid team.

(1) يتصفح

(2) فلسفي

(3) أخلاقي

(4) يحصل على وظيفة

(5) اللغة الهيروغليفية

(6) علم النفس

(7) شغف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rana's Social Media degree is more than just using social media because it also covers aspects.

- a) technical and creative
c) historical and cultural

- b) philosophical and ethical
d) economic and political

2. Most people think studying Ancient Egyptian history is too narrow, but Adel believes it is actually

- a) the total opposite
c) very traditional

- b) quite challenging
d) extremely popular

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	classmate	زميل دراسة	Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.
	colleague	زميل عمل	Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.
2	retire	يتقاعد/يعتزل (العمل)	I retired from teaching three years ago.
	resign	يستقيل من عمله	The minister was forced to resign after the terrible train accident.
3	manage	ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ضمير أو المصدر + to)	- I don't think I can manage a long walk today. - We managed to persuade him to come with us.
	succeed (in)	ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ing+ verb)	- Many women were able to succeed in politics. - My brother succeeded in passing his final tests.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- are pictures and symbols used to represent words or parts of words, especially in the ancient Egyptian writing system.
 - Logarithm
 - Sumerians
 - Clay tablets
 - Hieroglyphics
- The adjective means relating to real situations and events rather than ideas, emotions.
 - available
 - theoretical
 - practical
 - oral
- can be defined as a very strong belief or feeling about something.
 - Interest
 - Practice
 - Passion
 - Hobby
- Nour invited all of her school to her seventeenth birthday party.
 - rivals
 - classmates
 - colleagues
 - enemies
- As he is 60 years old, Mr. Mahmoud, our manager, is due to later this month.
 - hire
 - employ
 - resign
 - retire
- When my car broke down, I to fix it without any professional help.
 - managed
 - succeeded
 - failed
 - passed

Practice...

Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. My friend has a very way of thinking; he always looks for the meaning behind everything.
a) nervous b) noisy c) careless d) philosophical
2. The new travel helped us book our tickets and hotel easily.
a) unit b) authority c) agency d) group
3. The ancient Egyptian is famous for its giant buildings such as temples and Pyramids.
a) culture b) architecture c) agriculture d) literature
4. Some of the scenes in the action movie 'Mission Impossible' were even for an experienced actor.
a) challenging b) simple c) normal d) contemporary
5. The two women met at university and just immediately and they have been friends ever since.
a) connected b) clicked c) matched d) bonded
6. Modern uses advanced technology to make dental procedures less painful.
a) law b) geology c) dentistry d) botany
7. The architect spent months working on the for the new hospital.
a) financing b) diagram c) discovery d) design
8. The head teacher said that we needed more sports for the new gym at school.
a) equipment b) crew c) clothes d) saplings
9. Our office's daily schedule is very; it doesn't change easily.
a) simple b) unintended c) fixed d) flexible
10. is the science that studies the Earth, rocks, and minerals.
a) Biology b) Geology c) History d) Geography
11. The ceremony of our college will be held in the university's main hall next month.
a) projection b) propaganda c) inauguration d) graduation
12. My cousin specialized in criminal and now works as a defense attorney.
a) book b) law c) justice d) business
13. The mathematician's was complicated and difficult to follow, so many students left it.
a) game b) trainee c) lecture d) division
14. The professor's includes over 200 published research papers and countless inspired students.
a) legacy b) career c) profession d) degree
15. When you have a job as well as children to look after, you have to learn how to your time.
a) devise b) research c) succeed d) manage
16. He apologized because he had the teacher's instructions and did the wrong assignment.
a) followed b) accepted c) misunderstood d) finished
17. The coffin, in which Tutankhamun's was put, was made of gold.
a) crown b) mummy c) throne d) mural

18. My aunt has been employed in for several years now; she has long experience in hospitals.
 a) nursing b) finance c) nursery d) security
19. The teacher said that 90% is a high in the test, so don't be sad to get 85.
 a) mark b) minority c) percentage d) degree
20. The exam was easy; I finished it in 20 minutes.
 a) naturally b) commonly c) carelessly d) pretty
21. I'm happy to get such a/an job in the New Administrative Capital.
 a) defective b) rewarding c) interested d) returning
22. The company has a reputation for quality and customer service.
 a) solid b) soft c) basic d) physical
23. All the apartments in the new compound are decorated in a contemporary
 a) behavior b) theory c) style d) route
24. is the time when a person stops working, usually because of age.
 a) Retirement b) Unemployment c) Employment d) Experience
25. The university plans to expand its to include more laboratories.
 a) library b) campus c) museum d) playground

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes on Vocabulary

26. The teacher asked us to a list of all the historical events we studied this term.
 a) explore b) invent c) make d) do
27. Children often jealous when their parents pay more attention to a new baby.
 a) fall b) turn c) go d) get
28. University life teaches you how to your own time and be responsible for your own schedule.
 a) manage b) get c) make d) succeed
29. On weekends, families often walk the zoo and enjoy watching the animals.
 a) for b) around c) on d) at
30. The fragile items were carefully wrapped bubble wrap before shipping.
 a) of b) about c) up d) down
31. The workload in this bank is heavy, but still if you organize your time well.
 a) manage b) management c) managerial d) manageable
32. Climbing the high mountain was challenging, but we didn't give up. The synonym of the word "challenging" is ".....".
 a) managed b) simple c) tough d) modern
33. The company has a fixed rule about being on time. The antonym of the word "fixed" is ".....".
 a) rigid b) flexible c) deceitful d) challenging
34. Teaching young children is a rewarding job because you help them learn. The word "rewarding" is similar in meaning to ".....".
 a) satisfying b) vivid c) stressful d) unfulfilling
35. You can scroll down the page to read more information. The verb "scroll" can be replaced by ".....".
 a) update b) browse c) focus d) highlight

B Language

The question tag and the dialog

تم شرح السؤال المذيل في الجزء الأول والآن مع شرح ارتباطه بالمحادثة يستخدم في المحادثة لجعلها طبيعية وتفاعلية ويستخدم:

- 1 لطلب التأكيد من صحة المعلومة
- 2 لإشراك الطرف الآخر بطريقة تفاعلية والتشجيع على الحديث.
- 3 للتعبير عن المشاعر القوية مثل الدهشة أو عدم التصديق.

A: "You'll help me with this, **won't you?**"

B: "Of course I will."

A: "It's a beautiful day, **isn't it?**"

B: "Yes, it is."

كيفية الإجابة عن السؤال المذيل:

- إذا كانت الجملة الأولى المراد تأكيدها مثبتة فالإجابة بـ **Yes** هي الموافقة و **No** هي الاعتراض.

You like chemistry, don't you?

Yes, I do. You are right. I've loved chemistry since high school.

No, I don't. You are wrong. Actually, I prefer biology.

- إذا كانت الجملة الأولى المراد تأكيدها منفية فالإجابة بـ **No** هي الموافقة و **Yes** هي الاعتراض.

You don't like chemistry, do you?

No, I don't. You are right.

Yes, I do. You are wrong.

من الأخطاء الشائعة أن أقول لك: «أنت لا تحب الكيمياء.. أليس كذلك؟ فتقول نعم، لا أحبها». فكيف تكون نعم ويعدها نفي. هل يمكن أن نقول **Yes, I don't**؟ بالطبع لا. والإجابة الصحيحة إذا كنت لا تحبها وموافق على كلامي أن تقول **No, I don't**؛ واليك بعض الأمثلة من المحادثات اليومية:

1 A: The meeting is at 3 p.m. **isn't it?**

B: Yes, it is. In the main conference room.

A: You've prepared the presentation, **haven't you?**

B: Of course I have. Everything is ready.

2 A: You're coming to my party, **aren't you?**

B: I wouldn't miss it for the world!

A: You remember Sarah, **don't you?**

B: Yes, from university. How is she?

3 Waiter : You're ready to order, **aren't you?**

Customer: Yes, I'll have the steak please.

Waiter : You don't want any starters, **do you?**

Customer: No, just the main course thanks.

ولتوضيح الإجابة نستخدم كلمات وتعابير مثل:

"Absolutely!"/"Definitely!"/"Of course!"/"Actually, no ...!"/"I'm afraid not ..."

لاحظ

1 يمكن أن يكون السؤال آخر الجملة الخبرية موجهاً إلى المخاطب وليس عائداً على الجملة الأولى مثل:

A: I love comedy movies, **don't you?**

B: **Yes**, I do. I like watching comedy movies with my family. We can all laugh together.

السؤال هنا يعود على المخاطب وليس على المتكلم، وهذا يصلح إلا في المحادثات.

2 نبرة الصوت **intonation** ترتفع وتنخفض في السؤال حسب طبيعة السؤال وهذا لا يظهر بالطبع في الكتابة ولكن يظهر في الحديث الشفهي:

- عندما يكون المتكلم متأكدًا من صحة الجملة تنخفض نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

He's your brother, **isn't** he? ↙

- عندما يسأل المتكلم عن شيء يريد التأكد منه ترتفع نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

You eat meat, **don't** you? ↗

3 عند استخدام **need** أو **dare** كأفعال مساعدة (**modal-like verbs**) - وليس كأفعال رئيسية - في الجملة الرئيسية، فإننا نستخدم نفس الفعل في **tag question**.

He **need not** go, **need** he?

She **dare not** speak, **dare** she?

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A: This is your bag, isn't it? B:, it's mine.

a) Actually, no

b) No

c) Yes

d) I'm afraid not

2. A: You don't mind if I sit here, do you? B:, please do.

a) I'm afraid not

b) Actually, no

c) Yes

d) Of course

3. She doesn't speak French, does she?

a) No, she doesn't.

b) Yes, she speaks.

c) No, she isn't.

d) Yes, she can.

4. A: You will help me, won't you? B: I'm very busy.

a) Yes, you aren't.

b) No, I don't.

c) Yes, you will.

d) No, I won't.

5. It wasn't a difficult exam, was it?

a) No, it can't.

b) Yes, it does.

c) Yes, it was.

d) No, it isn't.

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. A: You're tired, aren't you? B: Yes, I aren't.

(.....)

2. A: She can swim, can't she? B: No, she can.

(.....)

3. A: He likes football, doesn't he? B: Yes, he likes.

(.....)

4. A: She has a new car, doesn't she? B: No, she hasn't.

(.....)

5. A: You can't drive a truck, can you? B: Yes, I can't.

(.....)

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف

الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:

www.aladwaa.com



Practice...

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You like coffee,?

a) do you	b) aren't you	c) doesn't you	d) don't you
-----------	---------------	----------------	--------------
2. She is coming tomorrow,?

a) is she	b) isn't she	c) doesn't she	d) won't she
-----------	--------------	----------------	--------------
3. They have finished their work,?

a) have they	b) don't they	c) haven't they	d) didn't they
--------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------
4. Amr can speak French,?

a) can't he	b) doesn't he	c) can't Amr	d) can he
-------------	---------------	--------------	-----------
5. It was a great movie,?

a) was it	b) isn't it	c) doesn't it	d) wasn't it
-----------	-------------	---------------	--------------
6. You won't tell anyone,?

a) won't you	b) will you	c) do you	d) aren't you
--------------	-------------	-----------	---------------
7. The new laptop cost a fortune,?

a) isn't it	b) don't you	c) doesn't it	d) didn't it
-------------	--------------	---------------	--------------
8. Nothing is impossible,?

a) isn't it	b) does it	c) is it	d) doesn't it
-------------	------------	----------	---------------
9. Somebody called me,?

a) did they	b) didn't he	c) did he	d) didn't they
-------------	--------------	-----------	----------------
10. She has no time for hobbies, she?

a) hasn't	b) does	c) has	d) doesn't
-----------	---------	--------	------------
11. I don't think they will accept the offer,?

a) don't I	b) do I	c) will they	d) won't they
------------	---------	--------------	---------------
12. They hardly ever visit us,?

a) do they	b) will they	c) don't they	d) won't they
------------	--------------	---------------	---------------
13. She must have known the truth,?

a) hasn't she	b) didn't she	c) hadn't she	d) mustn't she
---------------	---------------	---------------	----------------
14. He dare not speak,?

a) daren't he	b) does he	c) dare he	d) doesn't he
---------------	------------	------------	---------------
15. You think we won't notice,?

a) don't you	b) will we	c) shall we	d) do you
--------------	------------	-------------	-----------
16. I think it's going to rain,?

a) don't I	b) don't you	c) isn't it	d) do I
------------	--------------	-------------	---------
17. Few people understood the lesson,?

a) didn't they	b) do they	c) did they	d) don't they
----------------	------------	-------------	---------------
18. Let him do what he wants,?

a) won't you	b) shall we	c) shan't we	d) will you
--------------	-------------	--------------	-------------
19. Nothing matters now,?

a) doesn't it	b) do they	c) does it	d) don't they
---------------	------------	------------	---------------

20. Everyone has left,?
 a) haven't they b) have they c) hasn't he d) has he
21. Neither of them came,?
 a) didn't they b) did they c) did he d) didn't he
22. No one knows the answer,?
 a) do they b) don't they c) does he d) doesn't he
23. Something is wrong,?
 a) is it b) aren't they c) are they d) isn't it
24. Everything is ready,?
 a) isn't it b) is it c) aren't they d) are they
25. These are beautiful,?
 a) are they b) aren't they c) isn't it d) is it
26. Open the window,?
 a) won't you b) shall we c) don't you d) shan't we
27. Let's not argue about this,?
 a) will we b) shan't we c) won't we d) shall we
28. A sick man can't go out, can he?
 a) No, he can't. b) Yes, he could. c) No, he isn't. d) I didn't know.
29. A: I'm late, aren't I? B: You are just on time.
 a) Yes, you aren't b) Yes, you are c) No, you are d) No, you aren't
30. Hany doesn't know how to cook, does he?
 a) No, he does. He likes cooking.
 b) No, he doesn't. It isn't one of his interests.
 c) Yes, he doesn't. He hates cooking.
 d) Yes, he doesn't, but he is trying to learn.

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think English is interesting, isn't it? (You think ...)

2. She is considered to be an expert. (The teacher ...)

3. He suggests visiting the zoo, doesn't he? (Let's ...)

4. You play football well, don't you? Yes, I do. (You don't ...)

5. I am your best friend, aren't I? (I'm not ...)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. Let's go to the cinema, don't we? (.....)
 2. Nothing is impossible, isn't it? (.....)
 3. Everyone has left, hasn't he? (.....)
 4. She used to live here, usedn't she? (.....)
 5. This is really exciting, isn't that? (.....)

Language

16. Heba doesn't like pizza,?
 a) doesn't she b) is she c) does she d) does Heba
17. I'm early,?
 a) amn't I b) isn't I c) am I d) aren't I
18. Everyone knows the answer,?
 a) do they b) don't they c) doesn't he d) does he
19. You have lunch at 1 p.m.,?
 a) don't you b) haven't you c) will you d) have you
20. He has little free time, he?
 a) hasn't b) does c) doesn't d) is
21. You must finish this today,?
 a) mustn't you b) must you c) needn't you d) shouldn't you
22. He has a new car,?
 a) does he b) wasn't he c) doesn't he d) isn't he
23. She never lies,?
 a) doesn't she b) is she c) won't she d) does she
24. You have to complete this,?
 a) don't you b) haven't you c) have you d) will you
25. She ought to apologize,?
 a) shouldn't she b) oughtn't she c) ought she d) should she
26. What a beautiful day,?
 a) is it b) wasn't it c) was it d) isn't it
27. Don't forget to call me,?
 a) will you b) won't you c) do you d) don't you
28. You need to leave now,?
 a) needn't you b) don't you c) need you d) do you
29. There's little we can do,?
 a) isn't there b) can we c) is there d) can't we
30. I am not mistaken,?
 a) aren't I b) amn't I c) am I d) are I
31. Somebody has taken my book,?
 a) have they b) hasn't he c) has he d) haven't they
32. That is amazing,?
 a) is it b) aren't they c) isn't it d) are they
33. How interesting,?
 a) is it b) isn't it c) wasn't it d) was it
34. There won't be any problems,?
 a) won't there b) will there c) would there d) wouldn't there
35. They have finished their work, haven't they?
 a) No, he hasn't. b) Yes, they do. c) Yes, they have. d) No, they aren't.



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Biography السيرة الذاتية

What is a biography?

A biography is a true story about a real person's life, written by someone else.

- السيرة الذاتية هي قصة حقيقية عن حياة شخص حقيقي، يكتبها شخص آخر.

A biography tells us about what happened in someone's life, including:

- When and where they were born متى وأين وُلدوا؟
- Their childhood and education الطفولة والتعليم
- Their job or career الوظيفة والحياة المهنية
- Their achievements, important events and their influence إنجازاتهم والأحداث الهامة وتأثيرهم
- The challenges they faced التحديات التي واجهتهم
- When and how they died (if they have passed away) متى وكيف ماتوا؟ (إن ماتوا)

Structure of a Biography

1. Introduction Who is the person? Why are they important?
2. Early life Birth, family, childhood, education.
3. Major achievements Career, discoveries, awards, contributions.
4. Later life Old age, retirement, death (if applicable).
5. Conclusion Summary of why this person is remembered.

Helpful Tips

- Use past tense verbs (was, were, studied, worked, and wrote).
- Use linking words: (first, then, later, finally, because, however, although.)
- Use dates and time expressions: (in 1995, at the age of 20, during his career.)
- Use third person: (He/She/They).

Note:

If someone writes a book about their own life, it is called an autobiography.

- إذا كتب شخص كتابًا عن حياته الخاصة، فإن ذلك يُسمى سيرة ذاتية شخصية.

WRITING TASK (1)

Writing a Biography – Example: Ahmed Zewail

Step	Content
1. Basic Information	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Name: Ahmed Zewail- Date of Birth: February 26, 1946- Place of Birth: Damanhour, Egypt- Date of Death: August 2, 2016
2. Introduction	Ahmed Zewail was a famous Egyptian scientist. He is known as the “father of femtochemistry” and won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1999.
3. Childhood & Education	He was born in Damanhour and raised in Alexandria. He studied chemistry at Alexandria University and earned his PhD from the University of Pennsylvania in the USA.
4. Career & Achievements	Zewail became a professor at Caltech (California Institute of Technology). He made major discoveries in femtochemistry and changed the way scientists understand chemical reactions.
5. Awards & Honors	In 1999, he was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry. He was honored in Egypt and internationally for his contributions to science.
6. Legacy & Death	Dr. Zewail passed away on August 2, 2016. He is remembered as one of the greatest scientists in Egypt and the Arab world.

FULL BIOGRAPHY EXAMPLE

Ahmed Zewail was a famous Egyptian scientist, known for his work in chemistry. He was born on February 26, 1946, in Damanhour, Egypt, and grew up in Alexandria. He studied chemistry at Alexandria University, then earned his PhD in the United States. He became a professor at Caltech and made important discoveries in femtochemistry – a field that studies chemical reactions in extremely small time units. In 1999, he won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Ahmed Zewail passed away on August 2, 2016, but his scientific legacy continues to inspire people around the world.

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة
في قطع الفهم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Moving from secondary school to university is a major life change. Choosing the right path requires careful thought. How should students choose their university?

First, you must look inward. What subjects truly interest you? What are your natural strengths? Don't just follow friends or pick a course because it sounds important. Your study area should match your passion and abilities. Next, you need to do serious research. Check out different universities. Consider the location: Do you want to live at home or move to a new city? Look carefully at the course's entry requirements and, most importantly, the career paths it opens up.

A good choice will help you get the job you want later.

Once you start, you'll find that university life is very different from school. In school, your timetable is **rigid**. Teachers constantly check your attendance and homework, and classes are usually small. You are given a lot of structure and close guidance, and the goal is a broad general education.

In university, you gain great freedom and responsibility. Your schedule has far fewer teaching hours—maybe only a few lectures each week. Most learning is independent; you must manage your own time, read extensively, and meet deadlines without constant reminders. Lectures can be large, sometimes with hundreds of students. The relationship with your professor is less personal. This shift demands strong self-discipline and personal motivation. University is about becoming a specialist or an expert in your chosen field. This independence is the key to personal and academic growth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What two pieces of information about a course should a student check during their research?
 - The location and the teacher's name.
 - The entry requirements and the career paths.
 - The class size and the freedom level.
 - Their friends' choices and their natural strengths.
- The underlined word "**rigid**" is the opposite in meaning to
 - large
 - personal
 - fixed
 - flexible
- Which sentence best summarizes the main idea of the third paragraph?
 - School provides a broad general education and close guidance with small classes, constant checks, and a rigid timetable.
 - University life is a sharp contrast to the rigid, highly-structured environment that students experience in school.
 - The main goal of a school education is a broad general education, unlike the specialized study that students will undertake at university.
 - Students find that the rigid timetable, constant attendance checks, and homework monitoring make school very different from university.
- What is the primary difference in the amount of supervision between school and university, according to the text?
 - School grants a high degree of freedom, whereas university provides much less personal liberty.
 - University life is a sharp contrast to the rigid, highly-structured environment of school.
 - University has fixed schedules; school has flexible schedules.
 - School focuses on being an expert, university focuses on broad education.
- What does the passage say the main goal of university is, in terms of learning depth?
 - To have a lot of freedom.
 - To get a broad general education.
 - To become a specialist or an expert in a chosen field.
 - To meet new people in large lectures.
- What is a key feature of the university timetable mentioned in the passage?
 - It has a fixed schedule most of the day.
 - It has small classes with close guidance.
 - It has far fewer teaching hours per week.
 - It focuses on a broad general education.

6. What does "memorable" mean in: "These trips are not only educational but also fun and memorable."
- a) Expensive. b) Easy to forget.
c) Hard to remember. d) Worth remembering.
7. What can we deduce about schools that offer many activities?
- a) They probably don't focus very much on academic grades or marks.
b) They want students to be creative, responsible, and actively involved.
c) They give less homework.
d) They teach only sports.
8. Which benefit is common to most school activities?
- a) They help students become more involved and confident.
b) They teach students how to draw and paint.
c) They help students sleep early to stay healthy.
d) They act as a replacement for all the regular school subjects.

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Having one of the oldest cultures dating back to before the pharaohs; Egypt's culture is well developed and distinctive. That's why it is still admired all over the world.

- (a) بامتلاك واحدة من أحدث الثقافات التي يعود تاريخها إلى ما قبل الفراعنة، تعتبر ثقافة مصر متطورة ومميزة ولهذا السبب لا تزال تحظى بالإعجاب في بعض أنحاء العالم.
(b) بامتلاك واحدة من أقدم الثقافات التي يعود تاريخها إلى ما قبل الفراعنة، تعتبر ثقافة مصر متطورة ومميزة ولهذا السبب لا تزال تحظى بالإعجاب في جميع أنحاء العالم.
(c) بقدوم واحدة من أقدم الثقافات التي يعود تاريخها إلى ما قبل الفراعنة، تعتبر ثقافة مصر نامية ومميزة ولهذا السبب لا تزال تحظى بالإعجاب في جميع أنحاء العالم.
(d) بامتلاك واحدة من أقدم الثقافات التي يعود تاريخها إلى ما بعد الفراعنة، تعتبر ثقافة مصر متطورة ومميزة ولهذا السبب كانت تحظى بالإعجاب في جميع أنحاء العالم.

2. Overpopulation in Egypt has led to many problems like illiteracy, heavy traffic and unemployment. Hence, we should try to find effective solutions for this serious problem.

- (a) أدت الزيادة السكانية في مصر إلى العديد من المشكلات مثل الأمية وحركة المرور الثقيلة والبطالة، ورغم ذلك علينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول فعالة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.
(b) أدت الزيادة السكانية في مصر إلى العديد من المشكلات مثل الأمية وحركة المرور الكثيفة والبطالة، ورغم ذلك علينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول مريحة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.
(c) أدت الزيادة السكانية في مصر إلى العديد من المشكلات مثل الأمية وحركة المرور الكثيفة والبطالة، وعلينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول فعالة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.
(d) أدت الزيادة السكانية في مصر إلى العديد من المشكلات مثل عدم القراءة وحركة المرور الثقيلة والبطالة، ومن ثم علينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول فعالة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

3. In recognition of women's roles in society, Egypt has made laws to set a definite quota for them in the parliament and other democratic institutions.

- (a) تقديرًا لدور المرأة في المجتمع قامت مصر بسن قوانين لتحديد حصة محددة لها في البرلمان والمؤسسات الديمقراطية الأخرى.
(b) تقديرًا لدور المرأة في الحياة قامت مصر بسن قوانين لتحديد قدر محدد لها في البرلمان والمؤسسات البيروقراطية الأخرى.
(c) تقديرًا لدور المرأة في المجتمع قامت مصر بعرض قوانين لتحديد قدر محدد لها في البرلمان والمؤسسات الاجتماعية الأخرى.
(d) دفعًا لدور المرأة في المجتمع قامت مصر بسن قوانين لتحديد حصة محددة لها في البرلمان والمجمعات الديمقراطية الأخرى.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. الوقت هو أثنى ما نملكه، وإذا لم نُحسن استغلاله ضاع منا الكثير. الشخص الناجح هو من يعرف كيف ينظم وقته ويوازن بين العمل والراحة والتعلم.

- (a) Time is the most valuable thing we have, and if we don't use it wisely, we lose a lot. A successful person is the one who knows how to manage time and balance work, rest, and learning.
(b) Time is the most available thing we have, and if we don't use it wisely, we lose a lot. A successful person is the one whom knows how to manage time and balance work, rest, and learning.
(c) Time is the most valuable thing we have, and if we don't use it wisely, we miss a lot. A successful person is the one who knows how to arrange time and balance work, rest, and learning.
(d) Time is the much valuable thing we have, and when we don't use it wisely, we lose a lot. A successful person is the one who knows how to manage time and balance work, rest, and teaching.



Vocabulary

1 (A) Match each word in column (A) to its meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. reputation	• knowledge about different traditions and lifestyles
2. independence	• a job or professional path in life
3. cultural awareness	• the opinion people have about something or someone
4. career	• freedom to make your own decisions
5. counselor	• a person who gives advice and guidance

(B) Match each word in column (A) to its meanings in column (B):

A	B
1. apprenticeship	• practice before the final performance
2. terrified	• a period of training in a job
3. rehearsal	• very scared
4. inspiring	• motivating and encouraging

Language

Questions Tags:

2 Complete the tag questions:

- Students at university need to be independent,?
- Professors don't always know students' names,?
- University life can be exciting,?
- At school, classes are smaller,?
- The change from school to university is rewarding,?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She's a doctor,?

a) is she	b) isn't she	c) doesn't she	d) wasn't she
-----------	--------------	----------------	---------------
- You don't like coffee,?

a) do you	b) don't you	c) aren't you	d) did you
-----------	--------------	---------------	------------
- They will come to the party,?

a) won't they	b) will they	c) don't they	d) didn't they
---------------	--------------	---------------	----------------
- He went to Luxor last summer,?

a) didn't he	b) doesn't he	c) isn't he	d) won't he
--------------	---------------	-------------	-------------
- I'm your best friend,?

a) didn't I	b) aren't I	c) don't I	d) isn't I
-------------	-------------	------------	------------

4 Find the mistake and correct it:

- Let's play together, don't we? (.....)
- They don't play football, do we? (.....)
- You are coming to the party, don't you? (.....)
- He can swim well, can he? (.....)
- We were late yesterday, didn't we? (.....)
- She doesn't like pizza, did she? (.....)
- I am on time, amn't I? (.....)
- He went to Cairo, doesn't he? (.....)
- Everyone likes their parents, doesn't they? (.....)
- They thought about a solution, do they? (.....)



1 Finish the following dialog:

Reserving a hotel room.

Lodger : I'd like to reserve a hotel room.

Receptionist : (1)..... May I have your full name, please?

Lodger : My name is Mohamed Fawzy.

Receptionist : Hello, Mr. Fawzy. (2).....?

Lodger : I'm planning to stay for 5 days. How much per night shall I pay?

Receptionist : (3).....

Lodger : OK. I agree. 500 pounds is acceptable.

Receptionist : Wonderful! (4).....?

Lodger : Non-smoking, please.

Receptionist : Okay. Your reservation is on our computer. All we need now is a phone number.

Lodger : Certainly. My phone number is 01002364417.

Receptionist : Thank you, Mr. Fawzy. We look forward to seeing you in our hotel.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Mai lost some weight. Do you agree? (... she?)

2. Let's go to the club tonight. Alright? (shall)

A Glimpse of Revelation

3 (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A moderate Muslim adheres to
 - a) the boundaries set by Allah (GBTH)
 - b) praying so much
 - c) fighting others
 - d) being wealthy
- Islam promotes moderateness and simplicity and discourages overt
 - a) violence
 - b) charity
 - c) peace
 - d) misery

(B) Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think modesty is mentioned as a part of Islamic faith?
- Why do you think tolerance serves as the foundation for moderateness?

(C) Write [T] for true statements and [F] for false ones:

- The Qurān is a science book. [.....]
- Moderateness in Islam means to overburden oneself and others. [.....]

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Developing Sinai and providing job opportunities is the ideal way to combat extremism and terrorism.
- Teamwork teaches us cooperation, tolerance and forgiveness and is the only means to achieve our goals.

(B) Translate into English:

- التكنولوجيا الحديثة ، كعلامة للحضارة الحديثة ، غيرت أسلوب حياة معظم الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دائماً دوراً حيوياً في مشروعات التنمية الشاملة التي ساعدت في تطور ونمو الاقتصاد المصري.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED TWENTY (120) words on the following:

"The most important person in your life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

أولاً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجة واحدة»:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teenager's desire for often clashes with his parents' rules, and this can cause a gap.
a) unkindness b) dependence c) independence d) chaos
2. The actors are having their final before the play's opening show tonight.
a) rehearsal b) ceremony c) training d) course
3. After studying medicine, she began a long and successful as a doctor.
a) situation b) career c) mission d) duty
4. Experts say that getting an internship is an important toward building a professional network.
a) reliance b) exception c) standard d) step
5. My son managed to with a first-class degree from Cairo University, which opened many doors for his career.
a) achieve b) graduate c) compete d) enroll
6. Teaching has always been more than just a job for Ms. Karma; it's her true in life.
a) destination b) boredom c) passion d) location
7. The exam consists of both a written test and a/an section where students demonstrate their skills.
a) strange b) practical c) social d) economic
8. Not all people enjoyed the speech,?
a) were they b) did they c) don't they d) did they
9. No one knows the password,?
a) do they b) don't they c) does he d) doesn't he
10. You needn't come to work tomorrow,?
a) need you b) needn't you c) do you d) don't you
11. So you think you're going to win this argument,?
a) don't you b) do you c) aren't you d) are you

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Egypt has had some very famous people who won the Nobel Prize, one of the most important awards in the world. The Nobel Prize is given to people who do great work in fields like science, literature, peace, and medicine.

One of the most well-known Egyptians to win the Nobel Prize is Ahmed Zewail. He won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1999. Ahmed Zewail was a scientist who studied very small things called atoms and molecules. His work helped people understand how chemical reactions happen. Because of his discoveries, many scientists learned new things about how nature works.

Another important Egyptian Nobel winner is Naguib Mahfouz, a famous writer. He won the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1988. Mahfouz wrote many novels that told stories about life in Egypt. His books helped people see Egyptian culture and society in a new way. He is one of the greatest writers in the Arab world.

Egypt also had a Nobel Peace Prize winner named Anwar El-Sadat. He was the president of Egypt and won the prize in 1978 for his efforts to make peace between Egypt and Israel. His work helped bring peace to a region that had many years of conflict.

These Nobel Prize winners from Egypt are a great example of how Egyptians have contributed to the world in many ways. They worked hard and made important discoveries or changes that helped many people. People in Egypt are proud of these heroes. They inspire young Egyptians to study hard and work for a better future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

12. What did Ahmed Zewail study?
a) Planets and stars. b) Atoms and molecules.
c) Animals. d) History.

- ▶ 13. What type of writer was Naguib Mahfouz?
 a) A novelist. b) A poet. c) A historian. d) A scientist.
14. What prize did Anwar El-Sadat win?
 a) Nobel Prize in Literature. b) Nobel Prize in Medicine.
 c) Nobel Prize in Chemistry. d) Nobel Prize in Peace.
15. What can we infer about Egyptians from the passage?
 a) They only work in science and experiments.
 b) They have made important contributions in many fields.
 c) They do not win international awards for their work.
 d) They only write novels and stories.
16. What does "inspire" mean in: "They inspire young Egyptians to study hard."
 a) Make someone want to do something. b) Make someone tired and bored.
 c) Make someone angry and nervous. d) Make someone want to waste time.
17. What does "his" refer to in this sentence? "Because of his discoveries, many scientists learned new things."
 a) Naguib Mahfouz. b) Anwar El-Sadat. c) Ahmed Zewail. d) The president.
18. Why is Naguib Mahfouz considered important?
 a) He was a famous actor who performed well. b) He showed Egyptian culture in his books.
 c) He was a scientist who did some achievements. d) He was a famous doctor.
19. What does the passage say about young Egyptians?
 a) They don't like studying or win prizes.
 b) They don't like famous Egyptians who won prizes.
 c) They don't know about the Nobel Prize.
 d) They are inspired by Nobel Prize winners to work hard.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Teachers have the very important responsibility of shaping the lives of young, impressionable children. With this responsibility comes great pride and joy. A good teacher can be defined as someone who always pushes students to want to do their best while at the same time trying to make learning interesting as well as creative.

Most great teachers have a few things in common. Teachers who are thought of as "great" are usually passionate about teaching. They seem to love teaching and share this love with the students in their class. These teachers know their subjects well and teach outside of their textbooks.

Teachers, especially at the elementary level, must be very creative with their teaching styles. Not every child learns the same way, nor are they interested in the same things. It is difficult to keep the attention of 30-40 children under the age of ten. Classroom setup and design are good ways to get and keep the attention of students. Workstations are a good way to encourage different types of learning. By giving children a chance to choose which activities they want to participate in, children are taking control of their own education.

Good teachers often make their subject material seem **relevant** to a student's life. The teachers that students admire the most are fair to everyone.

The great teacher makes his or her class exciting. This teacher would also give some breaks in the routine and do something different, like labs or something fun for the students. They are open to learning from other teachers and also from their students. A great teacher knows how to control their class without screaming and doesn't let the disciplining get out of hand. They know their students as individuals and treat them with respect and in return they are treated the same. Teachers who teach the disabled or other diverse student populations must have additional qualities.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

20. Why great teachers are always remembered?
 a) Because they live near students.
 b) Because they take their students to labs.
 c) Because they are usually enthusiastic about teaching.
 d) Because they play with their students outside the classrooms.

- ▶ 21. How can we call the teachers who know their subjects well and teach outside of their textbooks?
 a) Creative. b) Greedy. c) Handsome. d) Courageous.
22. What can help students take control of their own education?
 a) Labs. b) Schoolyards. c) Breaks. d) Workstations.
23. What should the subject material be?
 a) Easy to help students pass. b) Relevant to a student's life.
 c) Difficult to make a clever student. d) Imported from another country.
24. What helps teachers to get and keep the attention of students?
 a) Classroom setup and design. b) Their academic study.
 c) The strict headmaster. d) The easy subjects.
25. are two merits that can define a good teacher.
 a) Having good relationships and personality
 b) Caring about both students and the learning process
 c) Speaking English and Arabic inside and outside the classroom
 d) Wisdom and old age
26. Going to labs
 a) strengthens the students' bodies b) makes the students bored
 c) makes the class exciting d) proves that the teacher is knowledgeable
27. The antonym of the word "relevant" is ".....".
 a) appropriate b) significant c) important d) unrelated

ثانياً: الأسئلة الموضوعية التالية (الاختيار من متعدد) «كل سؤال درجتان»:

28. Nothing he says can be trusted,?
 a) can't it b) can it c) does it d) will it
29. I'm going to be late for the meeting,?
 a) I am not b) amn't I c) aren't I d) isn't it
30. Let's not discuss this any further,?
 a) will we b) don't we c) do we d) shall we
31. She must have been very surprised when she heard the news,?
 a) mustn't she b) hasn't she c) didn't she d) hadn't she
32. There used to be a beautiful garden here,?
 a) used there b) didn't there c) usedn't it d) wasn't it
33. Nobody has complained about the new policy yet,?
 a) hasn't he b) haven't they c) has he d) have they
34. Which sentence has the correct punctuation?
 a) Sara's studying German; Physics and Chemistry this year.
 b) Sara's studying German, physics, and chemistry this year.
 c) Sara's studying German: physics and Chemistry this year.
 d) Sara's studying german physics chemistry this year.
35. Your thesis is "Summer is the best season." Which of these is most likely to be one of your three main points?
 a) Some schools don't have summer vacation.
 b) During the summer months, there are many activities for students to enjoy.
 c) Summer camp can be boring and expensive.
 d) There are four seasons in a year.

▶ Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

36. True friendship is a priceless treasure built on trust and mutual respect. A real friend stands by you in hard times and shares your happiness without expecting anything in return.
- (a) إن الصداقة الحقيقية كنز لا يُقدَّر بثمن، فهي تقوم على الحقيقة والاحترام المتبادل. الصديق الحقيقي يقف بجوارك في أوقات الشدة ويشاركك سعادتك دون المطالبة بأى شيء في المقابل.
- (b) إن الصداقة الحقيقية كنز لا يُقدَّر بثمن، فهي تقوم على الثقة والاحترام المتبادل. الصديق الحقيقي يقف بجوارك في أوقات الشدة ويشاركك سعادتك دون انتظار أى شيء في المقابل.
- (c) إن الصداقة الحقيقية كنز ليس له ثمن، فهي تقوم على الثقة والاحترام المتبادل. الصديق الوفي يقف معك في بعض أوقات الشدة ويشاركك سعادتك دون انتظار أى شيء في المقابل.
- (d) إن الصداقة الحقيقية ضغط لا يُقدَّر بثمن، فهي تقوم على الثقة والاحترام العلني. الصديق الحقيقي يقف بجوارك في أوقات الشدة ويشاركك سعادتك دون انتظار أى مال في المقابل.

37. Technology has become an essential part of our daily lives, making communication easier and saving time. However, overusing it can lead to isolation and less social interaction.

- (a) لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا جزءًا هامًا من حياتنا اليومية، فهي تسرع التواصل وتوفر الوقت. لكن استخدامها المفرط قد يؤدي إلى العزلة وزيادة التفاعل الاجتماعي.
- (b) لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا جزءًا هامًا من حياتنا يوميًا، فهي تسهل التواصل وتحفظ الوقت. لكن استخدامها المفرط سوف يؤدي إلى العزلة وقلة التفاعل الاجتماعي.
- (c) لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا جزءًا حقيقيًا من حياتنا اليومية، فهي تسهل التواصل وتوفر الوقت. لكن استخدامها المفرط قد يؤدي إلى العزلة وقلة التفاعل الاجتماعي.
- (d) لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا جزءًا هامًا من حياتنا اليومية، فهي تسهل التواصل وتوفر الوقت. لكن استخدامها المفرط قد يؤدي إلى العزلة وقلة التفاعل الاجتماعي.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

38. يزخر التاريخ المصري بنماذج رائعة من النساء اللاتي كان لهن دور كبير في مجتمعاتهن بداية بالملكة حتشبسوت ووصولًا إلى الرياضيات المعاصرات مثل هداية ملاك ونور الشربيني.

- a) Egyptian history is abundant with wonderful examples of women who played a major role in their families, beginning with Queen Hatshepsut and ending with contemporary athletes such as Hedaya Malak and Nour El-Sherbiny.
- b) Egyptian history is abundant with wonderful examples of women who played a major role in their societies, beginning with Queen Hatshepsut and ending with contemporary athletes such as Hedaya Malak and Nour El-Sherbiny.
- c) Egyptian history is abundant with wonderful examples of women who played a major role in their societies, beginning with Queen Hatshepsut and ending with modern mathematicians such as Hedaya Malak and Nour El-Sherbiny.
- d) Egyptian history is abundant with wonderful examples of women who played a major role in their societies, beginning with Queen Hatshepsut and ending with elegant athletes such as Hedaya Malak and Nour El-Sherbiny.

39. الشغف هو الطاقة التي تدفع الإنسان للاستمرار رغم التعب والعقبات. عندما يعمل الإنسان في شيء يحبه بصدق، فإنه يبذل ويحقق النجاح لأنه لا يشعر أن ما يفعله مجرد واجب.

- a) Passion is the energy that drives a person to keep going despite fatigue and obstacles. When someone works on something they truly love, they become creative and successful because it doesn't feel like just a duty.
- b) Passion is the energy that drives a person to keep going despite stress and obstacles. When someone works on something they truly love, they become creation and successful because it doesn't feel like just a duty.
- c) Adore is the energy which drives a person to keep going despite fatigue and obstacles. When someone works on something they truly love, they become active and successful because it doesn't feel like just a duty.
- d) Passion is the energy that drives a person to keep going despite fatigue and obstacles. When someone works on something they truly love, they become creative and successful because it doesn't feel as just a right.

ثالثًا: الأسئلة المقالية (كل سؤال درجتان):

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

40. I am in charge here. Am I right? (aren't)
41. My advice to you is to try this application. Do you agree? (shouldn't ...?)

Answer the following questions: (The Count of Monte Cristo)

42. Do you agree that forgiveness is stronger than revenge? Why or why not?
43. If you had power to punish your enemies, would you stop at justice or go further to seek revenge? Explain.

رابعًا: الأسئلة المقالية (سؤال واحد خمس درجات):

Write a paragraph of SIX (6) lines on the following topic:

44. "Why the Grand Egyptian Museum is a great achievement for modern Egypt."

(A) Vocabulary

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- The teacher's story was so inspiring that students wanted to try harder.
The synonym of the underlined word "inspiring" is
a) motivational b) grateful c) moving d) patronizing e) isolating
- The child was terrified when the lights suddenly went out.
The synonym of the underlined word "terrified" is
a) generous b) cheerful c) frightened d) frantic e) thoughtful
- His kind words during my struggles were truly touching.
The synonym of the underlined word "touching" is
a) rejecting b) moving c) terrifying d) polite e) influential
- She answered the question hesitatingly, unsure if her response was correct.
The antonym of the underlined word "hesitatingly" is
a) unhesitatingly b) regularly c) sadly d) slowly e) confidently
- He always has a cheerful smile on his face.
The antonym of the underlined word "cheerful" is
a) gloomy b) touched c) happy d) sad e) spontaneous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- His made him thank his hosts many times.
a) strength b) politeness c) rejection d) prose
- People in societies focus on group harmony.
a) collectivist b) individualistic c) hospitable d) terrified
- Good helps workers improve their performance.
a) hospitality b) daffodils c) wisdom d) feedback
- Offering food and a warm welcome to guests shows
a) cruelty b) hospitality c) tone d) prose
- She spoke, without waiting or hesitating.
a) unhesitatingly b) isolating c) grateful d) thoughtful
- His kind words during my struggles were truly
a) terrifying b) rejecting c) touching d) rude
- A student may start as an apprentice before beginning a full
a) career b) breeze c) compliment d) rejection
- Many people spend hours through social media feeds.
a) inspiring b) scrolling c) rehearsing d) complimenting
- A school helps students with problems.
a) counselor b) patron c) apprentice d) individualist
- The company has a strong for quality service.
a) compliment b) rhythm c) generosity d) reputation
- Old photographs often bring back happy
a) memories b) rejection c) prose d) hospitality

17. Water will smoothly down the river.
 a) flow b) escape c) discipline d) surprise
18. She felt sad after receiving a job application
 a) gesture b) prose c) rejection d) compliment
19. The speaker's of voice was calm and friendly.
 a) tone b) feedback c) compliment d) environment
20. The poem had a lively that made people enjoy it.
 a) career b) rhythm c) reputation d) prose
21. He always has a smile on his face.
 a) cheerful b) terrified c) touched d) spontaneous
22. Bright yellow grow in the spring.
 a) gestures b) apprentices c) daffodils d) tones
23. Many people face personal during difficult times.
 a) gestures b) struggles c) tones d) careers
24. The writer expressed his idea in simple, clear
 a) prose b) flow c) apprenticeship d) compliment
25. Protecting the natural is important for future generations.
 a) apprenticeship b) rhythm c) feedback d) environment

(B) Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

26. The man fixed our car is very kind.
 a) which b) who c) when d) where
27. The city we visited last summer was beautiful.
 a) when b) which c) where d) whose
28. She is the girl brother plays football with me.
 a) whose b) who c) which d) where
29. That's the restaurant serves the best pizza.
 a) when b) which c) who d) where
30. My house is than yours.
 a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) more big
31. Today is the day of the year.
 a) hot b) hotter c) hottest d) as hot
32. This exam was than the last one.
 a) difficult b) more difficult c) most difficult d) so difficult
33. Mount Everest is the mountain in the world.
 a) high b) higher c) highest d) most high
34. You're coming to the party, you?
 a) are b) aren't c) don't d) won't
35. He speaks French, he?
 a) does b) doesn't c) isn't d) won't
36. My new phone is than the old one.
 a) modern b) more modern c) most modern d) as modern
37. The hotel we stayed in was very expensive.
 a) where b) which c) who d) whose
38. You've met them before, you?
 a) haven't b) have c) aren't d) didn't

62. Through novels, poems, and plays, literature transcends time and culture, allowing us to walk in the shoes of others and understand worlds beyond our own.

- (a) من خلال الروايات والقصائد والمسرحيات، يتجاوز العلم الزمن والثقافة، مما يسمح لنا بالسير في أحذية الآخرين وتجاهل العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.
- (b) من خلال الروايات والقصائد والمسرحيات، يتجاوز الأدب الزمن والثقافة، مما يسمح لنا بخوض تجارب الآخرين وفهم العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.
- (c) من خلال الروايات والقصائد والألعاب، يتجاوز الأدب الزمن والمكان، مما يسمح لنا بالسير عكس اتجاه الآخرين وفهم العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.
- (d) من خلال القصص والروايات والمسرحيات، يتجاوز الأدب الزمن والثقافة، مما يسمح لنا بخوض تجارب الآخرين وفهم العوالم التي تتجاوز عالمنا.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

63. يعتبر الأدب بمثابة مرآة للروح الإنسانية، ويكشف عن أعمق مخاوفنا وآمالنا وتناقضاتنا من خلال قوة القصة واللغة.
- a) Literature serves as a mirror to the humane soul, revealing our deepest fears, hopes, and contradictions through the power of story and language.
- b) Literature serves as a mirror to the human soul, revealing our deepest fears, hopes, and contradictions through the power of story and language.
- c) Literature serves as a mirror to the human soul, prevailing our deepest fears, hopes, and contradictions thoroughly the power of story and language.
- d) Literature serves as a mirror to the humane soul, prevailing our deeper fears, hopes, and contradictions thoroughly the power of story and language.
64. تتجلى حفاوة الأمم وكرم ضيافتها عندما ترحب بالغرباء بأذرع مفتوحة، وتوفر لهم الأمان والكرامة والإنسانية المشتركة بغض النظر عن الحدود.
- a) The kindness and hospitals of nations shine brightest when they welcome strangers with open arms, offering safe, dignity, and shared human regardless of borders.
- b) The generosity and hospitality of nations shine brightest when they welcome strangers with open arms, offering safe, dignity, and shared human regardless of borders.
- c) The kindness and hospitals of nations shine brightest where they welcome strangers with open arms, offering safety, dignity, and shared humanity regardless of borders.
- d) The generosity and hospitality of nations shine brightest when they welcome strangers with open arms, offering safety, dignity, and shared humanity regardless of borders.

(D) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Folk stories are the oral treasures passed down through generations, preserving the values, fears, and dreams of communities long before written records existed. Found in every culture—from African tales to Slavic witch legends, from Native American animal myths to Asian trickster fables—these narratives blend magic with moral lessons. Often told by elders around fires or during festivals, folk tales use simple language, repetitive structures, and anthropomorphic animals to make complex truths accessible to children and adults alike. Characters like clever rabbits, vengeful spirits, or humble heroes reflect societal norms and warnings: greed leads to downfall, kindness is rewarded, and arrogance invites disaster. Unlike modern fiction, folk stories evolve with each telling, adapting to local dialects and contemporary concerns while retaining their core message.

They serve not just as entertainment but as cultural anchors, reinforcing identity and collective memory. In a world increasingly dominated by digital media, these stories remind us of our shared human heritage. UNESCO recognizes many folk traditions as intangible cultural heritage, urging their preservation. Even today, storytellers in rural villages and urban schools keep these tales alive, ensuring that the wisdom of ancestors continues to whisper through time. Whether it's "Anansi the Spider" teaching with over strength or "Cinderella" illustrating resilience, folk stories remain timeless teachers wrapped in enchantment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Folk stories are primarily transmitted
 - through textbooks
 - in scientific journals
 - via social media
 - orally across generations
- The main purpose of folk tales is often to teach
 - mathematical formulas
 - moral lessons
 - scientific facts
 - cooking techniques
- Which character type commonly appears in folk tales to represent cleverness?
 - Kings.
 - Robots.
 - Tricksters.
 - Astronauts.
- Folk stories often use animals to represent human traits; a technique called
 - personification
 - symbolism
 - metaphor
 - alliteration
- UNESCO classifies many folk traditions as heritage.
 - natural
 - tangible
 - intangible
 - technological
- makes folk stories adaptable over time.
 - Rigid plots
 - Strict copyright laws
 - Lack of audience
 - Evolving details with each telling
- Folk stories help preserve a community's
 - collective memory
 - fashion trends
 - military history
 - stock market data

(E) Writing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A diary usually uses the person point of view.
 - first
 - second
 - third
 - passive
- A diary entry is often organized by
 - rhyme
 - date
 - chapters
 - stanzas
- Diaries typically include the feelings, thoughts, and daily events.
 - writer's
 - reader's
 - teacher's
 - editor's
- Poems are often divided into sections called
 - paragraphs
 - entries
 - chapters
 - stanzas
- The repeating pattern of sounds in a poem is called
 - rhyme
 - tone
 - biography
 - prose
- The mood or attitude of a poem is referred to as its
 - flow
 - tone
 - diary
 - date
- Unlike prose, poems usually pay close attention to and rhythm.
 - grammar
 - spelling
 - word choice
 - punctuation
- A biography is the story of a person's life written by
 - themselves
 - another person
 - a teacher
 - a poet
- A biography usually presents events in order.
 - random
 - reversed
 - alphabetical
 - chronological
- Biographies often highlight a person's major and struggles.
 - hobbies
 - achievements
 - favorite foods
 - diary entries

11. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a) My brother who lives in Toronto is visiting next week.
- b) My brother, who lives in Toronto, is visiting next week.
- c) My brother, who lives in Toronto is visiting next week.
- d) My brother who lives in Toronto, is visiting next week.

12. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a) I bought apples, oranges, and bananas; but I forgot to buy milk.
- b) I bought apples, oranges, and bananas, but I forgot to buy milk.
- c) I bought apples, oranges and bananas but I forgot to buy milk.
- d) I bought apples, oranges, and bananas—but I forgot to buy milk.

13. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a) She said "I'll be there in five minutes" and hung up the phone.
- b) She said, "I'll be there in five minutes," and hung up the phone.
- c) She said "I'll be there in five minutes," and hung up the phone.
- d) She said, "I'll be there in five minutes" and hung up the phone.

14. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a) He asked: "Where are you going?"
- b) He asked "where are you going?"
- c) He asked, "Where are you going?"
- d) He asked, "where are you going?"

15. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a) Although it was raining; we decided to go for a walk.
- b) Although it was raining, we decided to go for a walk.
- c) Although it was raining we decided to go for a walk.
- d) Although it was raining—we decided to go for a walk.

2 Write about one of the following prompts:

- a) A diary entry about "A secret I've never told anyone".

.....
.....
.....

- b) A short poem about "The change of seasons".

.....
.....
.....

3 Write about one of the following:

- a) A diary entry about "The first time I traveled alone".

.....
.....
.....

- b) Write a conclusion paragraph for a biography titled: "A Famous Scientist Who Changed the World".

.....
.....
.....

Story

The Count of Monte Cristo



Story

Chapter in Points

Chapter Texts

Exercises

Chapter (7)

Escape to Freedom

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية			
beloved	محبوبة	influence	نفوذ/تأثير	reward loyalty	يكافئ الوفاء
betray	يخون	instrument of justice	أداة لتحقيق العدالة	routes	طرق/مسارات
condemned	حكم عليه/أدانته	invisible hand of justice	اليد الخفية للعدالة	scars	ندوب/آثار جروح
corrupt	فاسد	justice	عدالة	smugglers	مهربون
disguise	تتكر/تخف	manner	أدب/سلوك	spirit	روح/عزيمة
false names	أسماء مزيفة	noblemen	نبلاء	suffering	معاناة
fears	مخاوف	prey	فريسة	survival	البقاء/النجاة
fiancée	خطيبة	prosecutor	المدعى العام	swear	يقسم
freedom of movement	حرية الحركة	punish betrayal	يعاقب الخيانة	taxes	ضرائب
greed	جشع	rage	غضب	titles	ألقاب/مناصب
grief	حزن عميق	reborn	وُلد من جديد	unbroken	لم يكسر/قوى
growing stronger	يصبح أقوى	refined	راقى/مصقول	victim	ضحية
hatred	كراهية	respected	محترم	weakness	ضعف
hunter	صياد	revenge	انتقام		

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

an invisible hand of justice	يد خفية للعدالة	filled with grief and rage	ممتلئ بالحزن والغضب	moments of doubt	لحظات من الشك
chained to the past	مقيّد بالماضي	key to his destiny	مفتاح مصيره	moved among the wealthy	اختلف بالأثرياء
could hardly believe his eyes	لم يصدق عينيه	learned the manners of noblemen	تعلم آداب النبلاء	would fall by his own weakness	سيقع بضعفه هو
escape to freedom	الهروب إلى الحرية	left behind	ترك خلفه		

Chapter in Points

1. The sea was now his road. Edmond Dantès had escaped the terrible prison of Château d'If and felt free again after many dark years.
أصبح البحر طريقه الآن. لقد هرب إدموند دانتيس من السجن الفظيع في قلعة إيف وشعر بالحرية بعد سنوات طويلة من الظلام.
2. His heart was full of pain from years of suffering, but his spirit stayed strong and full of hope for a new beginning.
كان قلبه مليئًا بالألم بعد سنوات العذاب، لكن روحه بقيت قوية ومليئة بالأمل في بداية جديدة.
3. Freedom was sweet, but Edmond knew it was only the beginning of a long road toward justice and revenge.
كانت الحرية جميلة، لكن إدموند عرف أنها ليست النهاية، بل بداية طريق طويل نحو العدالة والانتقام.
4. After escaping, Edmond worked on different ships using false names. He was strong, smart, and quickly earned the trust of every captain.
بعد هروبه، عمل إدموند في سفن مختلفة مستخدمًا أسماء مزيفة، وكان قويًا وذكيًا، فكسب ثقة كل قبطان بسرعة.
5. He stayed quiet, never talking about his past, and used his time to learn about the sea and the world.
ظل صامتًا لا يتحدث عن ماضيه، واستغل وقته في تعلم كل شيء عن البحر والعالم من حوله.
6. He was careful, afraid that Villefort, Danglars, or Fernand might hear of his survival and try to destroy him again.
كان حذرًا، يخشى أن يسمع فيلפור أو دانجلار أو فيرناند بخروجه من السجن ويحاولوا تدميره من جديد.
7. So he waited patiently, gathering information about ports, ships, and people that might help him in the future.
لذلك انتظر بصبر، يجمع المعلومات عن الموانئ والسفن والناس الذين قد يفيدونه لاحقًا.
8. One night, Edmond joined a group of smugglers sailing between Italy and Corsica. He lived dangerously but learned much about freedom.
في إحدى الليالي، انضم إدموند إلى مجموعة من المهربين الذين يبحرون بين إيطاليا وكورسيكا، فعاش حياة خطيرة، لكن تعلم الكثير عن الحرية.
9. With them, he returned to the island of Monte Cristo, which they used to hide goods, but he knew it was his destiny.
ومعهم عاد إلى جزيرة مونتى كريستو التي استخدموها لإخفاء البضائع، لكنه كان يعرف أنها قدره.
10. He pretended to hunt on the island, but when alone, he dug deep and discovered the great treasure of the Spada family.
تظاهر بأنه يصطاد على الجزيرة، لكن عندما كان وحده، حفر في الأرض واكتشف كنز عائلة سبادا العظيم.
11. When he opened the chest, Edmond saw gold, jewels, and gems brighter than his dreams. He could hardly believe it was real.
عندما فتح الصندوق، رأى إدموند ذهبًا وجواهر ولمعانًا يفوق أحلامه، ولم يصدق عينيه من الدهشة.
12. The poor sailor and prisoner were gone; now he was a rich man with power, freedom, and a chance to build a new life.
اختفى البحار والسجين الفقير، وأصبح رجلًا غنيًا يمتلك القوة والحرية وفرصة لبناء حياة جديدة.
13. He remembered Abbé Faria's words: "Use the treasure wisely." Edmond swore to become a new man with a new name.
تذكر كلمات الأب فاريا: «استخدم الكنز بحكمة»، وأقسم إدموند أن يصبح رجلًا جديدًا باسم جديد.
14. He whispered to himself, "I will be the Count of Monte Cristo."
همس لنفسه قائلاً: «سأكون كونت مونتى كريستو».
15. Before starting his plans, Edmond returned to Marseille to see what had happened during the years of his prison life.
قبل أن يبدأ خطته، عاد إدموند إلى مارسيليا ليرى ما حدث خلال سنوات سجنه الطويلة.
16. He walked the familiar streets dressed as a sailor, but his father's house was closed and silent.
سار في الشوارع التي يعرفها مرتديًا زي بحار، لكن بيت والده كان مغلقًا وصامتًا.

17. The neighbors told him his father had died of hunger and sadness soon after his arrest.
أخبره الجيران أن والده مات من الجوع والحزن بعد وقت قصير من اعتقاله.
18. Tears filled his eyes; his father's death hurt him more than years in prison.
امتألت عيناه بالدموع؛ فوفاة والده ألمته أكثر من سنوات السجن كلها.
19. He asked about Mercédès and learned she had married Fernand, believing Edmond was guilty or dead.
سأل عن ميرسيدس، فعرف أنها تزوجت من فيرناند بعدما اعتقدت أن إدموند مذنب أو ميت.
20. It broke his heart—the man who betrayed him now lived happily with the woman he loved.
انكسر قلبه، فالرجل الذي خدعه يعيش الآن سعيدًا مع المرأة التي أحبها.
21. Edmond then visited Morrel's company, the kind man who once trusted him, and found him close to losing everything.
زار إدموند شركة موريل، الرجل الطيب الذي وثق به، ووجده على وشك خسارة كل شيء.
22. Secretly, Edmond used some of his treasure to save Morrel from debt and despair.
استخدم إدموند جزءًا من كنزه سرًا لإنقاذ موريل من الديون واليأس.
23. This act of kindness gave him strength—he could reward loyalty just as he would punish betrayal.
وهذا العمل الطيب منحه قوة داخلية، فقد عرف أنه سيكافئ الوفاء كما سيعاقب الخيانة.
24. To prepare for the future, Edmond traveled across Europe, buying jewels, fine clothes, and a yacht.
استعد للمستقبل بالسفر عبر أوروبا، فاشترى المجوهرات والملابس الفاخرة وبخنا خاصًا.
25. He studied noble manners, learned languages, and acted like a gentleman so that no one could doubt his new identity.
تعلم آداب النبلاء، وأتقن اللغات، وتصرف كالسيد الراقى كي لا يشك أحد في هويته الجديدة.
26. He held many jobs—banker, merchant, sailor—and learned how people's greed and fear controlled their lives.
تقلد وظائف كثيرة مثل مصرفي وتاجر وبخار، وتعلم كيف يتحكم الطمع والخوف في الناس.
27. Inside, he was still Edmond Dantès, waiting patiently for the right moment to strike back.
لكن في داخله، بقي إدموند دانتيس نفسه، ينتظر بصبر اللحظة المناسبة للانتقام.
28. He made a list of his enemies: Danglars, Fernand, and Villefort—the men who had destroyed his life.
أعد قائمة بأعدائه: دانجلار، فيرناند، وفيلفور، الرجال الذين دمروا حياته.
29. They were now rich and powerful, but Edmond planned to make them fall by their own greed and lies.
أصبحوا الآن أثرياء وأقوياء، لكن إدموند خطط لإسقاطهم بأطماعهم وأكاذيبهم الخاصة.
30. He would not act in anger—his revenge would be cold, careful, and complete.
لن ينتقم بغضب؛ سيكون انتقامه باردًا، مدروسًا، وكاملًا.
31. Sometimes, Edmond remembered Abbé Faria's warning: "Do not let hatred destroy you."
أحيانًا كان يتذكر تحذير الأب فاريا: «لا تدع الكراهية تدمرك».
32. He wondered if he was searching for justice or revenge, and whether happiness was still possible for him.
تساءل إن كان يبحث عن العدالة أم الانتقام، وهل ما زالت السعادة ممكنة له.
33. After years of preparation, Edmond became the perfect nobleman: calm voice, elegant clothes, and mysterious eyes.
بعد سنوات من التحضير، أصبح إدموند نبيلًا مثاليًا: صوته هادئ، وملابسه أنيقة، وعينه غامضتان.
34. To the world, he was now The Count of Monte Cristo—a man of wealth, mystery, and power.
أصبح أمام العالم "كونت مونتى كريستو" — رجل الثروة والغموض والقوة.
35. With this mask, he could face his enemies, and none would recognize the poor sailor they had once betrayed.
بهذا القناع، استطاع أن يواجه أعداءه، دون أن يعرف أحد أنه البخار الفقير الذى خانوه يومًا.

Chapter Text

The sea was now his road. Edmond Dantès had left behind the terrible walls of Château d'If and stood reborn as a free man. His heart still carried scars from years of suffering, but his spirit was unbroken. Freedom tasted sweet, but he knew it was only the beginning.

A New Sailor

After escaping, Edmond worked on different ships under false names. He had the strong body of a sailor and the sharp mind of a leader, so no captain refused his help. He learned quickly, stayed quiet, and never spoke of his past.

In those days, he was cautious. He was not yet ready to show himself to the world as Edmond Dantès. If people knew his name, Villefort the prosecutor, Danglars the jealous clerk, and Fernand the false friend might hear of his survival. They would try again to destroy him.

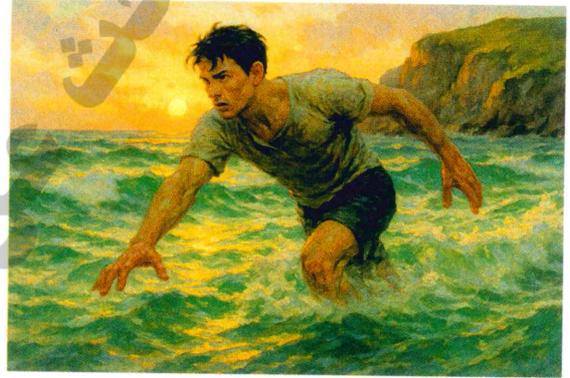
So Edmond waited. He used his time at sea to collect information about ports, routes, and politics. Every new detail was a tool for his future.

The Smugglers

One evening, Edmond joined a group of smugglers sailing between Italy and Corsica. They carried secret goods and sold them without paying taxes. Life with them was dangerous but useful. He gained experience, courage, and, most importantly, freedom of movement.

It was with these smugglers that he returned to the island of Monte Cristo. The men thought it was only a hiding place for their cargo. Edmond knew it was the key to his destiny.

He pretended to be interested only in hunting on the rocky island. But when left alone, he dug deep and uncovered the treasure of the Spada family.



The Treasure Transforms Him

Edmond could hardly believe his eyes when he opened the chest full of gold and jewels. The treasure was greater than his wildest dreams. Suddenly, he was no longer a poor sailor or an escaped prisoner.

With such wealth, he could buy ships, houses, clothes, titles—even respect. He could create a new life, powerful and untouchable.

He remembered Abbé Faria's words: This treasure is yours. Use it wisely. Edmond swore that day to become someone new. Edmond Dantès was the name of a victim. Now, he would choose another name, one that no man could stain with lies.

He whispered to himself: "I will be the Count of Monte Cristo."

Returning to Marseille

Before beginning his plans, Edmond felt the need to return to his old home in Marseille. He wanted to see with his own eyes what had happened during his years in prison.

When he arrived, dressed as a simple sailor, he walked the streets of his youth. But nothing was the same. His father's small house was closed, empty, and silent. The neighbors told him the truth: his poor father had died of hunger and sadness soon after Edmond's arrest.

Tears filled Edmond's eyes. His heart burned with both grief and rage. They killed him as surely as if they had struck him with a knife, he thought.

Then he asked about Mercédès, his beloved fiancée. The neighbors told him she had waited for a while, but believing Edmond was guilty or dead, she had married Fernand. Together, they had moved into a fine house. Fernand had become a respected man, even rich.

Edmond's hands clenched. The man who betrayed me now lives happily with the woman I loved. It was more painful than all his years in prison.

The Friend Who Remained Loyal

Not everything was lost. Edmond visited the shipping company of Morrel, the kind shipowner who had always trusted him. He learned that Morrel had fallen into debt and was close to losing his business.

Edmond, still in disguise, secretly used part of his new fortune to save Morrel's company. He wanted to reward loyalty, just as he planned to punish betrayal.

This small act gave him strength. He knew now how he would live: as an invisible hand of justice.

Building His New Identity

To prepare for the future, Edmond traveled widely. He visited Rome, Paris, and the great cities of the Mediterranean. With his treasure, he bought jewels, fine clothes, and even a yacht.

He learned the manners of noblemen, studied languages, and moved among the wealthy without suspicion. Soon, he was no longer a poor sailor in appearance but a gentleman of mystery.

In every port, he used different names. Sometimes he was a rich banker, sometimes a merchant, sometimes a sailor again. Each mask taught him something new about people—their greed, their fears, and their secrets.

But in his heart, he remained the same man: Edmond Dantès, betrayed and wronged, waiting for the right time to strike.

Preparing for Justice

Edmond's mind worked like a machine. He made lists of his enemies:

- Danglars, the greedy clerk who envied his success.
- Fernand, the false friend who stole his fiancée.
- Villefort, the corrupt prosecutor who condemned him to hide a family scandal.

Each man had grown rich and powerful in the years of Edmond's suffering. But Edmond was patient. He would not attack in anger. He would prepare carefully, so that when the moment came, each enemy would fall by his own weakness.

A Heart Full of Conflicts

Still, there were moments of doubt. At night, when he was alone, Edmond remembered the words of Abbé Faria: "Do not let hatred destroy you."

Sometimes he wondered: "Was he seeking justice, or revenge? Could he still live as a happy man, or was his soul forever chained to the past?"

He tried to silence these questions. He told himself he was the instrument of justice, chosen to reward the good and punish the guilty. But deep inside, Edmond felt the dangerous fire of revenge growing stronger every day.



The Mask of the Count

Finally, after years of preparation, Edmond was ready. He no longer looked like a sailor, but like a nobleman of ancient blood. His clothes were rich but elegant, his manners refined, his voice calm and controlled.

He had built an identity that could not be questioned. To the world, he was now The Count of Monte Cristo—a man of great wealth, mysterious origins, and powerful influence.

With this mask, he could move freely in high society. He could meet his enemies face to face, and they would not recognize the poor sailor they had betrayed.

The hunter was ready, and the prey did not even know danger was near.

Factual Questions

1. Where did Edmond Dantès go after escaping from Château d'If?

أين ذهب إدموند دانتيس بعد هروبه من قلعة إيف؟

- He went to sea, working on different ships under false names, beginning a new life as a free but cautious sailor.

2. Why did Edmond use false names while working on ships?

لماذا استخدم إدموند أسماء مزيفة أثناء عمله في السفن؟

- He wanted to hide his true identity to avoid being discovered by Villefort, Danglars, or Fernand.

3. Why did Edmond travel with the smugglers?

لماذا سافر إدموند مع المهربين؟

- He gained courage, experience, and freedom to move between islands, using the journey for his secret goals.

4. What did Edmond find on the island of Monte Cristo?

ماذا وجد إدموند في جزيرة مونت كريستو؟

- He uncovered the hidden treasure of the Spada family, filled with gold and jewels.

5. What effect did the treasure have on Edmond's life?

ما تأثير الكنز على حياة إدموند؟

- It transformed him from a poor sailor into a wealthy man capable of creating a powerful new identity.

6. Why did Edmond return to Marseille?

لماذا عاد إدموند إلى مارسييليا؟

- He wanted to see what had happened to his father, his home, and Mercédès after his imprisonment.

7. What did Edmond discover about his father and Mercédès during his imprisonment?

ماذا اكتشف إدموند عن والده وميرسيدس أثناء سجنه؟

- He learned that his father had died from hunger and grief shortly after Edmond's arrest. Mercédès married Fernand, believing Edmond was dead or guilty, and now lived comfortably as Fernand's wife.

8. How did Edmond help Morrel without revealing his identity?

كيف ساعد إدموند موريل دون كشف هويته؟

- He secretly used part of his fortune to save Morrel's business from bankruptcy.

9. Why did Edmond use different names in every port?

لماذا استخدم إدموند أسماء مختلفة في كل ميناء؟

- To hide his identity and study people's greed, fear, and secrets without suspicion.

10. What was Edmond's main goal after all his preparation?

ما الهدف الرئيسي لإدموند بعد كل استعداداته؟

- To bring each of his enemies to ruin through their own weaknesses, not by open revenge.

Critical Thinking Questions

1. What does Edmond's silence about his past reveal about his character?

ماذا يكشف صمت إدموند عن ماضيه حول شخصيته؟

- It shows his caution, intelligence, and emotional control—he valued strategy over impulsive speech.

2. What do Edmond's mixed emotions toward Mercédès show about human nature?

ماذا تكشف مشاعر إدموند المختلطة تجاه ميرسيدس عن الطبيعة البشرية؟

- They reveal that love and anger can coexist, showing the deep conflict between forgiveness and resentment. **سخط.**

3. How did Edmond's experiences change his understanding of power?

كيف غيرت تجارب إدموند فهمه للقوة؟

- He learned that true power lies in control, intelligence, and the ability to influence others unseen.

4. Why did Edmond choose the identity of a nobleman rather than a common man?

لماذا اختار إدموند هوية نبيل بدلاً من رجل عادي؟

- It gave him access to high society, where his enemies thrived, allowing him to monitor them.

5. How did Edmond use knowledge as a weapon?

كيف استخدم إدموند المعرفة كسلاح؟

- He gathered information about routes, politics, and people, turning every fact into a tool for control.

6. What does Edmond's careful preparation tell us about his mind?

ماذا تخبرنا استعدادات إدموند الدقيقة عن عقله؟

- It reveals a strategic thinker who valued patience and detail more than brute strength. **قوة غاشمة.**

7. Why did Edmond feel both grief and empowerment after discovering the treasure?

لماذا شعر إدموند بالحزن والتمكين بعد اكتشاف الكنز؟

- The treasure reminded him of his suffering but also gave him the means to change his destiny.

8. Why did Edmond avoid acting from anger?

لماذا تجنب إدموند التصرف بدافع الغضب؟

- He understood that anger clouds judgment and that true victory requires calm and precision. **يغشى / يغطي على**

9. How does Edmond's loyalty to Morrel contrast with his revenge toward others?

كيف تتناقض ولاء إدموند لموريل مع انتقامه من الآخرين؟

- It highlights his moral code—he rewards good while destroying evil with the same determination.

10. What does the phrase "The hunter was ready, and the prey did not even know danger was near" show?

بماذا توحى عبارة «الصيد كان مستعدًا، والفريسة لم تكن تعلم بالخطر القريب»؟

- It shows Edmond's patience and control, preparing his revenge secretly while his enemies lived unaware.

11. What does Edmond's successful escape reveal about his character?

SB

ما الذي يكشفه هروب إدموند الناجح عن شخصيته؟

- It shows he is brave, intelligent, and determined. He planned carefully and never gave up, even after years in prison. His escape proves his strong will and clever mind.

12. How does the sea play both a danger and a path to freedom in this chapter?

SB

كيف كان البحر خطرًا وطريقًا للحرية في الوقت نفسه؟

- The sea was dangerous because it could have drowned him, but it also became his path to freedom and new life. It tested his courage and gave him a chance to start again.

13. Do you think Edmond's escape was more about intelligence or luck? Why?

SB

هل كان هروب إدموند يعتمد أكثر على الذكاء أم الحظ؟ ولماذا؟

- Mostly intelligence—he planned well and used every chance wisely. But luck helped a little, since the sea didn't kill him and he met helpful people.

14. If you were in Edmond's situation, would you have the courage to risk drowning for freedom?

SB

Explain.

لو كنت مكان إدموند، هل كنت ستملك الشجاعة للمخاطرة بالغرق من أجل الحرية؟ وضح.

- Yes, because living as a prisoner is worse than dying free. Freedom gives life meaning, and Edmond's courage shows that it's worth any danger.

15. The sea represents more than water. What does it symbolize in Edmond's journey?

SB

البحر يمثل أكثر من مجرد ماء، ماذا يرمز في رحلة إدموند؟

- It symbolizes freedom, rebirth, and destiny. The sea washed away his past and opened the way to his new identity as the Count of Monte Cristo.

1 Factual Questions:

1. What kind of work did Edmond do after his escape?
2. Who were the smugglers Edmond joined?
3. What name did Edmond choose for himself after finding the treasure?
4. How did Edmond react to the news about Fernand and Mercédès?
5. Who remained loyal to Edmond during his misfortune?
6. What kind of life did Edmond plan after helping Morrel?
7. How did Edmond prepare for his new role?
8. What did Edmond learn from his travels among the wealthy?
9. Who were the three main enemies Edmond planned to punish?
10. How did Edmond's time at sea benefit his long-term plans?
11. What moral advice did Abbé Faria give Edmond about the treasure?
12. How did Edmond's discovery of his father's death affect his sense of justice?
13. Why did Edmond delay taking revenge immediately?

2 Critical Thinking Questions:

1. How does visiting Marseille help Edmond decide his next steps?
2. What moral limits should Edmond consider while punishing his enemies?
3. How does helping Morrel reflect Edmond's values?
4. Why is it important for Edmond to make each enemy fall by his own weakness?
5. How might Edmond's idea of justice differ from the law's justice?
6. How would Edmond's story change if the treasure on Monte Cristo did not exist?
7. If Edmond had revealed his identity early, what could have gone wrong?
8. If Edmond told Mercédès the truth, what could happen?
9. What shows that Edmond is patient and strategic, not impulsive متهور?
10. Do you think Edmond's plan is more about justice or revenge?
11. Why do you think Edmond avoided revealing his survival to the world?
12. How did the treasure symbolize more than wealth for Edmond?
13. Why do you think Edmond believed revenge could restore balance?
14. Why was disguising his identity so important for Edmond's mission?

Chapter (8)

The Island of Monte Cristo

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

adventurer	مغامر	foundation	أساس	pearls	لؤلؤ
ancestry	نَسَب	fugitive	هارب	politicians	سياسيون
aristocrat	أرستقراطي / نبيل	guardian	حارس	purpose	هدف / غرض
arrange	يرتب	hatred	كراهية	reality	واقع
barren	قاحل	identity	هوية	refuge	ملجأ / مأوى
caverns	كهوف / مغارات	influence	نفوذ / تأثير	retreat	ينسحب / يلجأ
centuries	قرون	investments	استثمارات	revenge	انتقام
cliffs	منحدرات صخرية	justice	عدالة	rocky	صخري
cruel	قاسى	kingdom	مملكة	rubies	ياقوت
darker	أكثر ظلمة	legend	أسطورة	storerooms	مخازن
deceive	يخدع	lies	أكاذيب	supplies	مؤن / إمدادات
destiny	القدر / المصير	locks	أقفال	suspicion	شك / اشتباه
diamonds	ألماس	mask	قناع	symbol	رمز
disguised	متنكر	master	سيد / مالك	torches	مشاعل
dock	رصيف / مرسى	merchants	تجار	treasure	كنز
elegant	أنيق	misery	بؤس / شقاء	unreadable	غامض / يصعب قراءته
endless	بلا نهاية	mystery	غموض	untold riches	ثروات لا توصف
faithful	وفى / مخلص	oath	قسم	untouchable	لا يُمس
fortress	حصن / قلعة	Parisian society	المجتمع الباريسى	wicked	شرير

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

gold is nothing without purpose الذهب لا قيمة له دون هدف	return with purpose عودة بهدف محدد
lies of his own أكاذيبه الخاصة	symbol of destiny رمز للقدر
lives of wealth and lies حياة من الثراء والأكاذيب	turning into something darker يتحول إلى شيء أكثر ظلمة
mask that no enemy could see through قناع لا يمكن لأى عدوان يخترقه	welcomed in noble houses مرحب به فى بيوت النبلاء
move small amounts without suspicion نقل كميات صغيرة دون إثارة الشك	

Chapter in Points

- 1. The name Monte Cristo became very special for Edmond Dantès. It was a symbol of his destiny and the start of his new life.**

أصبح اسم مونتى كريستو مميّزًا جدًا لإدموند دانتيس، فقد كان رمزًا لمصيره وبداية حياته الجديدة.
- 2. The treasure of the Spada family made him rich and strong. The island became his secret home and the base of his new identity.**

جعلته كنوز عائلة سيادا غنيًا وقويًا، وأصبحت الجزيرة موطنه السرى وأساس هويته الجديدة.
- 3. After helping Morrel and traveling across Europe, Edmond returned to Monte Cristo—not as a poor sailor, but as a rich and confident man.**

بعد أن ساعد موريل وسافر في أنحاء أوروبا، عاد إدموند إلى مونتى كريستو، لا كبحار فقير، بل كرجل غنى واثق بنفسه.
- 4. He brought sailors to help him unload tools, food, and supplies. They thought he was only a traveler, but the island was his kingdom.**

أحضر بحارة ليساعده في إنزال الأدوات والطعام والمؤن، ظنّوه مجرد مسافر، لكن الجزيرة كانت مملكته.
- 5. Deep inside Monte Cristo were dark caves filled with gold, jewels, and pearls. Edmond organized everything carefully, keeping his secret safe.**

في أعماق مونتى كريستو كانت هناك كهوف مظلمة مليئة بالذهب والجواهر واللؤلؤ، ونظم إدموند كل شيء بعناية ليبقى سره آمن.
- 6. The treasure was more than money—it gave him power, freedom, and the strength to take revenge on those who had ruined his life.**

كان الكنز أكثر من مجرد مال، فقد منحه القوة والحرية والقدرة على الانتقام من الذين دمّروا حياته.
- 7. He built hidden rooms, storerooms, and locks on the island. He even made a secret dock where boats could arrive without being seen.**

بنى غرفًا ومستودعات وأقفالًا سرية في الجزيرة، بل صنع رصيفًا خفيًا يمكن للقوارب أن تصل إليه دون أن تُرى.
- 8. As he lived there, Edmond changed completely. The poor sailor who once loved Mercédès no longer existed.**

تغيّر إدموند تمامًا أثناء إقامته هناك، فلم يعد ذلك البحار الفقير الذى أحب ميرسيدس.
- 9. On the island, a new man was born: rich, powerful, and mysterious. He called himself the Count of Monte Cristo.**

وُلد في الجزيرة رجل جديد: غنى، قوى وغامض، أطلق على نفسه لقب «كونت مونتى كريستو».
- 10. He practiced speaking and acting like a nobleman, learning calm, polite manners so no one could guess his real past.**

تدرب على الحديث والتصرّف كالنبلاء، وتعلّم الهدوء واللباقة حتى لا يتمكن أحد من معرفة ماضيه الحقيقى.
- 11. Even in his golden paradise, Edmond often felt sadness. He remembered prison, his father's death, and Mercédès' gentle smile.**

حتى في جنّته الذهبية، كان يشعر بالحزن أحيانًا، متذكرًا السجن، وموت والده، وابتسامة ميرسيدس الرقيقة.
- 12. The treasure gave him freedom, but not peace. He knew real peace would only come when justice was done.**

الكنز منحه الحرية، لكنه لم يمنحه السلام. أدرك أن السلام الحقيقى لن يأتى إلا عندما تتحقق العدالة.
- 13. Edmond began to use his money to gain power. He helped merchants, invested in ships, and became known as a successful rich man.**

بدأ إدموند يستخدم ماله ليكسب النفوذ، فساعد التجار واستثمر في السفن، وأصبح معروفًا كرجل ثرى ناجح.

14. In Rome, he acted as a banker; in Paris, he appeared as a noble foreigner. People respected him, but no one knew who he really was.
فى روما تصرّف كمصرفى، وفى باريس ظهر كنبيل أجنبى، احترمه الناس، لكن لم يعرف أحد من يكون فى الحقيقة.
15. He saw how easily people believed lies and appearances. Society trusted the rich and forgot about truth or honesty.
لاحظ كيف يصدق الناس الأكاذيب والمظاهر بسهولة، وكيف يثق المجتمع بالأغنياء وينسى الحقيقة والصدق.
16. Edmond decided to use the same kind of lies to punish those who had built their lives on falsehoods and betrayal.
قرّر إدموند أن يستخدم نفس الأكاذيب ليعاقب الذين بنوا حياتهم على الخداع والخيانة.
17. "Danglars, Fernand, Villefort," he whispered. "You will all face justice. I am no longer Edmond Dantès—I am the Count of Monte Cristo."
همس قائلاً: «دانجلار، فيرناند، فيلفور، ستنالون جميعاً العدالة. لم أعد إدموند دانتيس، أنا كونت مونتى كريستو».
18. Edmond divided his treasure and sent it to banks across Europe, making sure no one could ever steal all his wealth.
قسّم إدموند كنزه وأرسله إلى بنوك مختلفة فى أوروبا، حتى لا يستطيع أحد سرقة كل ثروته.
19. He created false family papers showing that he was from a noble background. Now, no one would doubt his title or importance.
أنشأ وثائق عائلية مزيفة تُظهر أنه من أصل نبيل، حتى لا يشك أحد فى لقبه أو مكانته.
20. He asked himself if he was doing justice or just revenge, but he always told himself his mission was right and fair.
تساءل إن كان يسعى للعدالة أم للانتقام فقط، لكنه كان يقنع نفسه دائماً أن مهمته عادلة وصحيحة.
21. When everything was ready, Edmond left the island. Monte Cristo stayed behind as his secret fortress and the symbol of his power.
وعندما أصبح كل شيء جاهزاً، غادر إدموند الجزيرة، وبقيت مونتى كريستو حصنه السرى ورمز قوته.

تطبيق الأضواء

محتواك الرقمى مجاناً مع الكتاب:
امسح الكود الشخصى بالعلاف الداخلى فى
نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة
الرقمى من تطبيق الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Chapter Text

The name Monte Cristo was now more than a legend for Edmond Dantès. It was a symbol of destiny. The treasure of the Spada family had already lifted him from misery to power, but the island itself became his refuge, his secret base, and the birthplace of his new identity.

A Return with Purpose

After saving Morrel in secret and traveling through Europe, Edmond returned to the rocky island once again. This time, he did not come as a poor smuggler or a desperate fugitive. He came as the master of untold riches, ready to transform the barren rocks into a fortress of wealth and mystery.

The smugglers who once brought him here had no idea that their "hunting trip" had changed his life forever. Now, Edmond returned alone with hired sailors.

He ordered them to unload supplies—chests of tools, food, and equipment. The men thought he was simply a rich adventurer who wanted a private place to rest. None guessed the truth: this was his kingdom.



The Secret Caverns

Deep inside Monte Cristo lay the hidden caverns where the Spada treasure had rested for centuries. Edmond entered with torches, and the golden light danced across mountains of coins, diamonds, rubies, and pearls.

No matter how many times he looked at it, Edmond could hardly believe it was real.

The treasure was not just money—it was power, freedom, and the promise of revenge.

He arranged everything carefully. Jewels were sorted, gold weighed, and documents organized. He prepared secret passages to move small amounts without suspicion.

For the world, he would always seem rich but never reveal the full size of his fortune.

Mystery was part of his weapon.

Building a Base

On the island, Edmond built hidden storerooms and secret locks. He kept barrels of food, weapons, and clothing. He even created a hidden dock where a small boat could land unseen.

Monte Cristo became more than a hiding place. It became his fortress, a place where he could retreat when needed. Whenever danger grew, he would always have this island as his refuge.

To sailors and traders who passed by, it was just another rocky island in the Mediterranean. To Edmond, it was the foundation of his destiny.

The Transformation of Edmond

Each day on Monte Cristo, Edmond felt himself changing. He was no longer the simple sailor who dreamed of marrying Mercédès. That young man had been destroyed in the dark prison of Château d'If.

Here, on the island, a new man was born: mysterious, wealthy, untouchable. He chose the title Count of Monte Cristo not only to honor the island but also to hide his past. A count had power, respect, and influence. A count could move freely in Parisian society, where sailors had no place.

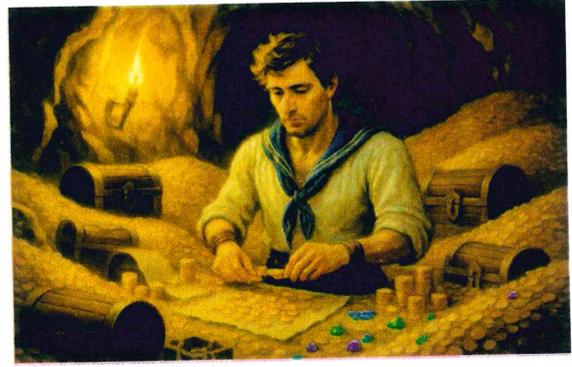
He practiced the noble manners he had studied in Italy and France. His speech grew calm and elegant. His movements became controlled, his face unreadable. He was creating a mask that no enemy could see through.

Memories of Pain

Still, even in this paradise of gold, Edmond could not escape his memories. Sometimes he would walk along the rocky cliffs and stare at the endless sea.

He remembered the nights in Château d'If, when he thought he would die forgotten. He remembered the last look of his father, the sweet smile of Mercédès, the cruel words of Villefort.

The treasure gave him freedom, but not peace. Peace would only come with justice.



Experiments with Power

Edmond used his wealth to gain more power. Disguised under different names, he lent money to merchants, funded ships, and made investments. He quickly learned how power worked in the modern world: money opened doors more easily than swords.

In Rome, he played the role of a rich banker and was welcomed in noble houses. In Paris, he appeared as a foreign aristocrat and attracted the attention of politicians. Wherever he went, people respected him, but no one truly knew him.

This game of masks delighted him. It showed him how easily society could be deceived.

Those who had once destroyed his life had built their fortunes on lies. Now Edmond would use lies of his own to bring them down.

One evening, as the sun set over the sea, Edmond stood on a high rock of Monte Cristo.

He held a handful of golden coins and let them fall slowly into the waves.

"Gold is nothing without purpose," he whispered. "I swear to use this treasure to reward the faithful and punish the wicked. Danglars, Fernand, Villefort—you shall see justice. I am no longer Edmond Dantès. I am the Count of Monte Cristo."

The waves carried away the gold, but his words echoed in his heart. The oath gave him strength.

Preparing the Future

Edmond made careful plans before leaving the island. He divided the treasure into parts and placed them in different banks across Europe. This way, no single government or thief could take everything from him.

He ordered documents proving noble ancestry, created with the help of experts he paid well. Soon, no one would doubt that the Count of Monte Cristo was of ancient and respected blood.

The Count of Monte Cristo was no longer an idea. He was now a living reality, prepared to enter the world stage.

Shadows of Doubt

Yet, even with all his success, Edmond sometimes felt a shadow in his soul. Abbé Faria's last words returned to him: "Be careful, Edmond. Do not let hatred eat your heart."

Was he becoming too focused on revenge? Could a man build happiness only on destruction?

He tried to silence these doubts. He told himself he was not seeking personal pleasure but carrying out justice where the law had failed. Still, a part of him feared he was slowly turning into something darker.

Leaving the Island

When all was ready, Edmond left Monte Cristo with a final look. The island would remain his secret, his fortress, and his name.

As his yacht sailed away, the island stood behind him like a silent guardian. The next part of his journey awaited him in Paris, where his enemies had built their lives of wealth and lies.

Edmond Dantès, once a prisoner without hope, now sailed as the mysterious Count of Monte Cristo. The game of revenge was about to begin.

Factual Questions

1. What did the name Monte Cristo symbolize for Edmond Dantès?

إلى ماذا كان يرمز اسم مونت كريستو بالنسبة لإدموند دانتيس؟

- It symbolized destiny, transformation, and power—marking his rebirth from prisoner to master of his fate.

2. Why did Edmond return to Monte Cristo after traveling through Europe?

لماذا عاد إدموند إلى مونت كريستو بعد رحلاته في أوروبا؟

- He returned to establish the island as his secret fortress and the foundation of his new identity.

3. Who helped Edmond transport supplies to Monte Cristo?

من ساعد إدموند في نقل الإمدادات إلى مونت كريستو؟

- He hired sailors who believed he was a wealthy adventurer seeking a private retreat.

4. What was hidden inside the caverns of Monte Cristo?

ما الذي كان مُخبأً داخل كهوف مونت كريستو؟

- The immense treasure of the Spada family, filled with gold, jewels, and valuable documents.

5. Why did Edmond organize the treasure carefully?

لماذا نظم إدموند الكنز بعناية؟

- To secretly control his wealth, maintain mystery, and avoid drawing suspicion from others.

6. Why did Edmond choose the title "Count"?

لماذا اختار إدموند لقب «الكونت»؟

- It offered him power, status, and respect within European high society, helping him hide his true past.

7. What habits did Edmond practice to perfect his disguise?

ما العادات التي تدرب عليها إدموند لإتقان تنكره؟

- He practiced refined speech, calm manners, and controlled gestures to appear truly noble.

8. What memories haunted Edmond despite his wealth?

ما الذكريات التي طاردت إدموند رغم ثروته؟

- Memories of prison, his father's death, Mercédès's loss, and Villefort's betrayal haunted him deeply.

9. What truth did Edmond realize about peace?

ما الحقيقة التي أدركها إدموند عن السلام؟

- That peace could not be bought with gold—it would only come through justice.

10. What did Edmond learn about society from his disguises?

ماذا تعلم إدموند عن المجتمع من خلال تنكراته؟

- He saw how easily people could be deceived by appearance, wealth, and false respectability.

11. Why did Edmond create false documents of nobility?

لماذا أنشأ إدموند وثائق نسب مزيفة؟

- To make his identity as a count believable and respected by high society.

12. What warning from Abbé Faria haunted Edmond?

ما هو التحذير الذي أطلقه الأب فاريا والذي ظل يطارد إدموند؟

- "Do not let hatred eat your heart"—a warning against becoming consumed by revenge.

13. What does Edmond do after escaping the prison that shows his new identity?

SB

ماذا يفعل إدموند بعد هروبه من السجن ليوضح هويته الجديدة؟

- After escaping, Edmond builds a secret base on the island of Monte Cristo, organizes the treasure, and begins acting like a nobleman. These actions show that he is no longer a poor sailor but a powerful man preparing to become the Count of Monte Cristo.

Critical Thinking Questions

1. How does Edmond's use of wealth show his intelligence?

كيف تُظهر طريقة استخدام إدموند للثروة ذكاهه؟

- He uses money as a tool of control, not indulgence رفاهية/تساهل, proving strategic foresight.

2. What inner conflict does Edmond face on the island?

ما الصراع الداخلي الذي واجهه إدموند في الجزيرة؟

- Between gratitude for freedom and the unhealed pain of betrayal.

3. How does Edmond's disguise reflect human duality?

كيف يعكس تنكر إدموند ازدواجية الإنسان؟

- It represents the split between the self we show the world and the one hidden within.

4. Why is secrecy as important to Edmond as wealth?

لماذا السرية مهمة لإدموند بقدر أهمية الثروة؟

- Because hidden strength creates power—visible riches create vulnerability هشاشة/ضعف.

5. What lesson did Edmond learn about power through money?

ما الدرس الذي تعلمه إدموند عن القوة من خلال المال؟

- That influence and control are more valuable than material riches themselves.

6. How does the island mirror Edmond's mind?

كيف تعكس الجزيرة عقل إدموند؟

- Both are isolated, guarded, and filled with hidden power.

7. Why did Edmond's memories remain despite the transformation?

لماذا بقيت ذكريات إدموند رغم تحوله؟

- Because emotional scars cannot be erased by wealth or identity.

8. What moral danger lies in Edmond's path?

ما الخطر الأخلاقي الكامن في طريق إدموند؟

- The risk that justice will turn into revenge, consuming his humanity.

9. What can be learned from Edmond's careful planning?

ما الدرس المستفاد من تخطيط إدموند الحذر؟

- That success depends on foresight, patience, and understanding human weakness.

10. Why is Edmond's revenge described as a "game"?

لماذا يوصف انتقام إدموند بأنه «لعبة»؟

- Because it's strategic and psychological, not driven by impulse or rage غضب.

11. How does the idea of "identity" play a central role in this chapter?

SB

كيف تلعب فكرة «الهوية» دورًا أساسيًا في هذا الفصل؟

- Identity is the heart of this chapter. Edmond transforms from a victim into a powerful new person. His new name, "Count of Monte Cristo," gives him power, respect, and freedom while hiding his painful past.

12. Do you agree with Edmond's plan to seek revenge, or should he forgive and move on? Explain.

SB

هل توافق على خطة إدموند في الانتقام، أم كان عليه أن يغفر ويمضي قدمًا؟ وضح.

- Opinions may differ, but revenge gives Edmond purpose after years of pain. However, forgiveness could bring him peace. Personally, I think he needs justice, but he should be careful not to let hatred destroy him.

13. If you could take on a completely new identity, how would you use it to change your life?

SB

إذا كان بإمكانك أن تتخذ هوية جديدة تمامًا، كيف ستستخدمها لتغيير حياتك؟

- I would use a new identity to start fresh, explore the world, and help others without being judged by my past. A new identity can be a chance for freedom and growth.

1 Factual Questions:

1. What structures did Edmond build on the island?
2. What did Monte Cristo represent to passing sailors?
3. What transformation occurred in Edmond on Monte Cristo?
4. How did Edmond use his wealth to gain power?
5. Where did Edmond test his roles as a nobleman?
6. What promise did Edmond make at sunset on Monte Cristo?
7. How did Edmond secure his wealth across Europe?
8. What was Edmond's greatest weapon besides money?
9. Why did Edmond divide the treasure into parts?
10. What oath قسم did Edmond repeat about gold?
11. What did Edmond's investments in merchants achieve?
12. What emotion did Edmond feel when viewing his treasure?
13. How did Edmond's transformation change his personality?
14. How did Edmond manipulate European society?
15. Why did Edmond hide his true identity forever?

2 Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why do you think Edmond feels more powerful on the island than anywhere else?
2. Do you think Edmond's new identity makes him truly happy? Why or why not?
3. Is Edmond's desire for revenge a sign of strength or weakness?
4. Do you think money can really give someone freedom?
5. How does isolation on the island affect Edmond's emotions and thinking?
6. What might happen if Edmond revealed his real identity too soon?
7. Do you think Edmond enjoys playing different roles, or does it tire him?
8. Is it possible for someone to completely erase their past?
9. Do you think Edmond can still be a good man while planning to take revenge?
10. Why does Edmond feel both proud and sad when looking at his treasure?
11. How might Abbé Faria's warning influence Edmond's future choices?
12. What does the "mask" of the Count protect him from?
13. Do you think revenge can ever lead to true peace?
14. If you were Edmond, would you trust anyone again? Why or why not?
15. How might Edmond's wealth change the way others treat him?
16. Do you think hiding behind a false identity is brave or cowardly?
17. Do you think Edmond can ever return to being his old self? Why?

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

appearance	مظهر خارجي	greed	جشع / طمع	powerful	قوى
betray	يخون / يغير	hidden	مخفى	punishment	عقاب
bitterness	مرارة / حقد	identity	هوية	rare	نادر
carriage	عربة فاخرة	inevitable	لا مفر منه	respect	احترام
ceremony	مناسبة / حفل رسمي	influence	نفوذ / تأثير	respectable	محترم / ذو مكانة
coldness	برود / جفاء	magnificent	فخم / رائع	revenge	انتقام
confess	يعترف	mirror	مرآة	ruin	خراب / دمار
connections	علاقات / صلات	misery	بؤس / شقاء	servitude	عبودية / خدمة
curiosity	فضول	mysterious	غامض	shadow	ظل
disguise	تنكر / تخف	mystery	غموض	sorrow	حزن
elegance	أناقة / رقى	nobleman	نبيل / رجل من طبقة النبلاء	suspicion	شك / ريبة
fortune	ثروة / حظ	oath	قسم / عهد	weakness	ضعف
generosity	سخاء / كرم	opportunity	فرصة	whispered	همس

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

access to different worlds وصول إلى عوالم مختلفة	filled it with ملاؤه بـ	stood before a mirror وقف أمام المرآة
acts of generosity أفعال من الكرم / أعمال سخاء	he made it seem so جعلته يبدو كذلك	the guilty will fall سيقع المذنبون / سيدفعون الثمن
appearances mattered المظاهر كانت مهمة	justice will be done سيحقق العدل	turned their heads لفت الأنظار / جذب الانتباه
buried in the darkness دُفن في الظلام (تعبير عن الاختفاء التام)	pushed the memory aside أبعد الذكرى جانباً	watching from the shadows يراقب من الظلال (في الخفاء)
few could discover القليل فقط استطاع أن يكتشف	sharper than any sword أحد من أي سيف (تعبير عن القوة)	whispered about همسوا بشأن / تحدثوا سرّاً عن

Chapter in Points

- 1. The world now knew Edmond Dantès by another name: the Count of Monte Cristo, a man of mystery, wealth, and great respect.**

العالم الآن عرف إدموند دانتيس باسم آخر: كونت مونتى كريستو، رجل غامض، غنى ويحترمه الناس كثيرًا.
- 2. When the Count's luxurious carriage moved through Paris, people stopped and whispered about the strange nobleman from the East.**

عندما مرت عربة الكونت الفاخرة فى شوارع باريس، توقف الناس وتهامسوا عن ذلك النبيل الغريب القادم من الشرق.
- 3. Paris cared about appearance: to succeed you needed money, an important name, and the right connections.**

باريس تهتم بالمظاهر: للنجاح تحتاج إلى مال واسم مهم وصلات مناسبة.
- 4. The Count rented a grand house on the Champs-Élysées, filled it with art, carpets, and silver, showing great wealth.**

استأجر الكونت بيتًا فخماً فى الشانزليزيه، مليئاً باللوحات والسجاد والفضة، ليظهر مدى ثرائه.
- 5. His servants wore fine uniforms; people believed his fortune, but they did not know where his money truly came from.**

خدمه يرتدون زيًا أنيقًا؛ صدق الناس ثروته، لكن لم يعرفوا مصدر ماله الحقيقي.
- 6. Edmond knew money was not enough; to win, he had to act in many roles and wear different masks.**

أدرك إدموند أن المال وحده لا يكفي؛ لى يتصرى يجب أن يلعب أدوارًا مختلفة ويرتدى أقنعة متنوعة.
- 7. Sometimes he appeared as the charming Count; sometimes he pretended to be Abbé Busoni, a friendly Italian priest.**

أحيانًا كان يظهر كالكونت الساحر؛ وأحيانًا يتظاهر بأنه الأب بوزونى، كاهن إيطالى ودود.
- 8. He also used the name Lord Wilmore, an English nobleman known for generosity, gaining trust in different circles.**

كما استخدم اسم لورد ويلمور، نبيل إنجليزى معروف بكرمه، ليكسب ثقة دوائر مختلفة.
- 9. Each disguise opened doors: the noble world, the business world, and places where his enemies never suspected him.**

كل تنكر فتح له أبوابًا: عالم النبلاء، عالم التجارة، وأماكن لا يتوقع أعداؤه وجوده فيها.
- 10. The Count learned what had happened to his betrayers and watched how they had changed their lives.**

تعرف الكونت على مصير الذين خانوه، ومشاهدة كيف غيروا حياتهم.
- 11. Danglars became a rich banker, proud among Paris's richest, enjoying wealth he had long wanted.**

دانجلار أصبح مصرفيًا ثريًا، فخورًا بين أغنياء باريس، يتمتع بالمال الذى كان يريده منذ زمن.
- 12. Fernand, who stole Mercédès, became Count de Morcerf, a respected soldier and public man.**

فيرناند، الذى سرق ميرسيدس، أصبح كونت مورسر، جنديًا محترمًا ورجلًا عامًا.
- 13. Villefort rose high in the legal world, gaining honor and influence after prosecuting Edmond years before.**

فيلفور ترقى فى عالم القضاء، واكتسب شرفًا ونفوذًا بعد محاكمته لإدموند قبل سنوات.
- 14. Caderousse, who had stayed silent at Edmond's arrest, fell into misery, becoming a greedy innkeeper and small criminal.**

كادروس، الذى بقى ساكنًا وقت اعتقال إدموند، سقط فى البؤس وأصبح صاحب فندق جشعًا ومجرمًا صغيرًا.

15. The Count saw all of them as thieves who had stolen his youth, love, and chance for a simple life.
رأى الكونت فيهم جميعًا لصوًّا سرقوا شبابه وحبه وفرصته في حياة بسيطة.
16. His arrival in society caused curiosity and talk at dinners and salons; his strange story made people want to meet him.
وصوله إلى مجتمع النخبة أثار فضولًا وحديثًا في الولائم والصالونات؛ قصته الغريبة جعلت الناس يرغبون في مقابلته.
17. Some were afraid, others admired him, but everyone wanted to know more about the mysterious Count.
البعض خافوه، وآخرون أعجبوا به، لكن الجميع أراد أن يعرف أكثر عن الكونت الغامض.
18. Mercédès, now Madame de Morcerf, heard of him and felt pain when she saw a familiar face from far away.
ميرسيدس، الآن مدام مورسر، سمعت عنه وشعرت بألم عندما رأت وجهًا مألوفًا من بعيد.
19. The Count used money as a test: he lent Danglars huge sums to see the banker grow greedy and careless.
استخدم الكونت المال كاختبار؛ أقرض دانجلار مبالغ كبيرة ليرى كيف يصبح المصرفي جشعًا ومتهورًا.
20. He gave gifts to important families to open doors, and he secretly helped loyal people like Maximilien Morrel.
منح هدايا للعائلات المهمة ليفتح لهم الأبواب، وسرًا ساعد المخلصين مثل ماكسيميليان موريل.
21. Edmond learned that money is a weapon that opens doors, reveals secrets, and shows people's true character.
تعلم إدmond أن المال سلاح يفتح الأبواب، يكشف الأسرار، ويظهر شخصية الناس الحقيقية.
22. Disguised as Abbé Busoni, he visited Caderousse's poor inn and heard the man confess his past cowardice.
متنكرًا كالأب بوزوني، زار نزل كادروس الفقير وسمع اعترافه بماضيه الجبان.
23. Caderousse's words burned Edmond's heart, but the Count saw that Caderousse would punish himself by his own choices.
كلام كادروس ألم قلب إدmond، لكن الكونت رأى أن كادروس سيعاقب نفسه بأفعاله وخياراته السيئة.
24. The more Edmond acted out his roles, the colder his heart became; he had friends, but he did not love them.
كلما مثل إدmond أدواره أكثر، أصبح قلبه أبرد؛ كان له أصدقاء لكنه لم يحبهم حقًا.
25. Yet seeing Mercédès woke old pain; for a moment he felt lost love, but he quickly pushed away any weakness.
ومع ذلك، رؤية ميرسيدس أيقظت ألمًا قديمًا؛ شعر للحظة بالحب الضائع لكنه سرعان ما أبعد أي ضعف.
26. The Count's reputation grew: generous acts amazed people, while his cold intelligence made others fear him.
سمعة الكونت انتشرت: أعماله الكريمة أدهشت الناس، وذكاءه الخالي من المشاعر جعل الآخرين يخشونه.
27. Doors opened for him; people revealed secrets and welcomed him, never guessing who he had been.
انفتحت له الأبواب؛ كشف الناس أسرارهم ورحبوا به، دون أن يخمنوا من كان في الماضي.
28. Late at night, standing before a mirror, he remembered prison walls, his father's death, and his stolen love.
في وقت متأخر من الليل، وهو يقف أمام المرأة، تذكر جدران السجن وموت والده وحبه المسروق.
29. He whispered an oath: he would not stop until justice was done; the guilty would fall, and he would see it happen.
همس بقسم: لن يتوقف حتى تتحقق العدالة؛ الأشرار سيسقطون، وهو سيشاهد ذلك بنفسه.

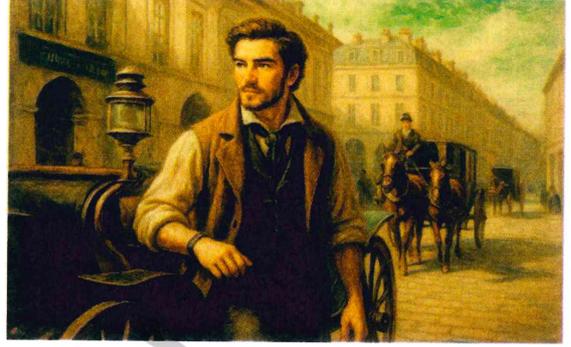
Chapter Text

The world now knew Edmond Dantès only by a different name: the Count of Monte Cristo. The poor sailor had disappeared forever, buried in the darkness of Château d'If. In his place stood a man of elegance, mystery, and unlimited wealth.

Arrival in Paris

When Edmond's luxurious carriage rolled through the streets of Paris, people turned their heads. They whispered about the foreign nobleman who had recently arrived from the East, bringing jewels, fine horses, and strange servants.

Paris was a city where appearances mattered. To survive, one needed money, connections, and an old family name. The Count had all three—at least, he made it seem so.



He rented a magnificent house in the Champs-Élysées, filled it with rare paintings, rich carpets, and shining silver. His servants wore elegant uniforms. No one doubted his fortune, but few could discover its true source. This mystery only increased his fame.

Masks and Disguises

Edmond understood that to win his secret battle, he needed more than wealth. He needed to play roles, to wear masks.

At times, he appeared as the mysterious Count, charming and untouchable. At other times, he disguised himself as an Italian priest, Abbé Busoni, to gather information. He also used the identity of Lord Wilmore, an English nobleman known for acts of generosity.

Each mask gave him access to different worlds: the aristocracy, the business community. His enemies would never suspect that the generous Englishman, and the powerful Count were the same man.

Meeting Old Names

The Count soon learned what had happened to the men who betrayed him.

- Danglars, once a jealous ship clerk, had become a wealthy banker. He now lived among Paris's richest, proud of his success.
- Fernand, who stole Mercédès from him, was now Count de Morcerf, a respected soldier and politician.
- Villefort, the prosecutor who sent him to prison, had risen high in the legal world, with influence and honor.
- Caderousse, the neighbor who remained silent during Edmond's arrest, had fallen into misery, living as a greedy innkeeper and criminal.

Each had built a new life, but Edmond saw them differently. To him, they were thieves of his youth and happiness.

First Impressions in Society

The Count's arrival in Parisian society caused a storm of curiosity. At dinner parties and salons, people spoke of his strange knowledge of the East, his endless fortune, and his mysterious character.

Some feared him; others admired him. But all wanted to know him. The Count accepted invitations with polite coldness. He never revealed too much about himself, and this silence made him even more interesting.

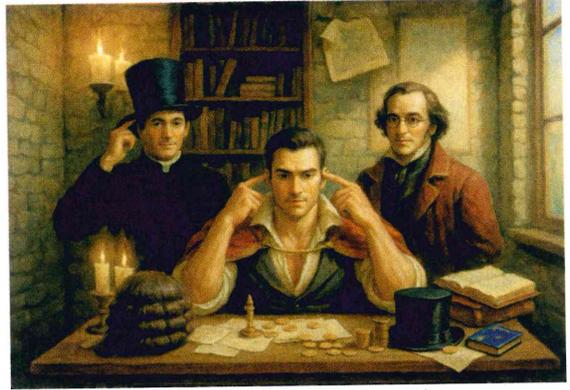
Mercédès, now Madame de Morcerf, also heard of the Count's arrival. When she first saw him from a distance, she felt a strange pain in her heart. The man's face seemed familiar, but twenty-four years of sorrow and change had hidden the sailor she once loved.

The Power of Wealth

The Count began using his money to test the weakness of Parisian society. He lent huge sums to Danglars and watched the banker become greedy and careless. He gave rich gifts to influential families, ensuring they opened their doors to him.

He also rewarded the good. He secretly helped young Maximilien Morrel, son of the man who had once been kind to him. To Maximilien, he became a silent guardian, watching from the shadows.

Edmond had learned that money was not just wealth—it was a weapon sharper than any sword.



The Visit to Caderousse

Before striking at his greatest enemies, the Count wanted to see what had become of Caderousse. Disguised as Abbé Busoni, he visited the man's inn.

Caderousse lived poorly, filled with bitterness and greed. He confessed how he had witnessed Edmond's arrest years ago and had done nothing to stop it. His words burned in Edmond's heart.

The Count realized that some men destroy themselves without help. He decided Caderousse would not need punishment from him—his own choices would bring his ruin.

A Cold Heart

The more Edmond played his roles, the more he felt himself changing inside. The warmhearted sailor who once dreamed of a simple life was gone. Now, every meeting, every word, and every smile was part of a plan.

He had friends, but he did not love them. He had admirers, but he did not trust them. His heart was no longer free—it was a prisoner of revenge.

Still, when he saw Mercédès at a social gathering, something old awoke inside him. Her eyes were softer, older, and touched with sadness. For a moment, Edmond felt the pain of his lost love. But he quickly pushed the memory aside. The Count of Monte Cristo could not afford weakness.

The Count's Reputation

Soon, the Count's name spread through every corner of Paris. He was known for his sudden acts of generosity, like saving a poor family from debt, or paying for a young artist's education. At the same time, he was feared for his cold intelligence and strange power.

No one could resist his influence. Doors opened, secrets were revealed, and his enemies welcomed him into their homes without suspecting who he really was.

A Silent Oath

Late at night, in his grand house, the Count sometimes stood before a mirror. He saw the elegant nobleman staring back at him, but deep inside he still felt the shadow of Edmond Dantès. He remembered the prison walls, his father's lonely death, and his stolen love. These memories reminded him why he wore the mask. "I will not stop," he whispered to himself. "Justice will be done. The guilty will fall. And I, the Count of Monte Cristo, will see it happen."

Factual Questions

- 1. What did Parisians believe one needed to survive in their society?**
ما الذي اعتقد الباريسيون أنه ضروري للبقاء في مجتمعهم؟
 - They believed money, influential connections, and an old family name were essential for status, safety, and respect.
- 2. Where did the Count rent his magnificent residence?**
أين استأجر الكونت مسكنه الفخم؟
 - He rented a splendid house on the Champs-Élysées, filled with rare paintings, rich carpets, and polished silver.
- 3. What professions or identities did Edmond adopt as disguises?**
ما المهن أو الهويات التي تبناها إدموند كتنكر؟
 - He alternated between the mysterious Count, Abbé Busoni, the Italian priest, and Lord Wilmore, the generous English nobleman.
- 4. Why did Edmond use multiple masks?**
لماذا استخدم إدموند عدة أقنعة؟
 - Each mask granted entry to different worlds—aristocracy, business, and clergy رجال الدين—allowing him to gather precise information.
- 5. What new title did Fernand acquire?**
ما اللقب الجديد الذي حصل عليه فرناند؟
 - He became Count de Morcerf, gaining respect as a soldier and influential politician in Paris.
- 6. What position did Villefort hold in society?**
ما المنصب الذي شغله فيلفور في المجتمع؟
 - Villefort rose high within the legal world, achieving influence, honor, and public prestige as a magistrate.
- 7. What became of Caderousse?**
ماذا حدث لكادروس؟
 - He descended into poverty and bitterness, operating a shabby inn and drifting toward criminality and greed.
- 8. How did Parisian society react to the Count at gatherings?**
كيف تفاعل مجتمع باريس مع الكونت في المناسبات؟
 - They alternated between admiration and fear; his knowledge, fortune, and silence intensified fascination and intrigue إثارة وتشويق.
- 9. How did Mercédès react upon first seeing the Count from afar?**
عن بعد؟
كيف تفاعلت ميرسيدس عند رؤيتها الأولى للكونت من بعيد؟
 - She felt a piercing, familiar pain, sensing echoes of the sailor she loved beneath years of sorrow.
- 10. How did the Count test Parisian weaknesses using wealth?**
كيف اختبر الكونت نقاط ضعف الباريسيين باستخدام الثروة؟
 - He extended large loans, observed greed and carelessness, and gifted influential families to secure privileged access.
- 11. What did Caderousse confess regarding Edmond's arrest?**
بماذا اعترف كادروس بخصوص اعتقال إدموند؟
 - He admitted witnessing the arrest and doing nothing, letting cowardice and envy dictate his inaction تقاعس.

Critical Thinking Questions

- 1. How does pretending to be someone else affect Edmond's identity?**
كيف يؤثر تظاهر إدموند بأنه آخر على هويته؟
 - Living many roles confuses him; he begins to lose touch with his true emotions and original personality.
- 2. Is creating a new identity brave or cowardly?**
هل إنشاء هوية جديدة عمل شجاع أم جبان؟
 - It is brave because he risks everything to rebuild his life and seek justice in a clever way.
- 3. Why does Edmond hide behind wealth and titles?**
لماذا يختبئ إدموند خلف الثروة والألقاب؟
 - Wealth and titles give him safety and control; people respect power more than truth in his world.

4. **How do masks symbolize human nature in this story?** كيف ترمز الأقنعة إلى الطبيعة البشرية في القصة؟
 • Masks show how people hide their pain or lie to survive and gain respect in society.
5. **Why does mystery make the Count more powerful than honesty would?** لماذا تجعل السرية (أو الغموض) الكونت أكثر قوة مما لو كان صريحاً؟
 • Mystery gives him control; people fear what they cannot understand and admire what they cannot reach.
6. **How does wealth change Edmond's sense of morality?** كيف غيرت الثروة إحساس إدموند بالأخلاق؟
 • Wealth turns justice into a game of influence; he starts to use money to shape destiny.
7. **What is the danger of living under false identities?** ما الخطر في العيش بهويات مزيفة؟
 • The longer he hides, the harder it becomes to remember who he truly is inside.
8. **How does power isolate the Count from others?** كيف تعزل القوة الكونت عن الآخرين؟
 • Power makes others fear him instead of loving him, leaving him rich but emotionally alone.
9. **Why is the Count calm instead of openly angry?** لماذا كان الكونت هادئاً بدلاً من أن يظهر غضبه؟
 • Calmness is part of his strategy; anger would make him reckless and ruin his careful plans.
10. **How does generosity become a weapon for the Count?** كيف يصبح الكرم سلاحاً بيد الكونت؟
 • He uses generosity to gain trust and power; kindness becomes another mask for control.
11. **What does Caderousse's fate teach Edmond about greed?** ماذا تعلم إدموند من مصير كادروس عن الجشع؟
 • It proves that greed destroys a man without outside help; evil punishes itself naturally.
12. **Why does the Count secretly help Morrel's son?** لماذا يساعد الكونت ابن موريل سراً؟
 • He rewards loyalty quietly, keeping his goodness hidden while still following his plan of justice.
13. **What lesson does the Count learn about Parisian society?** ما الدرس الذي يتعلمه الكونت عن المجتمع الباريسي؟
 • He learns that image and wealth define respect; honesty matters less than appearance.
14. **Why does Edmond value money more than weapons?** لماذا يقدر إدموند المال أكثر من السلاح؟
 • Money wins battles silently; it controls minds and systems without shedding blood.
15. **Why does Edmond return to his city in disguise instead of showing himself openly?** لماذا عاد إدموند إلى مدينته متخفياً بدلاً من أن يظهر نفسه علناً؟ SB
 • He needs information without alerting enemies, and a disguise lets him observe true faces. Power grows in silence.
16. **What does Edmond's careful planning suggest about his personality after prison?** ماذا يكشف تخطيط إدموند الدقيق عن شخصيته بعد السجن؟ SB
 • It shows disciplined patience, strategic thinking, and emotional control—pain hardened him into a calculating architect.
17. **How do loyalty and betrayal shape Edmond's feelings toward his old friends and enemies?** كيف شكّل الوفاء والخيانة مشاعر إدموند تجاه أصدقائه القدامى وأعدائه؟ SB
 • Loyalty rekindles gratitude and protection; betrayal fuels cold justice. He rewards faithfulness and designs fates for traitors.
18. **Do you think Edmond's revenge is justified after so many years? Why or why not?** هل تعتقد أن انتقام إدموند مبرر بعد كل تلك السنوات؟ لماذا؟ أو: لماذا لا؟ SB
 • Partly: the law failed him, so justice feels necessary. Yet revenge risks consuming his humanity and repeating the harm.
19. **If someone betrayed you deeply, would you choose forgiveness or revenge? Explain your reasoning.** إذا خانك شخص بشدة، هل ستختار الغفران أم الانتقام؟ وضح سببك. SB
 • I'd seek accountable justice, not revenge—set boundaries, pursue truth, and heal. Forgiveness protects me; consequences protect others.

1 Factual Questions:

1. What new name did the world use for Edmond Dantès?
2. What had Danglars become since Edmond's imprisonment?
3. Whom did the Count secretly protect out of gratitude?
4. What lesson did Edmond learn about money's power?
5. In what disguise did the Count visit Caderousse?
6. Why did the Count decide not to punish Caderousse directly?
7. How did Edmond's heart change as he played roles?
8. What private oath did the Count repeat at night?
9. What did the Count observe in Danglars after lending money?
10. Why did enemies welcome the Count into their homes?

2 Critical Thinking Questions:

1. What does seeing Mercédès again awaken in Edmond?
2. Can love and revenge exist together in the same heart?
3. Why is the Count respected and feared at once?
4. How does revenge affect Edmond's humanity?
5. What does the mirror scene at the end symbolize?
6. Why does Edmond rely more on intellect than emotion now?
7. Is deception always wrong if used for justice?
8. Why does the Count enjoy controlling information?
9. What emotional price does power demand from him?
10. How does Caderousse's guilt mirror Edmond's struggle?
11. What might happen if Edmond revealed his true identity too soon?
12. Why do others believe the Count's lies so easily?
13. Why does he find pleasure in watching his enemies succeed before falling?
14. How does the Count's calmness hide danger?
15. Why does Edmond struggle with peace despite success?
16. What does Mercédès represent to Edmond now?
17. Is Edmond truly free, or still a prisoner of revenge?
18. What might Abbé Faria say if he saw Edmond now?
19. Why does the Count refuse emotional weakness?
20. How does playing many roles affect his mental state?
21. Why is revenge addictive for Edmond?
22. How does the Count test the morality of others?
23. What lesson about justice can readers learn from Edmond?
24. What does the title "A New Identity" truly mean for Edmond?
25. Why does the Count see himself as destiny's instrument?

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

abandoned	مهجور/متروك	devil	شيطان	proof	دليل
accomplice	شريك في الجريمة	dishonored	فاقد للشرف	ray of light	شعاع من الضوء
angel	ملاك	emptiness	فراغ	ruin	خراب/دمار
arrest	اعتقال	finance	تمويل/مالية	rumors	شائعات
awe	رهبة	fortune	ثروة	satisfaction	رضا
betrayal	خيانة	gather	يجمع	selfishness	أنانية
branded	وُسم/نُعت	goodness	الخير	shamed	مخزى
collapse	ينهار	greedy	جشع	strike	يضرب/يهاجم
commander	قائد	honesty	أمانة/صدق	traitor	خائن
corruption	فساد	investigation	تحقيق	treason	خيانة
courage	شجاعة	manipulate	يتلاعب بـ	trial	محاكمة
darkest secrets	أعمق الأسرار	mastermind	العقل المدبر	witnesses	شهود

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

a ray of light	شعاع من الضوء	darkest secrets	أعمق الأسرار	lay dying	يحتضر/على فراش الموت
attack his fortune	يهاجم ثروته	destroy family honor	يدمر شرف العائلة	made her appear dead	جعلها تبدو ميتة
beg for mercy	يتوسل للرحمة	drowning in debts	يغرق في الديون	public prosecutor	المدعى العام
blinded by hatred	أعماه الكره	felt awe and fear	شعروا بالرهبة والخوف	spared his son	عفا عن ابنه
branded a traitor	وُصف بالخائن	felt emptiness	شعر بالفراغ	stepped in	تدخل
buzzed with rumors	ضجّت بالشائعات	felt his life fall apart	شعر أن حياته تنهار	suffered deeply	عانى بعمق
chose selfishness over justice	اختار الأنانية على حساب العدالة	hand of justice	يد العدالة	the time had come	حان الوقت
chosen to punish	اختار أن يعاقب	justice had been served	تحققت العدالة	weight of revenge	ثقل الانتقام

Chapter in Points

1. Edmond's first target was Caderousse, a greedy neighbor who stayed silent during Edmond's arrest.
كان الهدف الأول لإدموند هو كادروس، وهو جار جشع ظل صامتًا أثناء اعتقال إدموند.
2. Caderousse tried to steal a diamond, killed a man, and was later stabbed by his accomplice.
حاول كادروس سرقة ماسة، وقتل رجلاً، ثم طعنه شريكه في وقت لاحق.
3. With his final breath, Caderousse realized the truth and whispered that the Count was Edmond Dantès.
في أنفاسه الأخيرة، أدرك كادروس الحقيقة وهمس بأن الكونت هو إدموند دانتيس.
4. Danglars became a rich and proud banker, but the Count destroyed his fortune using clever financial tricks.
أصبح دانجلار مصرفيًا غنيًا ومتكبرًا، لكن الكونت دمر ثروته بمكائيد مالية ذكية.
5. Soon, the greedy banker fell into terrible debt and suffered greatly from his own selfish mistakes.
سقط المصرفي الجشع في ديون رهيبية وعانى كثيرًا بسبب أخطائه الأنانية.
6. Villefort sent Edmond to prison without a trial, and now the Count has destroyed his family's honor and peace.
أرسل فيلفور إدموند إلى السجن دون محاكمة، والآن دمر الكونت شرف عائلته وسلامها.
7. Villefort's darkest secrets were exposed, and his proud life collapsed until his mind completely broke.
كُشفت أعمق أسرار فيلفور، وانهارت حياته المتكبرة حتى تحطم عقله تمامًا.
8. Fernand betrayed his commander, Ali Pasha, in war, and the Count exposed this terrible crime in front of the government.
خان فيرناند قائده في الحرب، وكشف الكونت هذه الجريمة أمام الحكومة.
9. Shamed by society and abandoned by his family, Fernand lost everything and shot himself in despair.
مهانًا من المجتمع ومتروكًا من عائلته، خسر فيرناند كل شيء وأطلق النار على نفسه يائسًا.
10. Each victory gave the Count strange satisfaction, but his heart felt heavier with growing emptiness.
أعطى كل انتصار الكونت شعورًا غريبًا بالرضا، لكن قلبه أصبح أثقل بالفراغ.
11. He protected Valentine from poisoning, secretly saving her life and reuniting her with Maximilien Morrel.
حما فالنتين من التسميم، وأنقذ حياتها سرًا وجمعها مجددًا مع ماكسيميليان موريل.
12. People in Paris whispered rumors about the Count, unsure if he was a noble angel or a dark devil.
همس الناس في باريس بشائعات عن الكونت، غير متأكدين هل هو ملاك نبيل أم شيطان مظلم.
13. Only Edmond knew the truth—that he was a broken man seeking balance between justice and forgiveness.
كان إدموند وحده يعلم الحقيقة - أنه رجل مكسور يبحث عن التوازن بين العدالة والمغفرة.

Chapter Text

Justice and Revenge

For years, Edmond Dantès had dreamed of this moment. His wealth, his masks, and his patience had brought him into the homes of those who had betrayed him. Now the time had come. The Count of Monte Cristo would begin to strike.

The First Blow: Caderousse

The first test was Caderousse, the greedy neighbor who had kept silent during Edmond's arrest. Though not the mastermind, he had chosen selfishness over justice.

One stormy night, Caderousse attempted to steal a diamond from a jeweler. In the struggle, he killed a man. Later, while trying to escape, he was stabbed by an accomplice. The Count, disguised once again as Abbé Busoni, visited him as he lay dying.

"Your greed destroyed you, Caderousse," he said coldly. Caderousse whispered with his final breath, "You... you are Edmond Dantès!" Then he died.

The Count left silently. *"Justice had been served."*



Danglars the Banker

Next came Danglars, the jealous ship clerk who had accused Edmond of treason. Now a rich banker, Danglars cared only for money. The Count began to attack not his body, but his fortune. Using his knowledge of finance, he tricked him into lending enormous sums of money and then manipulated the market so that Danglars lost millions.

At dinner parties, the Count praised Danglars's "wisdom," while secretly guiding him toward ruin. Soon, the proud banker found himself drowning in debts.

Villefort the Prosecutor

The cruelest betrayal had come from Villefort, the public prosecutor who had sent Edmond to prison without trial. Villefort had destroyed Edmond's life to protect his own career.

Now the Count prepared a punishment worse than death; he would destroy Villefort's family honor.

Through careful investigation, the Count uncovered Villefort's darkest secrets. Step by step, he revealed his hidden crimes to society. Newspapers whispered about corruption and dishonor in Villefort's family. Slowly, the prosecutor's reputation collapsed.

In his proud home, Villefort felt his life fall apart. His daughter Valentine was poisoned by his second wife. His wife was caught in lies. Villefort's mind broke. He wandered his house like a madman, unable to face the justice he had once denied Edmond.



Fernand the Traitor

The most painful revenge was reserved for Fernand, once Edmond's best friend and later the thief of Mercédès. He had married her, taken Edmond's happiness, and risen to power as Count de Morcerf.

The Count attacked him by revealing his secret past. During the war, Fernand had betrayed his commander, Ali Pasha, and sold him to the enemy.

The Count gathered witnesses, letters, and proof. At a government trial, these crimes were read aloud. Paris gasped in horror. Fernand, once a hero, was now branded a traitor.

Mercédès stood pale in the courtroom. Their son Albert challenged the Count to a duel, but Mercédès went to beg for mercy.

"Edmond, if you ever loved me, spare my son." The Count spared Albert, but Fernand's life was over. Shamed, abandoned, and dishonored, Fernand shot himself.

The Weight of Revenge

Each act of justice gave Edmond a strange satisfaction. Yet with each victory, he felt a new emptiness.

Sometimes at night, he asked himself; "Am I the hand of justice, or only another sinner blinded by hatred?"

A Ray of Light

In the middle of this darkness, one person reminded him of goodness: Maximilien Morrel, the son of the shipowner who had once tried to save Edmond from prison. The Count watched him in secret and saw his honesty, courage, and love for Valentine, Villefort's daughter. When Valentine was poisoned, the Count stepped in. He secretly gave her medicine that made her appear dead but kept her alive. He placed her in safety until Maximilien could be reunited with her. For the first time, Edmond used his power not for revenge but for protection.

The World Whispers

Paris buzzed with rumors. Some said the Count of Monte Cristo was an angel, others said he was a devil. Wherever he appeared, people felt awe and fear.

But only Edmond knew the truth: he was a man who had suffered deeply and who had chosen to punish those who had stolen his life.

Factual Questions

1. In your opinion, how was Edmond's feeling while waiting for his turn to take revenge all those years?

في رأيك، كيف كان شعور إدmond أثناء انتظاره ليأخذ دوره في الانتقام طيلة هذه السنين؟

- I think he had great patience to stay focused and plan for the revenge.

2. What did the Count say to Caderousse before he died?

ماذا قال الكونت لكادروس قبل موته؟

- He told him coldly that his greed had destroyed him.

3. What type of punishment did Danglars receive?

ما نوع العقاب الذي ناله دانجلار؟

- The Count destroyed his fortune through financial manipulation, causing him to lose everything.

4. How did the Count treat Danglars in public?

كيف تعامل الكونت مع دانجلار أمام الناس؟

- He praised Danglars's "wisdom" in public while secretly planning to ruin him.

5. What method did the Count use against Villefort?

ما الطريقة التي استخدمها الكونت ضد فيلفور؟

- He exposed Villefort's crimes and family scandals to destroy his honor.

6. What happened to Villefort at the end?

ماذا حدث لفيلفور في النهاية؟

- He lost his sanity صوابه / رشده and wandered through his house in madness and guilt.

7. What title did Fernand hold in Paris?

ما اللقب الذي حمله فرناند في باريس؟

- He was known as Count de Morcerf, a respected soldier and politician.

8. What did Mercédès do when her son challenged the Count?

ماذا فعلت ميرسيدس عندما تحدى ابنها الكونت؟

- She begged the Count to spare her son's life.

9. **What was Fernand's fate after his disgrace?** ما مصير فرناند بعد الفضيحة؟
 • He killed himself in shame and despair.
10. **What did the Count do to save Valentine's life?** ماذا فعل الكونت لإنقاذ حياة فالنتين؟
 • He gave her a medicine that made her appear dead but kept her alive.

Critical Thinking Questions

1. **What lesson is shown through Caderousse's death?** ما الدرس الذي يظهر من موت كادروس؟
 • His downfall teaches that moral failure breeds self-punishment; wrongdoing collapses from its own weight.
2. **How does destroying wealth reveal society's values?** كيف يُظهر تدمير الثروة قيم المجتمع؟
 • It proves people honor money over virtue—once gold fades, respect disappears.
3. **Why did Edmond attack Villefort's reputation instead of his body?** لماذا هاجم إدموند سمعة فيلفوربدلاً من جسده؟
 • Because pride and status defined him, disgrace was a harsher, poetic justice.
4. **Why do you think Fernand's betrayal was hardest to forgive?** لماذا في رأيك كانت خيانة فرناند الأصعب غفراناً؟
 • Because friendship turned to treachery, stealing both love and identity.
5. **What danger lies in believing oneself to be "justice"?** ما الخطر في أن يعتقد المرء أنه «العدالة»؟
 • It blinds conscience, turning righteousness into arrogance.
6. **Why was wealth a better weapon than violence?** لماذا كانت الثروة سلاحاً أفضل من العنف؟
 • Money conquers quietly and leaves no trace of crime.
7. **How does Villefort's family tragedy mirror Edmond's?** كيف تعكس مأساة عائلة فيلفور مأساة إدموند؟
 • Both lose love to ambition and deceit—justice balances pain.
8. **Why does helping Valentine restore moral balance?** لماذا أعادت مساعدة فالنتين التوازن الأخلاقي؟
 • It proves power can heal as well as harm.
9. **Why do you think Edmond called revenge "justice"?** لماذا في رأيك سمى إدموند الانتقام «عدالة»؟
 • To justify pain as a moral duty rather than personal anger.
10. **How does Edmond's mirror scene deepen his conflict?** كيف يُعمق مشهد المرأة صراع إدموند الداخلي؟
 • Reflection reveals two selves—victim and avenger—fighting for dominance.
11. **How does Fernand's punishment reflect his past betrayal?** كيف يعكس عقاب فرناند خيانتة في الماضي؟
 • He betrayed others to gain power, and he was finally betrayed by his own secrets being revealed, losing everything.
12. **What does Edmond's decision to save Valentine show about his character's change?** ماذا يبين قرار إدموند لإنقاذ فالنتين عن التغيير في شخصيته؟
 • It shows he began to value mercy and goodness again instead of only revenge.
13. **How did revenge affect Edmond's happiness in the end?** كيف أثر الانتقام في سعادة إدموند في النهاية؟
 • It gave him temporary satisfaction but left him feeling empty and lost.
14. **What message does the story give about revenge and justice?** ما الرسالة التي تعطيها القصة عن الانتقام والعدالة؟
 • That revenge may bring pain to others, but true peace comes from forgiveness and doing what is right.
15. **If you suddenly gained great wealth and influence, what would be the first change you would make in your society** إذا حصلت فجأة على ثروة ونفوذ عظيمين، ما أول تغيير ستقوم به في مجتمعك؟
 • I would invest in education and fairness, giving opportunities to the poor so justice and dignity become real for everyone.

1 Factual Questions:

1. What crime did Caderousse commit before his death?
2. What was Danglars's main weakness?
3. What tragedy struck Villefort's family?
4. How did Fernand betray Ali Pasha?
5. Who exposed Fernand's betrayal to the public?
6. Who reminded the Count of goodness and virtue?
7. How did Paris view the Count of Monte Cristo?
8. Why did the Count help Valentine instead of punishing her family?
9. How did the Count's actions affect Parisian society?
10. What happened to Villefort's wife?

2 Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why do you think Edmond spared Danglars's life?
2. What does Villefort's madness symbolize?
3. Why does Edmond feel he must take revenge on his enemies?
4. What makes Edmond believe his actions are fair?
5. How does Edmond's past suffering shape his choices?
6. Why does Edmond start his revenge with Caderousse?
7. What lesson can be learned from Caderousse's death?
8. Why does Edmond punish Danglars with money?
9. How does Villefort's downfall reflect his own past actions?
10. Why does Fernand lose everything at the end?
11. Why does Edmond decide to save Albert's life?
12. How does helping Valentine change Edmond's feelings?
13. What do Edmond's disguises show about his character?
14. Why does Edmond feel empty after taking revenge?
15. Why does Edmond act in secret, not openly?
16. What moral lesson does the Count learn through his actions?

Chapter (11)

The Fall of the Guilty

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
cruelty	قسوة	guilt	ذنب/إحساس بالذنب
despair	يأس	innocent	بريء
destruction	دمار/هلاك	loyalty	وفاء
disgust	اشمئزاز	peace	سلام
flight	فرار/هروب	plot	يتآمر/يخطط ضد
forgiveness	غفران	possess	يمتلك
ghosts	أشباح	pride	كبرياء
grief	حزن	reveal	يكشف

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions		التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر	
danger passed	الخطر زال	found his worst punishment waiting	وجد أسوأ عقاب ينتظره
reached the bottom of his ruin	وصل إلى قاع انهياره	returned one last time	عاد للمرة الأخيرة
faced the weight of their sins	واجهوا ثقل خطاياهم	found peace	وجد السلام
fell into the hands of	وقع في أيدي	madness overcame him	غلب عليه الجنون
spare me	اعفُ عني/اتركني	overcome with joy	غمره الفرح
fell to his knees	ركع على ركبتيه	quiet poverty	فقر هادئ/حياة بسيطة
spit his name in disgust	بصقوا اسمه باشمئزاز	swept through	اجتاحت
forgiveness broke through the walls of anger	الغفران حطم جدران الغضب		

Chapter in Points

1. A powerful storm of justice spread through Paris, as Edmond Dantès' enemies finally faced the weight of their sins.
انتشرت عاصفة قوية من العدالة في باريس، بينما واجه أعداء إدموند دانتيس ثقل خطاياهم.
2. Danglars, ruined by greed, tried to escape with his last gold but was captured by the Count's allies in Italy.
دانجلار، الذي دمره الجشع، حاول الهرب بذهبه الأخير لكنه أُلقي في أيدي حلفاء الكونت في إيطاليا.
3. Stripped of everything and starved for days, Danglars begged for mercy when the Count finally appeared before him.
بعد تجريده من كل شيء وتجويعه لأيام، توسل دانجلار الرحمة عندما ظهر الكونت أمامه.
4. The Count revealed he was Edmond Dantès, promising not death, but a life of shame, emptiness, and loneliness.
كشف الكونت أنه إدموند دانتيس، ولم يعده بالموت بل بحياة مليئة بالخزي والفراغ والوحدة.
5. Villefort, once a proud prosecutor, watched his darkest secrets become public, destroying his name and career forever.
فيلفور، المدعى العام المتكبر، شاهد أسراره المظلمة تُكشف، فدُمّر اسمه ومهنته إلى الأبد.

6. Returning home, Villefort found his wife and son poisoned, leaving him broken and trapped in endless guilt.
عند عودته إلى البيت، وجد زوجته وابنه مسمومين، مما تركه محطمًا ومحاصرًا بالذنب.
7. Driven mad by shame, Villefort wandered his ruined home, speaking to ghosts and losing his sanity completely.
بعدما أصيب بالجنون بسبب العار، تجول فيلوفور في منزله المدمر متحدًا إلى أشباح وفاقداً عقله تمامًا.
8. Mercédès lost her husband and nearly her son, and in the Count's face, she recognized her long-lost love.
فقدت ميرسيدس زوجها وكادت تفقد ابنها، ورأت في وجه الكونت حبه القديم المفقود.
9. She warned Edmond that justice without mercy becomes another kind of cruelty that destroys the heart.
حذرت ميرسيدس إدموند من أن العدالة دون رحمة تصبح نوعًا آخر من القسوة التي تدمر القلب.
10. Maximilien and Valentine represented loyalty, innocence, and hope, giving Edmond a glimpse of a different justice.
مثل ماكسيميليان وفالنتين الوفاء والبراءة والأمل، وقدموا لإدموند لمحة عن عدالة مختلفة.
11. Maximilien was prepared to die from grief until Edmond revealed Valentine was alive and safe from danger.
استعد ماكسيميليان للموت من الحزن، حتى كشف له إدموند أن فالنتين على قيد الحياة وآمنة.
12. Their reunion filled Maximilien with overwhelming joy, bringing Edmond his first warm smile in many years.
ملأ لقاءهما قلب ماكسيميليان بفرح هائل، ومنح إدموند أول ابتسامة دافئة منذ سنوات.
13. Before leaving Paris, Edmond visited Mercédès, offering her the fortune left behind by Fernand.
قبل مغادرة باريس، زار إدموند ميرسيدس وعرض عليها الثروة التي تركها فيرناند.
14. Mercédès refused the money, wishing Edmond peace instead, and breaking the last wall of anger in his heart.
رفضت ميرسيدس المال وتمنت لإدموند السلام، محطمة آخر جدار من الغضب في قلبه.

Chapter Text

The storm that Edmond Dantès had carefully prepared for years now swept through Paris. Each of his enemies faced the weight of their own sins.

Danglars: Prisoner of Greed

Danglars, the banker who had once plotted Edmond's destruction, had finally reached the bottom of his ruin. His greed, encouraged by the Count's tricks, left him surrounded by debts. In despair, Danglars tried to escape the city with the little gold he still possessed. But his flight ended in Italy, where he fell into the hands of the Count's allies.

They robbed him of everything. For days he was kept prisoner, starved until his pride broke. When at last the Count himself appeared, Danglars fell to his knees.

"Who are you?" he cried. "I am Edmond Dantès—the man you sent to die in prison."

Danglars wept. "Spare me, at least my life!"

"I will not kill you," Edmond replied. "Your punishment is to live, empty, dishonored, and alone."



Villefort: Madness and Despair

If Danglars was ruined by greed, Villefort was destroyed by ambition. The Count had revealed every secret of Villefort's past. The crimes of his second wife, the poisoning in his house—all of it had become public. The once-proud prosecutor stood in court, pale and broken. The society he once ruled now spit his name in disgust.

When Villefort returned home, he found his worst punishment waiting. His wife had poisoned herself and their young son. Only Valentine, whom the Count had secretly saved, remained alive.

Madness overcame him. He wandered his ruined house, speaking to ghosts. His brilliant mind collapsed under the weight of guilt.



The Ghost of the Past: Mercédès

Mercédès had lost her husband to shame and death. She had seen her son Albert nearly ruined, and in the mysterious Count she had finally recognized her lost fiance.

One evening, she visited him in secret.

"Edmond," she whispered, "have you found peace in your revenge?"

The Count's face hardened. "Peace? No. I have seen justice done."

"Justice without mercy is only another kind of cruelty," she said. "Do not let hatred destroy what is left of your heart."

Maximilien and Valentine: A Different Justice

While his enemies fell, Edmond found hope in the young lovers Maximilien Morrel and Valentine Villefort.

Maximilien, son of the man who had once tried to save Edmond, represented loyalty and honor. Valentine, innocent victim of her stepmother's poison, represented purity.

In grief, Maximilien prepared to kill himself. On the appointed day, Edmond revealed the truth: Valentine lived. He had hidden her until the danger passed.

When Maximilien saw her alive, he fell to his knees, overcome with joy. For the first time, Edmond smiled—not the cold smile of revenge, but the warm smile of hope.

The Last Visit

Before leaving Paris, Edmond returned one last time to Mercédès. She lived now in quiet poverty, her son Albert beside her.

"I cannot give you back the years we lost," he said softly, "but I can give you the fortune Fernand left behind."

Mercédès shook her head. "I need no fortune. I only wish you peace, Edmond."

Her forgiveness broke through the walls of anger around his heart.

Factual Questions

1. What caused the final downfall of Edmond's enemies?

ما الذي تسبب في السقوط الأخير لأعداء إدموند؟

- The revenge Edmond had planned for years exposed their sins and destroyed them through their own greed and guilt.

2. What was Danglars's main weakness?

ماذا كانت نقطة ضعف دانجلار الأساسية؟

- Greed was his weakness; his endless desire for wealth led him into ruin.

3. How did the Count trap Danglars financially?

كيف وقع الكونت دانجلار في فخه المالى؟

- He manipulated markets and debts until Danglars lost everything and tried to flee.

4. What happened to Danglars after his capture?

ماذا حدث لدانجلار بعد القبض عليه؟

- He was imprisoned, starved, and robbed until his pride was broken.

5. What destroyed Villefort in the end?

ما الذى دمر فيلفور في النهاية؟

- His ambition and the exposure of his family's crimes destroyed his mind and reputation.

6. What crimes became public in Villefort's case?

ما الجرائم التى أصبحت معروفة فى قضية فيلفور؟

- His wife's poisonings and his own hidden corruption were revealed to all.

7. How did Villefort react to his family's deaths?

كيف تفاعل فيلفور مع موت عائلته؟

- He went mad, wandering his home talking to ghosts.

8. What emotion replaced Villefort's pride?

ما الشعور الذى حل محل كبرياء فيلفور؟

- Deep guilt and despair consumed him completely.

9. What question did Mercédès ask Edmond during her visit? How did Edmond respond to her?

ما السؤال الذى طرحته ميرسيدس على إدموند أثناء زيارتها؟ كيف أجاب إدموند عليها؟

- She asked if he had found peace in his revenge. He said he had not found peace, only justice.

10. Why did Maximilien plan to kill himself?

لماذا خطط ماكسيميليان للانتحار؟

- He believed Valentine was dead and could not live without her.

11. How did the Count save Valentine's life?

كيف أنقذ الكونت حياة فالنتين؟

- He gave her medicine that made her appear dead until it was safe.

Critical Thinking Questions

1. Why does Edmond choose to punish his enemies instead of forgiving them?

لماذا يختار إدموند معاقبة أعدائه بدلاً من مسامحتهم؟

- Edmond believes justice demands punishment, not mercy, because he suffered for years without help or fairness.

2. Why does Edmond decide to let Danglars live instead of killing him?

لماذا قرر إدموند أن يترك دانجلار حيًا بدلاً من قتله؟

- Living in shame and loneliness is a worse punishment than death, forcing Danglars to face his guilt forever.

3. What lesson does Danglars's downfall teach about greed?

ما الدرس الذي يعلمه سقوط دانجلار عن الجشع؟

- Greed blinds people to danger and destroys everything they value, including dignity and peace.

4. Why is Villefort's ambition dangerous to himself and others?

لماذا يُعد طموح فيلفور خطرًا عليه وعلى الآخرين؟

- His ambition pushes him to commit injustice, harming both his family and his conscience.

5. How does Villefort's madness show the effect of guilt?

كيف يُظهر جنون فيلفور تأثير الشعور بالذنب؟

- His guilt grows so strong that it destroys his reason, showing guilt can be the harshest punishment.

6. What does Mercédès mean when she says, "Justice without mercy is cruelty"?

ماذا تعنى ميرسيدس بقولها: «العدالة بلا رحمة هي نوع آخر من القسوة»؟

- She means the fire of anger could hurt Edmond and affect his own goodness.

7. How does Mercédès's forgiveness affect Edmond's heart?

كيف يؤثر غفران ميرسيدس على قلب إدموند؟

- Her forgiveness melts his anger and teaches him that mercy can heal what revenge cannot.

8. Why does Edmond hide the truth about Valentine's death from Maximilien?

لماذا أخفى إدموند حقيقة موت فالنتين عن ماكسيميليان؟

- He wanted to test Maximilien's love and faith before revealing the miracle.

9. What lesson does Edmond learn from helping the young lovers?

ما الدرس الذي يتعلمه إدموند من مساعدة العاشقين الصغار؟

- He learns that kindness brings more satisfaction than revenge ever could.

10. Why does Edmond prefer to act through disguise and secrets rather than reveal himself directly? [SB]

لماذا يفضل إدموند أن يتصرف من خلال التنكر والأسرار بدلًا من كشف نفسه مباشرة؟

- He uses disguise to gather information, control every situation, and protect his plans for revenge without being recognized.

11. How do you think Edmond shows that he is not completely evil, despite his revenge?

في رأيك كيف يظهر إدموند أنه ليس شريرًا تمامًا بالرغم من انتقامه؟

- He saves the innocent Valentine, helps the loyal Maximilien, and offers money to his former love, Mercédès.

12. There's a difference between how Edmond treats his enemies and how he treats his friends.

What does this show about his character?

هناك فرق في الطريقة التي يعامل بها إدموند أعداءه وأصدقائه. ماذا يوضح ذلك عن شخصيته؟

- He uses tricks and revenge to destroy his enemies, but he uses protection and help to save his friends. This shows his wisdom and maturity.

13. Why do you think Villefort goes mad, while Danglars only becomes broken and poor?

في رأيك، لماذا فقد فيلفور صوابه بينما أصبح دانجلار منكسرًا وفقيرًا فقط؟

- Villefort's guilt is directly tied to the deaths in his family, which is a much deeper emotional pain than Danglars' financial loss.

14. What do you think Edmond's main goal is: revenge, justice, or something else?

في رأيك ما هو هدف إدموند الرئيسي: الانتقام أم العدالة أم شيء آخر؟

- He starts wanting revenge, but the story suggests his real goal was to find peace, which he only starts to feel after showing mercy.

1 Factual Questions:

1. Where was Danglars captured after fleeing Paris?
2. What did Danglars beg the Count for?
3. What was Danglars's punishment?
4. What happened to Villefort's wife and son?
5. Who was the only member of Villefort's family saved?
6. How did Mercédès recognize Edmond at last?
7. Who represented hope and innocence for Edmond?
8. How did Maximilien react when he saw Valentine alive?
9. How was Mercédès living at that time?
10. What offer did Edmond make to Mercédès?
11. What was Mercédès's response to Edmond's offer?
12. What emotion replaced Edmond's anger at the end?

2 Critical Thinking Questions:

1. What do you think Edmond feels when Danglars begs for mercy?
2. Why is Edmond shocked by Villefort's tragic family story?
3. Why does Edmond visit Mercédès one last time before leaving Paris?
4. What does Mercédès's quiet life show about her character?
5. Why does Mercédès still care about Edmond after everything?
6. How does saving Valentine show a different side of Edmond?
7. How does Maximilien's love change Edmond's view of life?
8. What does Maximilien represent to Edmond?
9. Why does Edmond smile differently when he sees Maximilien and Valentine reunited?
10. Why does Mercédès refuse Edmond's offer of money?
11. What role does love play in Edmond's transformation?
12. Why does Edmond realize that revenge cannot heal pain?
13. How is Edmond different at the end of the chapter compared to the beginning?
14. Why does Edmond silently thank Mercédès in his heart?
15. What does "peace" mean to Edmond at the end?

Chapter (12)

A New Dawn

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

anger	غضب	free	حر	luxurious	فاخر
ashes	رماد	freedom	حرية	mysterious	غامض
certainty	يقين / تأكيد	hatred	كراهية / حقد	ruins	أنقاض / دمار
chained	مقيّد / مربوط	honesty	صدق / أمانة	slavery	عبودية
dawn	فجر / بداية جديدة	honor	شرف	swear	يقسم
farewell	وداع	horizon	أفق	triumph	نصر / انتصار
fortune	ثروة	lifeless	بلا حياة	yacht	يخت / سفينة فاخرة

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

act of kindness	عمل طيب / فعل خير	caught the wind	التقطت الريح	sailing into the unknown	الإبحار نحو المجهول
ashes of revenge	رماد الانتقام	felt no triumph	لم يشعر بالنصر	the storm had passed	العاصفة قد مرت / انتهت
bright and full of promise	مشرقة ومليئة بالأمل	gold has no meaning without love	الذهب بلا معنى دون الحب	wait and hope	انتظروا ربح الأمل
build a new life	يبني حياة جديدة	mercy is greater than revenge	الرحمة أعظم من الانتقام		
buried beneath anger	مدفون تحت الغضب	nothing left but you	لم يبق لي إلا أنت	whispered about	تحدثوا همساً عن
cannot bring back the past	لا يمكن استرجاع الماضي	reduced to dust	تحول إلى رماد / زال		

Chapter in Points

1. Paris no longer whispered about the mysterious Count, and Edmond's enemies were destroyed, but he felt no victory inside.

لم تعد باريس تهتمس عن الكونت الغامض، وتم تدمير أعدائه، لكنه لم يشعر بأى انتصار بداخله.

2. Sitting alone in his luxurious home, Edmond felt surrounded by treasures that suddenly appeared empty and meaningless.

جالسًا وحده في منزله الفاخر، شعر إدmond بأن الكنوز حوله فارغة وبدون معنى.

3. He remembered his father, Mercédès, and the sailor he once was, wondering if that man was gone forever.

تذكر والده وميرسيدس وكونه بحارًا يومًا ما، وتساءل إن كان ذلك الرجل قد اختفى للأبد.

4. Edmond visited Mercédès one final time, finding her living quietly near the sea with her son, Albert.

زار إدmond ميرسيدس للمرة الأخيرة، ووجدها تعيش بهدوء قرب البحر مع ابنها ألبيير.

5. Mercédès told him the man she loved was buried under anger, begging him to let go of hatred.

قالت له ميرسيدس إن الرجل الذي أحبته مدفون تحت الغضب، وتوسلت إليه أن يتخلى عن الكراهية.

6. Edmond confessed that punishing his enemies had not freed him but had chained his heart even more.
اعترف إدموند أن معاقبة أعدائه لم تحرره، بل زادت القيود على قلبه.
7. Before leaving, Edmond gave Albert Fernand's fortune, asking him to build an honorable life with courage.
قبل المغادرة، أعطى إدموند ألبير ثروة فيرناند، طالباً منه بناء حياة محترمة بشجاعة.
8. Albert promised to live with honesty, and Mercédès thanked Edmond with quiet tears of forgiveness.
وعد ألبير بالعيش بأمانة، وشكرت ميرسيدس إدموند بدموع هادئة مليئة بالمغفرة.
9. Edmond's final gift was saving young lovers Maximilien and Valentine from poison and despair.
كان آخر هداياه إنقاذ العاشقين الشبابين ماكسيميليان وفالنتين من السم واليأس.
10. On Monte Cristo island, Edmond told them their love showed him mercy was stronger than revenge.
على جزيرة مونتسى كريستو، أخبرهما إدموند أن حبهما علمه أن الرحمة أقوى من الانتقام.
11. He promised them his treasure, saying gold was useless without love, and revenge brought no peace.
وعدهما بكنزه، قائلاً إن الذهب بلا حب عديم القيمة، وإن الانتقام لا يجلب السلام.
12. Edmond sailed away on his yacht with Haydée, the daughter of Ali Pasha, whom he had once saved from slavery.
أبحر إدموند على يخته مع هايدي، ابنة علي باشا، الفتاة التي أنقذها من العبودية منذ زمن.
13. Haydée promised to stay with him forever, walking beside him into a new hopeful life.
وعدت هايدي بالبقاء معه إلى الأبد، سائرة بجانبه نحو حياة جديدة مليئة بالأمل.
14. As the sun rose on the horizon, Edmond finally felt free after decades of suffering and revenge.
عندما أشرقت الشمس على الأفق، شعر إدموند أخيراً بالحرية بعد عقود من المعاناة والانتقام.

Chapter Text

The storm had passed. Paris no longer whispered about the mysterious Count of Monte Cristo. His enemies were destroyed, their power and pride reduced to dust. Yet Edmond Dantès felt no triumph in his heart.

The Empty Victory

In his luxurious house, Edmond sat alone. Around him were treasures collected from across the world—gems, gold, works of art. Yet all seemed lifeless.

He thought of his father, of Mercédès, of the sailor he once was. "Have I killed that man forever?" he whispered to himself.

A Farewell to Mercédès

One morning, Edmond visited Mercédès one last time. She now lived quietly in a small house by the sea with her son Albert. "You still carry the man I once loved," she said, "but he is buried beneath anger."

He bowed his head. "I have punished those who betrayed me, but I do not feel free. Instead, I feel more chained than ever." "Then let go of hatred," she urged. "You cannot bring back the past, but you can still choose the future."



A Gift of Love

Before leaving, Edmond gave Albert the fortune of his father, Fernand. "Use it to build a new life, a life of honor." Albert swore to live with courage and honesty. Mercédès thanked Edmond with silent tears.

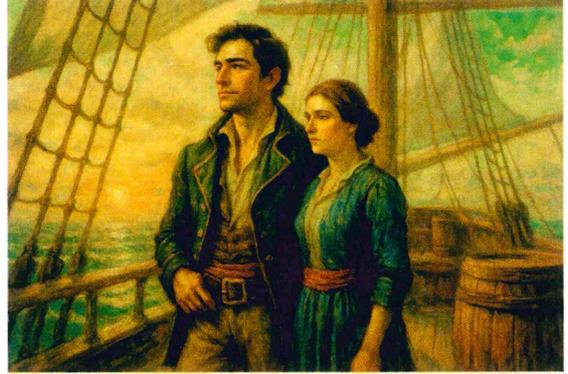
The Lovers' Reward

Edmond's last act of kindness was for Maximilien Morrel and Valentine Villefort. He had saved them both— Valentine from poison, Maximilien from despair.

He brought them to his island home, Monte Cristo itself. There, in the gardens filled with sunlight, he revealed the truth.

"You were the light that saved me from darkness," he said. "Through your love, I have learned that mercy is greater than revenge."

On the island, Edmond made his final decision. "The fortune of Monte Cristo will be yours. Gold has no meaning without love, and revenge brings no peace. Only freedom remains. Wait and hope."



Sailing into the Unknown

Edmond boarded his ship, the Yacht of Monte Cristo. With him was Haydée, the daughter of Ali Pasha, whom he had once saved from slavery. As the sails caught the wind, Edmond turned to her. "Haydée, I have nothing left but you. Will you walk with me into this new life?"

She answered with quiet certainty, "Forever."

Together they sailed away, leaving behind the prisons of the past, the ruins of Paris, and the ashes of revenge.

The sun rose on the horizon, bright and full of promise. For the first time in decades, Edmond Dantès felt truly free.

Factual Questions

1. What was the state of Paris after the storm of revenge had ended?

كيف كانت باريس بعد انتهاء عاصفة الانتقام؟

- Paris was calm again; people no longer whispered about the mysterious Count of Monte Cristo.

2. What question did Edmond ask himself while reflecting on his past?

ما السؤال الذي طرحه إدموند على نفسه أثناء تفكيره في ماضيه؟

- He asked, "Have I killed that man forever?" referring to his old self.

3. What did Mercédès tell Edmond during their meeting?

ماذا قالت ميرسيدس لإدموند خلال لقائهما؟

- She said he still carried the man she once loved, but buried beneath anger.

4. What advice did Mercédès give to Edmond?

ما النصيحة التي قدمتها ميرسيدس لإدموند؟

- She told him to let go of hatred and choose the future instead of the past.

5. What did Edmond tell Albert to do with the fortune?

ماذا طلب إدموند من ألبير أن يفعل بالثروة؟

- He told him to use it to build a new life of honor.

6. Who were Maximilien Morrel and Valentine Villefort?

من كان ماكسيميليان موريل وفالنتين فيلفور؟

- They were lovers whom Edmond had saved from death and despair.

7. What did Edmond reveal to them on the island?

ماذا كشف لهما إدموند في الجزيرة؟

- He revealed the truth about his identity and thanked them for showing him love and mercy.

8. What did Edmond decide to do with his treasure?

ماذا قرر إدموند أن يفعل بكنزته؟

- He decided to give the fortune of Monte Cristo to Maximilien and Valentine.

9. What symbol does the sunrise at the end represent?

إلى ماذا يرمز شروق الشمس في النهاية؟

- It symbolizes freedom, hope, and new beginnings.

10. What emotions did Edmond express toward Mercédès during their farewell?

ما المشاعر التي عبّر عنها إدموند تجاه ميرسيدس أثناء وداعهما؟

- He showed regret, respect, and quiet affection.

11. What does the phrase "Wait and hope" symbolize for Edmond and others?

ماذا ترمز عبارة «انتظر واملك الأمل» بالنسبة لإدموند وللآخرين؟

- It symbolizes faith in the future and the healing power of time.

12. What was Edmond's greatest realization in this chapter?

ما أعظم إدراك توصل إليه إدموند في هذا الفصل؟

- He realized that revenge brings no peace and love brings true freedom.

Critical Thinking Questions

1. Why does Edmond feel empty after destroying his enemies?

لماذا شعر إدموند بالفراغ بعد تدمير أعدائه؟

- Because revenge satisfied his anger, not his heart; he realized it cannot replace love or peace.

2. How does Albert's reaction reflect a new generation's values?

كيف يعكس رد فعل ألبير قيم الجيل الجديد؟

- His promise to live honorably shows hope and moral renewal.

3. What does Monte Cristo island symbolize in this chapter?

ماذا ترمز جزيرة مونت كريستو في هذا الفصل؟

- It becomes a place of forgiveness and new beginnings rather than revenge.

4. How does Edmond's final gift reflect his spiritual growth?

كيف يعكس عطاء إدموند الأخير نموه الروحي؟

- It shows he has moved from anger to compassion and peace.

5. Why does Edmond sail away instead of staying in Paris?

لماذا غادر إدموند بدلاً من البقاء في باريس؟

- He wanted freedom from memories and the ghosts of his past.

6. How does the sea function as a symbol at the end?

كيف يعمل البحر كرمز في النهاية؟

- It represents freedom, rebirth, and escape from the past.

7. What does the contrast between gold and love teach the reader?

ماذا يعلم التباين بين الذهب والحب القارئ؟

- That emotional richness outweighs material wealth.

8. What contrast exists between Edmond's beginning and ending?

ما التباين بين بداية إدموند ونهايته؟

- He begins as a victim of injustice and ends as a forgiver seeking peace.

9. What does Edmond's freedom at the end truly mean?

ما المعنى الحقيقي لحرية إدموند في النهاية؟

- It means freedom from hate and the burden of revenge.

10. Why does the sunrise serve as a powerful ending image?

لماذا يُعدّ شروق الشمس صورة ختامية قوية؟

- It symbolizes hope, renewal, and Edmond's rebirth into freedom.

11. What does the silence in Edmond's house symbolize?

إلام يرمز صمت منزل إدموند؟

- It shows his inner loneliness despite all his riches and success.

12. What can readers learn from Edmond's emotional journey?

ماذا يتعلم القراء من رحلة إدموند العاطفية؟

- That true peace comes from letting go, not winning.

13. What choice does Edmond make at the end of the story: more revenge or peace?

SB

ما القرار الذي يتخذه إدموند في نهاية القصة: المزيد من الانتقام أم السلام؟

- Edmond chooses peace and forgiveness over revenge, realizing that hatred only chained him to the past while mercy opens the path to freedom.

14. What does the Count's final decision suggest about his character growth?

SB

بماذا توحى قرارات الكونت الأخيرة عن نمو شخصيته؟

- It shows deep transformation—from a man ruled by anger to one guided by wisdom, compassion, and acceptance of human weakness.

15. How does the theme of forgiveness change the meaning of the story compared to pure revenge?

SB

كيف يغيّر موضوع الغفران معنى القصة مقارنةً بالانتقام الخالص؟

- Forgiveness turns the story from tragedy into redemption; it teaches that true victory lies in overcoming hatred, not in destroying others.

16. Do you agree that forgiveness is stronger than revenge? Why or why not?

SB

هل توافق على أن الغفران أقوى من الانتقام؟ لماذا؟ أو: لماذا لا؟

- Yes. Forgiveness demands strength, humility, and control, while revenge is driven by pain. Mercy heals both the victim and the wrongdoer.

17. If you had the power to punish your enemies, would you stop at justice or go further to seek revenge? Explain.

SB

إذا امتلكت القدرة على معاقبة أعدائك، هل ستكتفى بالعدالة أم ستسعى للانتقام؟ وضح.

- I would stop at justice, because revenge repeats the same harm. Justice restores balance; revenge multiplies pain and guilt.

1 Factual Questions:

1. How did Edmond feel after destroying his enemies?
2. Who did Edmond visit one last time?
3. Where was Mercédès living at that time?
4. How did Edmond describe his feelings about revenge?
5. What gift did Edmond give to Albert?
6. How did Mercédès react to Edmond's gift?
7. Where did Edmond take Maximilien and Valentine?
8. What did Edmond say about love and revenge?
9. What was Edmond's final message to them?
10. Who accompanied Edmond on his final journey?
11. What did Edmond say to Haydée before they sailed?
12. What did Edmond leave behind when he sailed away?
13. How did Edmond feel as the ship sailed into the horizon?
14. How did Edmond describe gold at the end of the story?
15. What ship did Edmond board at the end?
16. Who was Haydée?

2 Critical Thinking Questions:

1. What does Mercédès represent in Edmond's journey?
2. What does Edmond's gift to Albert show about his change?
3. Why does Edmond save Valentine and Maximilien?
4. Why does Edmond decide to give away his treasure?
5. What is the meaning of the phrase "Wait and hope"?
6. What does Haydée's loyalty reveal about love?
7. Why is forgiveness harder than revenge for Edmond?
8. How does Mercédès's forgiveness impact Edmond's soul?
9. Why does Edmond thank Valentine and Maximilien for their love?
10. What does the relationship between Edmond and Haydée represent?
11. How does Edmond's journey challenge the idea of justice?
12. Why does the Count's story inspire both fear and hope?
13. How does Edmond's story teach the value of forgiveness?
14. What role does love play in Edmond's transformation?

Dictionary

الكلمات الواردة بقطع الفهم وأسئلة الترجمة

Unit (7)

مفردات على الوحدة السابعة

accompany	يرافق	ground staff	عمال الخدمات الأرضية	self-reflection	التأمل الذاتى
barrier	عائق / حاجز	jet lag	إرهاق السفر	simultaneous	متزامن / فوري
envelope	يحيط بـ	mad rush	اندفاع جنوني	sob	يبكى بشدة
expose	يكشف / يعرض	particulars	تفاصيل	step off	يبتعد عن / ينزل من
fast-paced	متسارع / سريع	ponder	يتدبر / يتأمل	take charge of	يتحمل مسؤولية
frustration	تعطيل / إحباط	retrieve	يسترجع	thankfulness	امتنان
generous spirit	روح العطاء	reunited	يجمع شمل	tuck-shop	محل صغير

Unit (8)

مفردات على الوحدة الثامنة

army-themed party	حفلة ذات طابع عسكري	intersection	تقاطع	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
camouflage	تمويه / تخفى	invaders	غزاة / محتلون	skip a day	يتخطى يوما
chaotic	فوضى	landscape	منظر طبيعي	solidify	يرسّخ
combination	مزيج / خليط	lifeline	شريان الحياة	southern tip of Africa	الطرف الجنوبي لإفريقيا
commander	قائد	man-made waterway	ممر مائي من صنع الإنسان	standing strong	يقف صامدا
commodities	سلع	massive task	مهمة جسيمة	stick to	يتمسك
continent	قارة	millennia	آلاف السنين / الألفية	stretch over	تمتد على مدى
dynasty	سلالة حاكمة	muscles	عضلات	triangular stretch	امتداد على شكل مثلث
emerge victorious	يخرج منتصرا	netting	شبكة	unmatched access	تواصل لا مثيل له
fertile	خصيب	occupy	يشغل / يحتل	watchtowers	أبراج مراقبة
flourish	يزدهر	packed earth	تربة مدكوكة	waterways	طرق / مجاري مائية
get the hang of it	يتقن الأمر	pass through	يمر عبر	well-hidden	مخفى بشكل جيد
gooey	لنج	properly	بشكل سليم	wonders of the world	عجائب الدنيا
greatness	مجد / عظمة	report	يذكر / يفيد	workout	تمرين
intense	كثيف	salute	تحية	World Heritage Sites	مواقع التراث العالمي
internal travel	تنقلات داخلية	shipping lanes	خطوط / ممرات النقل البحري		

Unit (9)

مفردات على الوحدة التاسعة

absorb	يمتص	dragon	التنين	slow	يَبْطِئُ/ يُعَوِّقُ
average temperature	متوسط درجة الحرارة	gravity	جاذبيّة	spacesuit	بدلة رائد الفضاء
Big Bang	الانفجار الكبير	illuminated	مضيء	spin	يلف / يدور
biodiversity	تنوع بيولوجي	mass	كتلة	substance	مادّة
conscientious	ذو ضمير	mysteries	ألغاز	surroundings	البيئة المحيطة
contamination	تلويث / عدوى	normal stuff	أمور عادية	theory	نظريّة
dark matter	مادّة مظلمة	orbit	مدار/ يدور	tropical storms	عواصف استوائية
disadvantaged children	الأطفال المحرومون	pull on	يسحب	use up	يستنفد / يستهلك
downpour	مطر غزير	residents	سكان	weightlifting	رفع الأثقال

Unit (10)

مفردات على الوحدة العاشرة

access	وصول / دخول	gesture	إيماءة/ إشارة	preserve	يحافظ على
aggressive	عدواني	hospitality	ضيافة	protocols	بروتوكولات / قواعد
anthropology	علم الإنسان	humanities	العلوم الإنسانية	reinforce	يعزز/ يقوى
appreciation	تقدير/ امتنان	illegally	بشكل غير قانوني	self-esteem	تقدير الذات
atmosphere	جو/ مناخ	impression	انطباع	sincere	صادق / مخلص
characterize	يُميز/ يَصِف	intellectual	عقلي/ فكري	social gatherings	تجمعات اجتماعية
coaches	مدربون	interact with	يتفاعل مع	standard	معيّار/ مستوى
complicated	معقد	interpretation	تفسير/ ترجمة	sub-divided	مقسّم فرعيّاً
conflict	صراع/ خلاف	literature	أدب	threats	تهديدات
determine	يُحدد/ يقرر	military	عسكري	unauthorized	غير مصرح به
diplomatic	دبلوماسي	narrative	سرد/ رواية	valid	صالح / ساري
establish	يؤسس/ يُنشئ	patterns	أنماط/ نماذج	violence	عنف
feedback	تغذية راجعة / ملاحظات	philosophy	فلسفة	yell insults	يصرخ بالإهانات

Unit (11)

مفردات على الوحدة الحادية عشرة

afterlife	الحياة بعد الموت	exposure	انكشاف / تعرض	self-awareness	الوعي الذاتي
assignment	واجب / مهمة	fancy fiction	رواية خيالية	shipwrecked	تحطم السفينة / غريق
broader perspective	نظرة أوسع / منظور أشمل	hieroglyphics	الرموز الهيروغليفية	significantly	بشكل ملحوظ
categories	فئات / تصنيفات	identity	هوية	squeeze	يضغط / يعصر
crucial	حاسم / مهم جدًا	mysteries	ألغاز	stimulate	يحفز / ينشط
detective	محقق	primarily	بشكل أساسي	suspect	يشتبه / مشتبه به
discount	خصم	protection	حماية	typically	عادة / عادة ما
effortlessly	بسهولة / دون جهد	reflected	انعكس / عكس		
emotions	عواطف / مشاعر	scribes	كتابة	verifiable facts	حقائق قابلة للتحقق
exposed to	معرض لـ	scripted plays	مسرحيات مكتوبة		

Unit (12)

مفردات على الوحدة الثانية عشرة

academic growth	النمو الأكاديمي	elementary	ابتدائي / أساسي	participating	مُشارك
atoms and molecules	الذرات والجزيئات	extensively	على نطاق واسع	passion	شغف
attention	انتباه	extracurricular	لا منهجي / خارج المنهج	passionate	شغوف / محب جدًا
beyond	ما وراء / أكثر من	guidance	إرشاد / توجيه	physical fitness	اللياقة البدنية
career paths	مسارات مهنية	impressible	سهل التأثير	reactions	تفاعلات / ردود أفعال
confidence	ثقة بالنفس	independence	استقلال	requirements	متطلبات / شروط
constantly	باستمرار	independent	مستقل	rigid	صارم / جامد
contribute	يُساهم / يُشارك	inspire	يُلهم	screaming	صراخ
creative	مبدع / خلاق	location	موقع / مكان		
debate	مناظرة / نقاش	major	تخصص / رئيسي	self-discipline	انضباط ذاتي
diverse	متنوع	memorable	لا يُنسى		

<p>رقم الإيداع: 2025/30335</p> <p>خدمة العملاء: 16766</p> 	<p>جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر</p> <p>يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.</p>
---	---

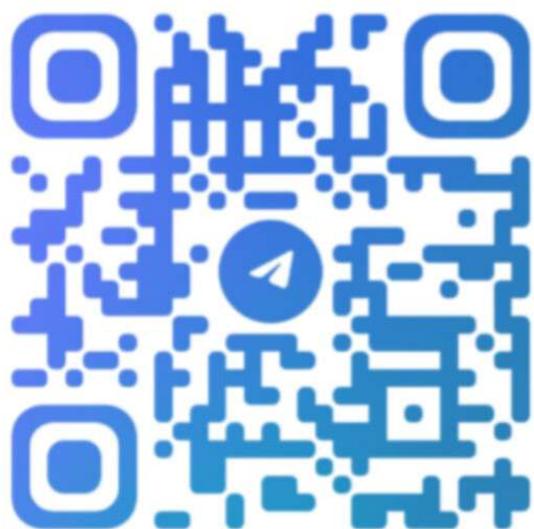
تابعنا علي التيليجرام

اضغط علي الرابط  لدخول الي الجروب

<https://t.me/C322C>

او عن طريق مسح الباركود ↓↓↓

باركود القناه  



@C322C

لتحميل

مذكرات مدرسين ثانوي

والمزيد من التلخيصات

تابعنا علي التيليجرام